



How to Use This Manual Printing This Manual

iP4600 series

On-screen Manual

MC-2984-V1.00



Basic Guide

Describes the summary of this product.



Advanced Guide

Describes the detailed function of this product.



Troubleshooting



Contents

❖ Overview of the Printer

Main Components

❖ Printing

Printing Photos (Easy-PhotoPrint EX)

Printing Documents (Windows)

Printing Documents (Macintosh)

❖ Other Usages

Printing Photos from a PictBridge Compliant Device

Solution Menu and My Printer

❖ Loading Paper

Loading Paper

❖ Routine Maintenance

Replacing an Ink Tank

When Printing Becomes Faint or Colors Are Incorrect

Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller

Cleaning the Pad in the Cassette

Opening the Maintenance Screens

❖ Appendix

Safety Precautions

Legal Limitations on Use of Your Product and Use of Images

Tips on How to Use Your Printer

Overview of the Printer

This section shows the component names of the printer and describes their functions.

Main Components

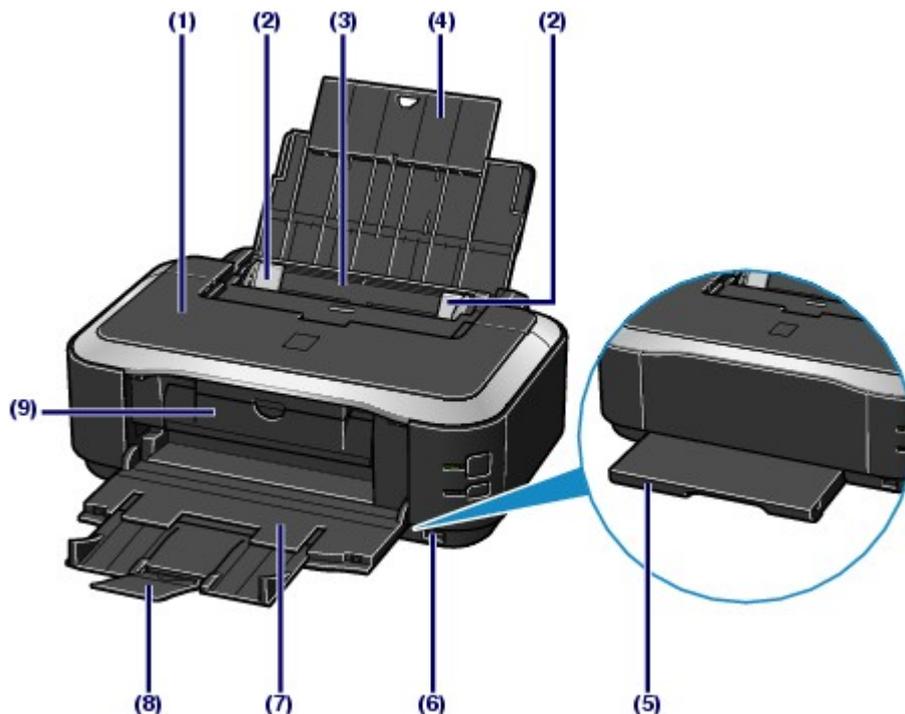
[Front View](#)
[Rear View](#)
[Inside View](#)



[↑ Page top](#)

Main Components

■ Front View



(1) Top Cover

Open it when replacing the ink tanks or removing jammed paper inside the printer.

(2) Paper Guides

Slide to align with both sides of the paper stack.

(3) Rear Tray

Load various sizes or types of paper which you can use on the printer. Two or more sheets of the same size and type of paper can be loaded at the same time, and fed automatically one sheet at a time.

See [Loading Paper](#).

(4) Paper Support

Open to pull out fully to support paper loaded in the Rear Tray.

(5) Cassette

Load A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper and insert it into the printer. Two or more sheets of the same size of paper can be loaded at the same time, and fed automatically one sheet at a time.

See [Loading Paper](#).

(6) Direct Print Port

Connect a PictBridge compliant device such as a digital camera when printing directly.

See [Printing Photos from a PictBridge Compliant Device](#).

Warning

- Do not connect any equipment other than PictBridge compliant devices to the Direct Print Port of the printer. This may cause fire, electric shock, or damage to the printer.

Caution

- Do not touch the metal casing.

(7) Paper Output Tray

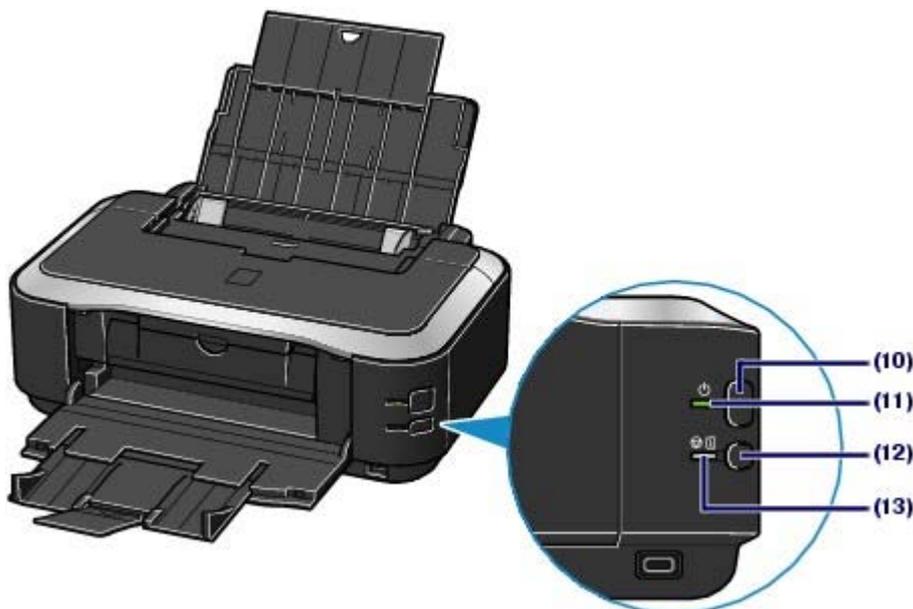
Printed papers are ejected. Open it fully before printing.

(8) Output Tray Extension

Extend to open support the printouts.

(9) Inner Cover

Close it when printing on paper.



(10) Power button

Turns the power on or off.



Note

Auto power on/off feature

- You can set the printer to turn on or off automatically.
 - Auto Power On: Automatically turns on the printer when print data is sent from the computer.
 - Auto Power Off: Automatically turns off the printer when no print data is sent for a certain interval.

Specify this setting in the Maintenance sheet of the printer driver in Windows, or of the Canon IJ Printer Utility in Macintosh. For details on the settings, refer to the on-screen manual:

[Advanced Guide](#).



Important

Disconnecting the power plug

- When disconnecting the power plug after turning off the power, be sure to confirm that the **Power** lamp is not lit. If the power plug is disconnected from the wall outlet while the **Power** lamp is lit or flashing, the printer may become unable to print properly since the Print Head is not protected.

(11) Power lamp

Lights green after flashing when the power is turned on.

(12) RESUME/CANCEL button

Press to cancel a print job in progress. You can press this button after resolving a printer error to dismiss an error message and resume printing.

(13) Alarm lamp

Lights or flashes orange when an error, such as paper-out or ink-out, occurs.

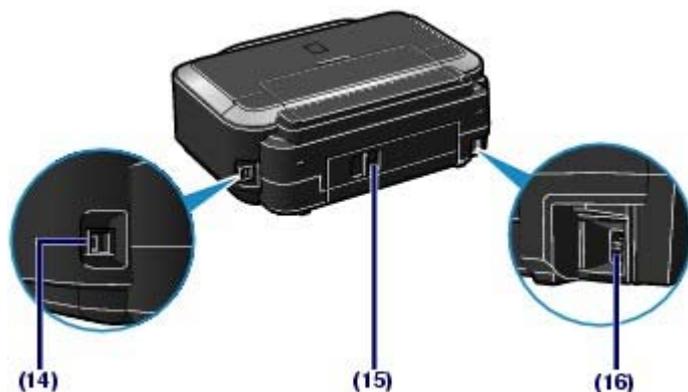


Note

Power and Alarm lamps

- You can check the status of the printer by the **Power** and **Alarm** lamps.
 - **Power** lamp Off: The power is off.
 - **Power** lamp lit green: The printer is ready to print.
 - **Power** lamp flashing green: The printer is getting ready to print, or printing is in progress.
 - **Alarm** lamp flashing orange: An error has occurred and the printer is not ready to print.
 - For details, refer to the "[Troubleshooting](#)" in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide*.
 - **Power** lamp flashes green once and **Alarm** lamp flashes orange once alternately: An error that requires contacting your Canon service representative may have occurred. For details, refer to the "[Troubleshooting](#)" in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide*.

■ Rear View



(14) USB Port

Plug in the USB cable to connect the printer with a computer.

Caution

- Do not touch the metal casing.

Important

- Do not plug in or unplug the USB cable while the printer is printing from the computer.

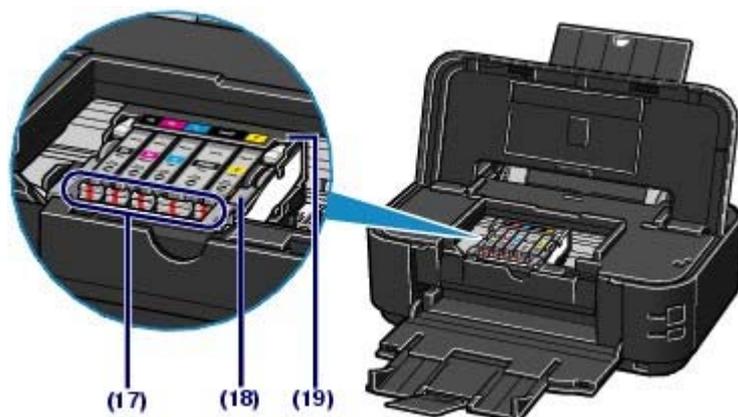
(15) Rear Cover

Detach to remove jammed papers.

(16) Power Cord Connector

Plug in the supplied power cord.

■ Inside View



(17) Ink lamp

Lights or flashes red to indicate the ink tank status.

See [Checking the Ink Status](#).

(18) Print Head Lock Lever

Locks the Print Head into place.

Important

- Do not raise this lever after installing the Print Head.

(19) Print Head Holder

Install the Print Head.

Note

- For details on installing the Print Head and ink tanks, refer to the printed manual: *Getting Started*.



[↑ Page top](#)

Printing

This section describes how to print documents or photos.

You can easily print photos taken with your digital camera by using Easy-PhotoPrint EX supplied with your printer.

Printing Photos (Easy-PhotoPrint EX)

[Using Various Functions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX](#)

Printing Documents (Windows)

Printing Documents (Macintosh)

[For Mac OS X v.10.5.x](#)

[For Mac OS X v.10.4.x or Mac OS X v.10.3.9](#)



[↑ Page top](#)

Printing Photos (Easy-PhotoPrint EX)

Print image data saved on your computer by using Easy-PhotoPrint EX supplied with your printer.

This section describes the procedure, using print setting for borderless photo print on 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm photo paper as a sample.

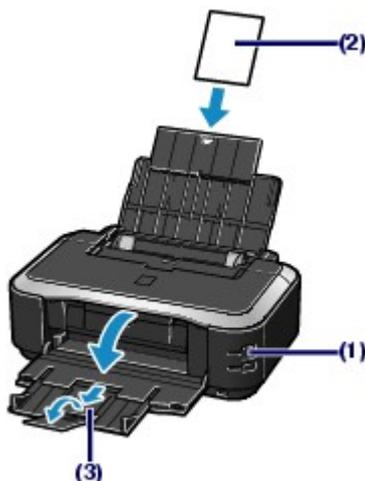
For details on Easy-PhotoPrint EX, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).



Note

- The screens used in this section are for printing with Windows. The operations are also the same for printing with Macintosh.
- Install Easy-PhotoPrint EX from the *Setup CD-ROM* when it has not been installed or has been uninstalled. To install Easy-PhotoPrint EX, select Easy-PhotoPrint EX in Custom Install.

1. Prepare for printing.



(1) Make sure that the printer is turned on.

See [Front View](#).

(2) Load paper.

See [Loading Paper](#).

Here we load 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm photo paper in the Rear Tray.



Note

- Load A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette and other sizes or types of paper such as photo paper in the Rear Tray.

(3) Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.

2. Start Easy-PhotoPrint EX, and select Photo Print.



(1) Start Easy-PhotoPrint EX.



Double-click  (Easy-PhotoPrint EX) on the desktop.



Click Here: [Easy-PhotoPrint EX](#)



Select the Go menu, Applications, Canon Utilities, Easy-PhotoPrint EX, then double-click Easy-PhotoPrint EX.



Note



- To start Easy-PhotoPrint EX from Solution Menu, double-click  (Solution Menu) on the desktop and click  (Print photos or albums, etc.).
See [To Start Solution Menu](#).
- To start Easy-PhotoPrint EX from the Start menu, select All Programs (Programs in Windows 2000), Canon Utilities, Easy-PhotoPrint EX, then Easy-PhotoPrint EX.



- To start Easy-PhotoPrint EX from Solution Menu, click  (Solution Menu) in the Dock and click  (Print photos or albums, etc.).
See [To Start Solution Menu](#).

(2) Click Photo Print.



Note

- You can select Album, Calendar, Stickers, etc., besides Photo Print.
See [Using Various Functions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX](#) .

3. Select a photo to print.



(1) Select the folder in which images are saved.

(2) Click the image to print.

The number of copies appears as "1", and the image you selected appears in the selected image area (A). You can select two or more images at the same time.

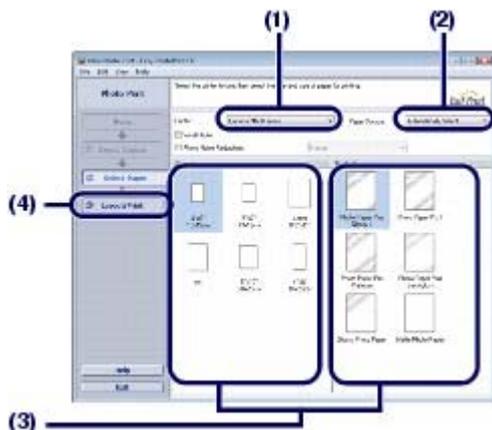


Note

- To print two or more copies, click  (Up arrow) to change the number of copies.
- To cancel the selection, click the image to cancel in the selected image area and click  (Delete Imported Image). You can also use  (Down arrow) to change the number of copies to zero.
- You can also correct or enhance the selected image.
See [Using Various Functions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX](#).

(3) Click Select Paper.

4. Select the loaded paper.



- (1) Make sure that your printer's name is selected in Printer.
- (2) Make sure that Automatically Select is selected in Paper Source.



Note

- For details on other paper feeding, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).

- (3) Select the size and type of the paper to print in Paper Size and Media Type.
Here we select 4"x6"/10x15cm in Paper Size and the type of the loaded photo paper in Media Type.



Note

- If you select A4 or Letter-sized plain paper when Automatically Select is selected in Paper Source, the printer feeds the paper from the Cassette. If you select other sizes or types of paper such as photo paper, the printer feeds the paper from the Rear Tray.
If you select the wrong page size or media type, the printer may feed the paper from the wrong paper source or may not print with the proper print quality.

- (4) Click Layout/Print.

5. Select a layout and start printing.



- (1) Select the layout of the photo.
Here we select Borderless [full].

The preview appears in the selected layout for confirmation of the required print result.

**Note**

- You can change the direction of photo or crop a part of photo (trimming) to print. For details on the operation, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).

(2) Click Print.**Note****Windows**

- To cancel a print job in progress, press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button on the printer or click Cancel Printing on the printer status monitor. After canceling the print job, blank sheets of paper may be ejected. To display the printer status monitor, click Canon XXX (where "XXX" is your printer's name) on the taskbar.

Macintosh

- Click the printer icon in the Dock to display the list of print jobs in progress.
- To cancel a print job in progress, select the desired job in the Name list and click Delete. After canceling the print job, blank sheets of paper may be ejected.



■ Using Various Functions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX

This section describes a few of the useful functions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

For details on the operation, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).

● Creating Your Own Prints

You can create an album or calendar using your photos.



Album



Calendar



Stickers

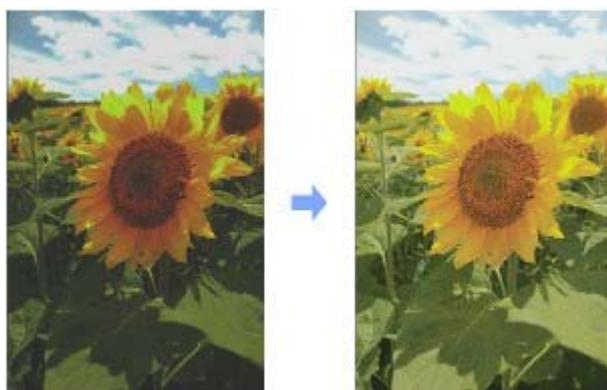


Layout Print

● Correcting Images

You can use Red-Eye Correction, Face Sharpener, Digital Face Smoothing, Brightness, Contrast, etc. to adjust, correct, or enhance images automatically or manually.

Sample of the correction



Brightness



Printing Documents (Windows)



Note

- Operations may vary depending on your software application. For details on the operation, refer to the instruction manual of your application.
- The screens used in this section are for printing with Windows Vista operating system Ultimate Edition (hereafter referred to as "Windows Vista").

1. Make sure that the printer is turned on.

See [Front View](#).

2. Load paper.

See [Loading Paper](#).



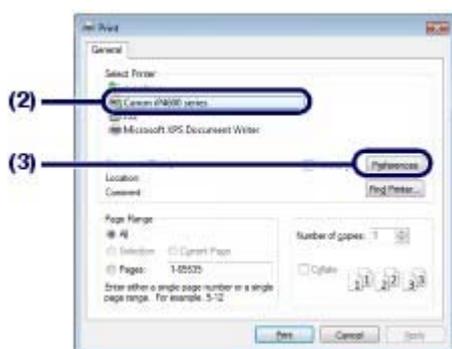
Note

- Load A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette and other sizes or types of paper such as photo paper in the Rear Tray.

3. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.

4. Create (or open) a document to print using an appropriate software application.

5. Open the printer properties dialog box.



(1) Select Print on the File menu or the command bar in your software application.

The Print dialog box appears.

(2) Make sure that your printer's name is selected.

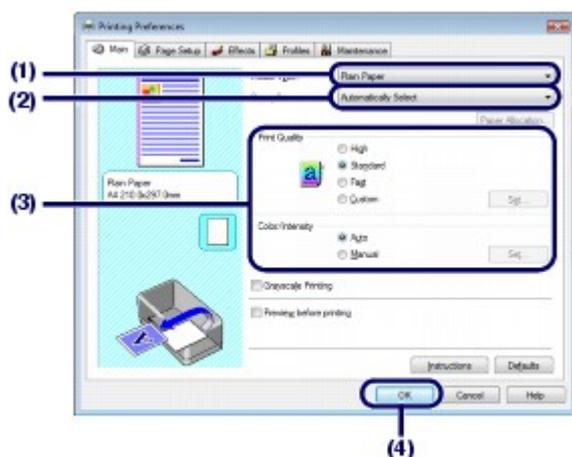


Note

- If another printer's name is selected, click and select your printer's name.

(3) Click Preferences (or Properties).

6. Specify the required print settings.



(1) Select the media type of the paper to print in Media Type.



Note

- If you select A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper when Automatically Select is selected in Paper Source, the printer feeds the paper from the Cassette. If you select other sizes or types of paper such as photo paper, the printer feeds the paper from the Rear Tray. If you select the wrong page size or media type, the printer may feed the paper from the wrong paper source or may not print with the proper print quality.

(2) Make sure that Automatically Select is selected in Paper Source.



Note

- For details on other paper feeding, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).

(3) Specify the print quality, etc. in Print Quality and Color/Intensity as required.



Note

- For details on the print settings, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).

(4) Click OK.

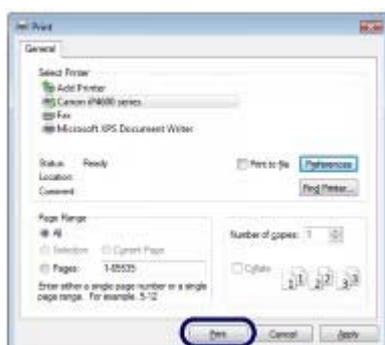


Note

- To confirm the page size, click the Page Setup tab. If the setting does not match the document's page size already set in the software application, you need to reset the page size, or otherwise use Scaled Printing or Fit-to-Page Printing. For details, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).
- For details on the printer driver functions, click Help or Instructions to view the online help or the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide*. The Instructions button appears on the Main and Maintenance sheets if the on-screen manual is installed on your computer.
- To display the preview to confirm the print result, select the Preview before printing check box on the Main sheet. Some software applications may not have a preview function.

7. Start printing.

Click Print (or OK) to start printing.



**Note**

-
- To cancel a print job in progress, press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button on the printer or click Cancel Printing on the printer status monitor. After canceling the print job, blank sheets of paper may be ejected.
To display the printer status monitor, click Canon XXX (where "XXX" is your printer's name) on the taskbar.
 - If printed ruled lines are misaligned or print results are unsatisfactory, adjust the print head position. See [Aligning the Print Head](#).
-

[↑ Page top](#)

Printing Documents (Macintosh)



Note

- Operations may vary depending on your software application. For details on the operation, refer to the instruction manual of your application.

■ For Mac OS X v.10.5.x

1. Make sure that the printer is turned on.

See [Front View](#).

2. Load paper.

See [Loading Paper](#).



Note

- Load A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette and other sizes or types of paper such as photo paper in the Rear Tray.

3. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.

4. Create (or open) a document to print using an appropriate software application.

5. Open the Print dialog box.

Select Print on the File menu in your software application.

The Print dialog box appears.

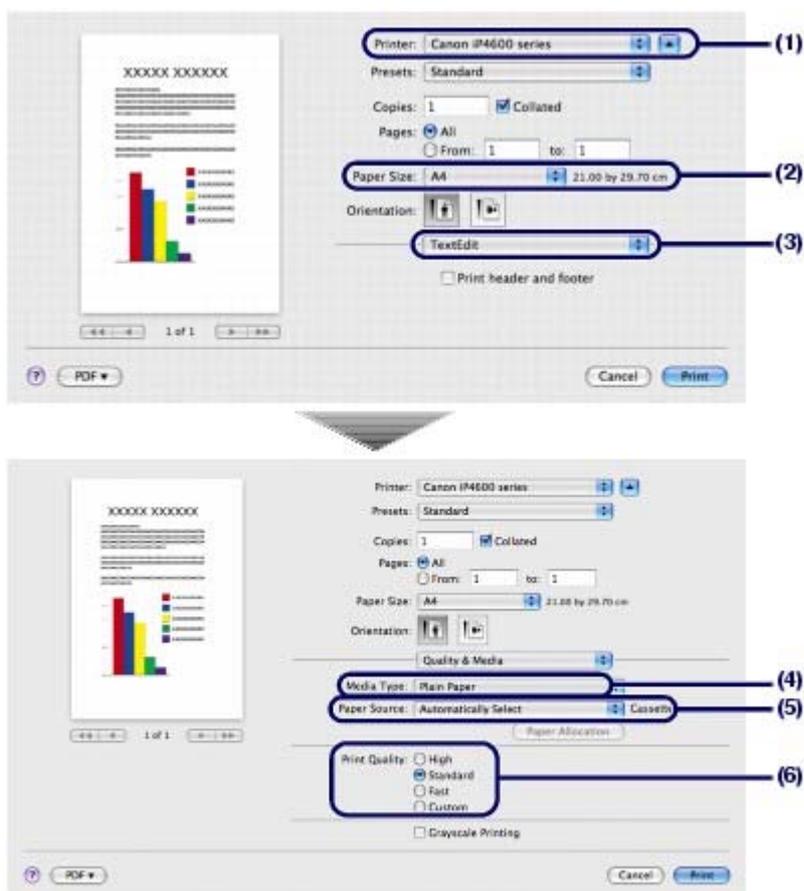


Note

- If the dialog box below appears, click  (Down arrow).



6. Specify the required print settings.



- (1) Make sure that your printer's name is selected in Printer.
- (2) Select the page size of the paper to print in Paper Size.
- (3) Select Quality & Media in the pop-up menu.
- (4) Select the media type of the paper to print in Media Type.

Note

- If you select A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper when Automatically Select is selected in Paper Source, the printer feeds the paper from the Cassette. If you select other sizes or types of paper such as photo paper, the printer feeds the paper from the Rear Tray. If you select the wrong page size or media type, the printer may feed the paper from the wrong paper source or may not print with the proper print quality.

- (5) Make sure that Automatically Select is selected in Paper Source.

Note

- For details on other paper feeding, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).

- (6) Select the print quality in Print Quality.

Note

- For details on the print quality, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).

Note

- For details on the printer driver functions, click  (Question) on the Quality & Media, Color Options, Borderless Printing, or Duplex Printing & Margin screen to view the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide*. If the on-screen manual is not installed, it does not appear even if  (Question) is clicked.
- The preview appears on the left of the dialog box to confirm the print result. Some software applications may not have a preview function.

7. Start printing.

Click Print to start printing.

Note

- Click the printer icon in the Dock to display the list of print jobs in progress.
- To cancel a print job in progress, select the desired job in the Name list and click Delete. After canceling the print job, blank sheets of paper may be ejected.
To temporarily stop a job in progress, click Hold. To temporarily stop all the jobs in the list, click Pause Printer.
- If printed ruled lines are misaligned or print results are unsatisfactory, adjust the print head position. See [Aligning the Print Head](#).

■ For Mac OS X v.10.4.x or Mac OS X v.10.3.9

Note

- The screens used in this section are for printing in Mac OS X v.10.4.x.

1. Make sure that the printer is turned on.

See [Front View](#).

2. Load paper.

See [Loading Paper](#).

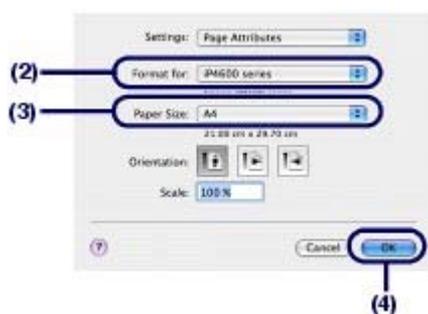
Note

- Load A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette and other paper such as photo paper in the Rear Tray.

3. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.

4. Create (or open) a document to print using an appropriate software application.

5. Specify the page size.



(1) Select Page Setup on the File menu in your software application.
The Page Setup dialog box appears.

(2) Make sure that your printer's name is selected in Format for.

(3) Select the page size of the paper to print in Paper Size.

(4) Click OK.

6. Specify the required print settings.



(1) Select Print on the File menu in your software application.
The Print dialog box appears.

(2) Make sure that your printer's name is selected in Printer.

(3) Select Quality & Media in the pop-up menu.

(4) Select the media type of the paper to print in Media Type.



Note

- If you select A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper when Automatically Select is selected in Paper Source, the printer feeds the paper from the Cassette. If you select other sizes or types of paper such as photo paper, the printer feeds the paper from the Rear Tray. If you select the wrong page size or media type, the printer may feed the paper from the wrong paper source or may not print with the proper print quality.

(5) Make sure that Automatically Select is selected in Paper Source.



Note

- For details on other paper feeding, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).

(6) Select the print quality in Print Quality.



Note

- For details on the print quality, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).



Note

- For details on the printer driver functions, click (Question) on the Quality & Media, Color Options, Special Effects, Borderless Printing, or Duplex Printing & Margin screen to view the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#). If the on-screen manual is not installed, it does not appear even if (Question) is clicked.
- To display the preview to confirm the print result, click Preview. Some software applications may not have a preview function.

7. Start printing.

Click Print to start printing.



Note

- Click the printer icon in the Dock to display the list of print jobs in progress.
- To cancel a print job in progress, select the desired job in the Name list and click Delete. After canceling the print job, blank sheets of paper may be ejected. To temporarily stop a job in progress, click Hold. To temporarily stop all the jobs in the list, click Stop Jobs.
- If printed ruled lines are misaligned or print results are unsatisfactory, adjust the print head position. See [Aligning the Print Head](#).

Other Usages

This section describes the function to print photos from your PictBridge compliant device such as a digital camera connecting with a USB cable and the useful functions to start supplied software applications from the desktop.

Printing Photos from a PictBridge Compliant Device

Solution Menu and My Printer



[↑ Page top](#)

Printing Photos from a PictBridge Compliant Device

Connecting the PictBridge compliant device to the printer with a USB cable that is recommended by the device's manufacturer, you can print saved images directly.

For details on how to print saved images connecting with the PictBridge compliant device, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).

For details on the print settings on the PictBridge compliant device, refer to the instruction manual supplied with the device.



Connectable devices:

Any PictBridge compliant device can be connected to the printer regardless of the manufacturer or model as long as it is compliant with the PictBridge standard.



Note

- PictBridge is the standard to print your photos directly without using a computer, connecting a device such as a digital still camera, digital camcorder, or camera-equipped mobile phone.



(PictBridge) A device with this mark is PictBridge compliant.

Printable image data format:

The printer prints images taken with a DCF (Design rule for Camera File system) ver. 1.0/2.0- compatible digital camera (Exif ver. 2.2/2.21 compliant), as well as PNG files.



Solution Menu and My Printer

Using Solution Menu or My Printer (Windows only), you can easily get the information on the printer or change the print settings by only clicking buttons on a screen.

With Solution Menu, you can start the software applications supplied with the printer or display the operating instructions. It also provides you with the information on troubleshooting.

With My Printer, you can display the printer properties dialog box of the printer driver. It also provides you with the information on how to take an action when you have trouble with the operation. My Printer is not available in Macintosh.

● To Start Solution Menu



Double-click  (Solution Menu) on the desktop.



Click Here: [Solution Menu](#)



Click  (Solution Menu) in the Dock.

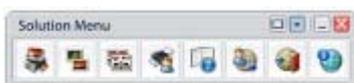
* The screens below are for Windows Vista.



Click the button of a function to use.



After starting Solution Menu, click  (Window size: small) on the title bar to reduce the window size.



Note

- Install Solution Menu from the *Setup CD-ROM* when it has not been installed or has been uninstalled. To install Solution Menu, select Solution Menu in Custom Install.
- The buttons displayed on the screen may vary depending on the country or region of purchase.



- To start Solution Menu from the Start menu, select All Programs (Programs in Windows 2000), Canon Utilities, Solution Menu, then Solution Menu.



- To start Solution Menu from the menu bar, select the Go menu, Applications, Canon Utilities, Solution Menu, then double-click Solution Menu.

● To Start My Printer



Double-click  (My Printer) on the desktop.

**Note**

- You can also start My Printer from Solution Menu.
- Install My Printer from the *Setup CD-ROM* when it has not been installed or has been uninstalled. To install My Printer, select My Printer in Custom Install.
- To start My Printer from the Start menu, select All Programs (Programs in Windows 2000), Canon Utilities, My Printer, then My Printer.

[↑ Page top](#)

Loading Paper

This section describes types of paper you can load and how to load printing paper in the Rear Tray or Cassette.

Loading Paper

[Paper Source to Load Paper](#)

[Loading Paper](#)

[Loading Envelopes](#)

[Media Types You Can Use](#)

[Media Types You Cannot Use](#)



[↑ Page top](#)

Loading Paper

■ Paper Source to Load Paper

You can select to load paper from two paper source, Cassette or Rear Tray.

You can load paper in either one of the paper sources, depending on the page size and media type of paper. If you select Automatically Select in Paper Source, paper is fed from the Cassette or Rear Tray depending on the selection of the page size or media type.

See [Media Types You Can Use](#).



Note

- For details on Automatically Select, see [Printing Documents \(Windows\)](#) or [Printing Documents \(Macintosh\)](#).
For details on other paper feeding, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).
- If you select A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper when Automatically Select is selected in Paper Source, the printer feeds the paper from the Cassette. If you select other sizes or types of paper such as photo paper, the printer feeds the paper from the Rear Tray.
When printing, select the correct page size and media type. If you select wrong page size or media type, the printer may feed the paper from the wrong paper source or may not print with the proper print quality.
For details on loading paper in each paper source, see [Loading Paper](#) or [Loading Envelopes](#).

● Loading plain paper in the Cassette

When you use A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper, load it in the Cassette.

The Cassette is inserted at the bottom of the printer.

The printer feeds the paper from the Cassette automatically by selecting plain paper (A4, B5, A5, or Letter size) in the print settings with the printer driver when printing.

For details on how to change the paper source, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).



● Loading Photo Paper in the Rear Tray

When you use photo paper, load it in the Rear Tray.

The printer feeds the paper from the Rear Tray automatically by selecting the media types other than plain paper, such as photo paper, in the print settings with the printer driver when printing.

When you use plain paper other than A4, B5, A5, or Letter size, also load it in the Rear Tray.



[↑ Page top](#)

■ Loading Paper

Important

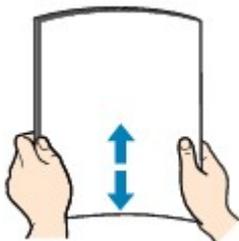
- If you cut plain paper into small size such as 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm, 4" x 8" / 101.6 x 203.2 mm, 5" x 7" / 13 x 18 cm, or 2.16" x 3.58" / 55.0 x 91.0 mm (Card size) to perform trial print, it can cause paper jams.

Note

- You can load only A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette. Load other sizes or types of paper in the Rear Tray.
- We recommend Canon genuine photo paper for printing photos.
For details on the Canon genuine paper, see [Media Types You Can Use](#).
- You can use general copy paper. When printing on both sides, we recommend Canon's Super White Paper.
For the page size and paper weight you can use for the printer, see [Media Types You Can Use](#).

● Loading Paper in the Rear Tray

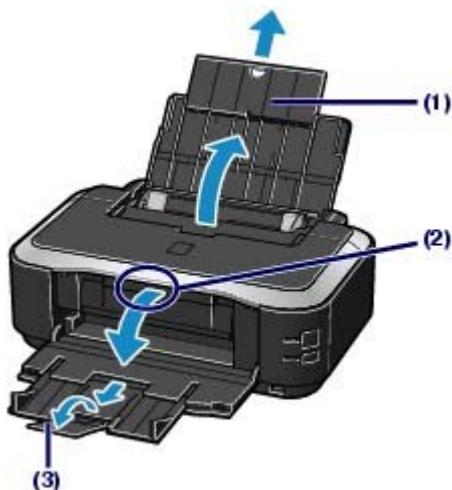
1. Flatten the four corners of paper before loading it.



Note

- Align the edges of paper neatly before loading. Loading paper without aligning the edges may cause paper jams.
- If paper is curled, hold the curled corners and gently bend them in the opposite direction until the paper becomes completely flat.
For details on how to flatten curled paper, refer to the "Troubleshooting" in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide*.

2. Prepare for loading paper.



- (1) Open the Paper Support, and pull it out.

- (2) Put your finger on the center of the top of the Paper Output Tray and open it gently.
- (3) Extend to open the Output Tray Extension.

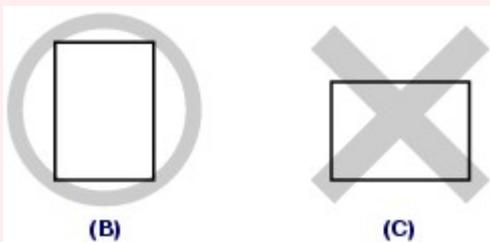
3. Load paper.



- (1) Slide the Paper Guides (A) to open them, and load the paper in the center of the Rear Tray WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING YOU.

Important

- Always load paper in the portrait orientation (B). Loading paper in the landscape orientation (C) can cause paper jams.

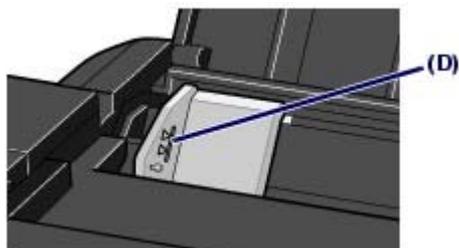


- (2) Slide the Paper Guides to align with the both sides of the paper stack.

Do not slide the Paper Guides too hard. The paper may not be fed properly.

Note

- Do not load higher than the Load Limit Mark (D).



Note

After Loading Paper

- Select the size and type of the loaded paper in Page Size (or Paper Size) and Media Type in the printer driver. See [Printing Documents \(Windows\)](#) or [Printing Documents \(Macintosh\)](#).

● Loading Paper in the Cassette

You can load only A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette.
See [Media Types You Can Use](#).

1. Flatten the four corners of paper before loading it.

See [Loading Paper in the Rear Tray](#).

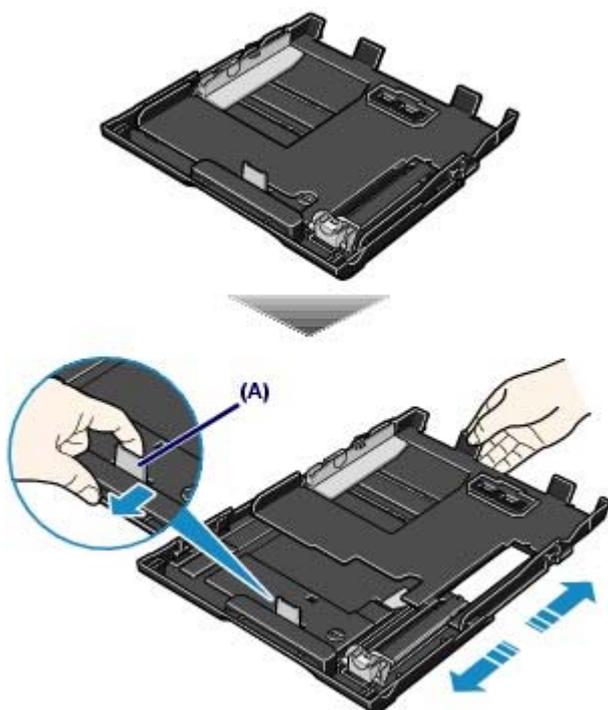
2. Pull out the Cassette from the printer.



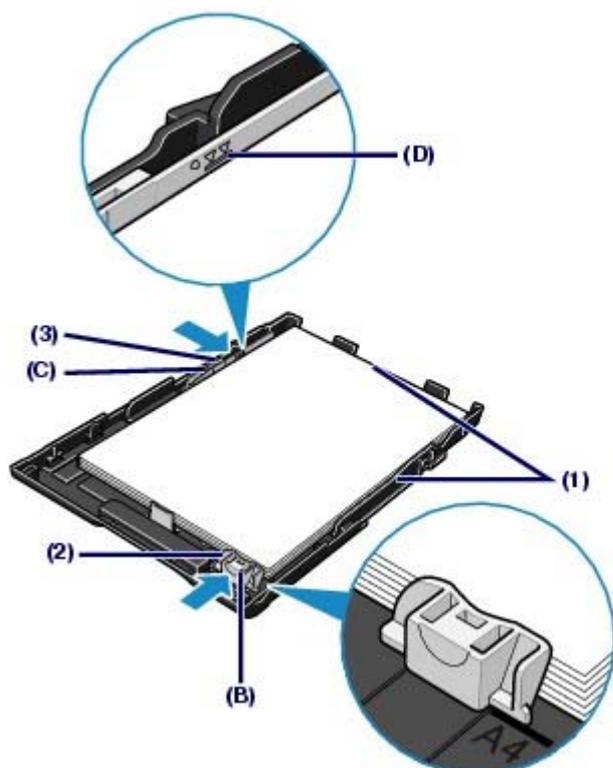
3. Remove the Cover on the Cassette.

4. Prepare for loading the paper in the Cassette.

Pull the tab (A) towards you to unlock and extend the Cassette.



5. Load paper.



- (1) Load the paper stack WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING DOWN and THE LEADING EDGE TO THE FAR SIDE, and align it against the right side of the Cassette.
- (2) Slide the Paper Guide (B) to align with the mark of paper size.
The Paper Guide (B) will stop when it aligns with the corresponding mark of paper size.

 **Note**

- There may be a little space between the Paper Guide (B) and the paper stack.

- (3) Slide the Paper Guide (C) on the left to align completely with the side of the paper stack.

 **Note**

- Do not load higher than the Load Limit Mark (D).

6. Set the Cover on the Cassette.

7. Insert the Cassette into the printer.

Push the Cassette all the way into the printer.

 **Note**

- The Cassette will stick out of the printer, but do not force it into the printer any further.
This can damage the printer or Cassette.



8. Open the Paper Output Tray.



(1) Put your finger in the center of the top of the Paper Output Tray and open it gently.

(2) Extend to open the Output Tray Extension.

Note

After Loading Paper

- Select the size and type of the loaded paper in Page Size (or Paper Size) and Media Type in the printer driver. See [Printing Documents \(Windows\)](#) or [Printing Documents \(Macintosh\)](#).



■ Loading Envelopes

You can print on European DL and US Comm. Env. #10-sized envelopes.

The address is automatically rotated and printed according to the envelope's direction by specifying with the printer driver properly.

Important

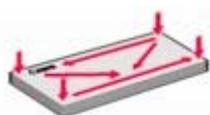
- You cannot use the following envelopes.
 - Envelopes with an embossed or treated surface
 - Envelopes with a double flap (or sticker flaps)
 - Envelopes with pressure seals
 - Envelopes whose gummed flaps are already moistened and adhesive

Note

- You cannot load envelopes in the Cassette. Load them in the Rear Tray.

1. Prepare envelopes.

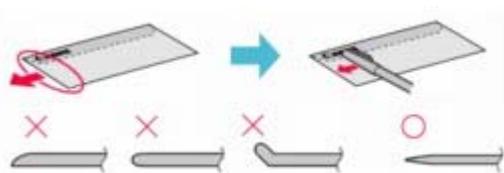
- Press down on all four corners and edges of the envelopes to flatten them.



- If the envelopes are curled, hold the opposite corners and gently twist them in the opposite direction.



- If the corner of the envelope flap is folded, flatten it.
- Use a pen to press the leading edge in the inserting direction flat and sharpen the crease.

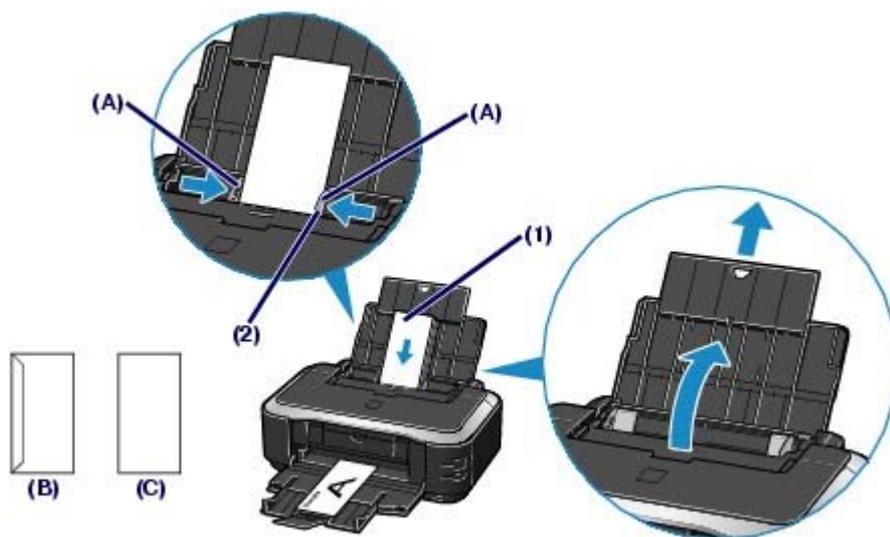


The figures above show a side view of the leading edge of the envelope.

Important

- The envelopes may jam in the printer if they are not flat or the edges are not aligned. Make sure that no curl or puff exceeds 0.1 inches / 3 mm.

2. Load envelopes.



(B) Rear side

(C) Address side

(1) Slide the Paper Guides (A) to open them, and load the envelopes in the center of the Rear Tray **WITH THE ADDRESS SIDE FACING YOU**.

The folded flap of the envelope will be faced down on the left side.

Up to 10 envelopes can be loaded at once.

(2) Slide the Paper Guides to align them with both sides of the envelopes.

Do not slide the Paper Guides too hard. The envelopes may not be fed properly.

3. Specify the settings in the printer driver.

(1) Select Envelope in Media Type.

(2) Select the size for envelopes.



Select DL Env. or Comm. Env. #10 in Page Size.



Select DL Envelope or #10 Envelope in Paper Size.

(3) Select Landscape in Orientation.



Important

- If you do not specify Page Size(or Paper Size) or Orientation properly, the address will be printed upside down or will be turned to 90 degrees.



Note

- In Windows, if the print result is upside down, select Rotate 180 degrees on the Page Setup sheet in the printer properties dialog box of the printer driver.



Basic Guide

■ Advanced Guide ■ Troubleshooting

[Contents](#) > [Loading Paper](#) > [Loading Paper](#) > Media Types You Can Use

■ Media Types You Can Use

Choose paper suitable for printing, for the best print results. Canon provides you various types of paper to enhance the fun of printing, such as stickers as well as papers for photo or document. We recommend the use of Canon genuine paper for printing your important photos.

● Media Types

Commercially available papers

Name of Paper <Model No.> *1	Paper Load Limit		Paper Output Tray Load Limit	Settings in Printer Driver: Media Type
	Rear Tray	Cassette		
Plain Paper (Recycled Paper)	Approx. 150 sheets	A4, B5, A5, Letter / 8.5" x 11": Approx. 150 sheets	Approx. 50 sheets	Plain Paper
Envelopes	10 envelopes	Not loadable*3	*4	Envelope

Canon genuine papers

Name of Paper < Model No.> *1	Paper Load Limit		Paper Output Tray Load Limit	Settings in Printer Driver: Media Type
	Rear Tray	Cassette		
For printing documents:				
Super White Paper < SW-201>	Approx. 100 sheets	A4: Approx. 100 sheets	Approx. 50 sheets	Plain Paper
For printing photos:				
				
Photo Paper Pro Platinum <PT-101>*5	A4, Letter / 8.5" x 11", 5" x 7" / 13 x 18 cm and 8" x 10" / 20 x 25 cm: 10 sheets 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm: 20 sheets	Not loadable*3	*4	Photo Paper Pro Platinum
Photo Paper Pro II < PR-201>*5				Photo Paper Pro II
Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" <GP -501>*5				Glossy Photo Paper
Photo Paper Glossy <GP-502>*5				Glossy Photo Paper
Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP- 201>*5				Photo Paper Plus Glossy II
Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss <SG-201 >*5				Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss
Matte Photo Paper < MP-101>				Matte Photo Paper
For printing business documents:				
				
High Resolution Paper <HR-101N>	80 sheets	Not loadable*3	50 sheets	High Resolution Paper

For creating your own prints:



T-Shirt Transfers <TR-301>	1 sheet	Not loadable*3	*4	T-Shirt Transfers
Photo Stickers <PS-101>	1 sheet			Glossy Photo Paper

*1 Paper with a Model Number is Canon genuine paper. Refer to the instruction manual supplied with the paper for detailed information on the printable side and notes on handling paper. For information on the page sizes available for each Canon genuine paper, visit our website. You may not be able to purchase some Canon genuine papers depending on the country or region of purchase. Paper is not sold in the US by Model Number. Purchase paper by name.

*2 Proper feeding of paper may not be possible at the maximum capacity depending on the type of paper or environmental conditions (either very high or low temperature or humidity). In such cases, reduce the number of paper you load at a time to less than half (100% recycled paper can be used).

*3 Feeding this paper from the Cassette can damage the printer. Always load in the Rear Tray.

*4 We recommend that you remove the previously printed sheet from the Paper Output Tray before continuously printing to avoid blurs and discoloration.

*5 When loading paper in stacks, the print side may become marked as it is fed or paper may not feed properly. In this case, load one sheet at a time.

● Page Sizes

- You can load plain paper of the following page sizes in the Cassette.

A4, B5, A5, and Letter sizes

Plain paper of other page sizes is not loadable in the Cassette. Load them in the Rear Tray.

- In Macintosh, Choukei 3 and Choukei 4 are not available.

Standard sizes:

- Letter (8.50 x 11.00 inches / 215.9 x 279.4 mm)
- Legal (8.50 x 14.00 inches / 215.9 x 355.6 mm)
- A5 (5.83 x 8.27 inches / 148.0 x 210.0 mm)
- A4 (8.27 x 11.69 inches / 210.0 x 297.0 mm)
- B5 (7.17 x 10.12 inches / 182.0 x 257.0 mm)
- 4" x 6" (4.00 x 6.00 inches / 10 x 15 cm)
- 4" x 8" (4.00 x 8.00 inches / 101.6 x 203.2 mm)
- 5" x 7" (5.00 x 7.00 inches / 13 x 18 cm)
- 8" x 10" (8.00 x 10.00 inches / 20 x 25 cm)
- L (3.50 x 5.00 inches / 89.0 x 127.0 mm)
- 2L (5.00 x 7.01 inches / 127.0 x 178.0 mm)
- Hagaki (3.94 x 5.83 inches / 100.0 x 148.0 mm)
- Hagaki 2 (7.87 x 5.83 inches / 200.0 x 148.0 mm)
- Comm. Env. #10 (4.12 x 9.50 inches / 104.6 x 241.3 mm)
- DL Env. (4.33 x 8.66 inches / 110.0 x 220.0 mm)
- Choukei 3 (4.72 x 9.25 inches / 120.0 x 235.0 mm)
- Choukei 4 (3.54 x 8.07 inches / 90.0 x 205.0 mm)
- Youkei 4 (4.13 x 9.25 inches / 105.0 x 235.0 mm)
- Youkei 6 (3.86 x 7.48 inches / 98.0 x 190.0 mm)
- Card (2.16 x 3.58 inches / 55.0 x 91.0 mm)
- Wide (4.00 x 7.10 inches / 101.6 x 180.6 mm)

Non-standard sizes:

You can also specify a custom size within the following range.

- Minimum size: 2.17 x 3.58 inches / 55.0 x 91.0 mm (Rear Tray)
5.83 x 8.27 inches / 148.0 x 210.0 mm (Cassette)
- Maximum size: 8.50 x 26.61 inches / 215.9 x 676.0 mm (Rear Tray)
8.50 x 11.69 inches / 215.9 x 297.0 mm (Cassette)

● Paper Weight

17 to 28 lb / 64 to 105 gsm (plain paper except for Canon genuine paper)

Do not use heavier or lighter paper (except for Canon genuine paper), as it could jam in the printer.

● Notes on Storing Paper

- Take out only the necessary number of paper from the package, just before printing.
- To avoid curling, when you do not print, put unused paper back into the package and keep it on a level surface. And also, store it avoiding heat, humidity, and direct sunlight.



[↑ Page top](#)

■ Media Types You Cannot Use

Do not use the following types of paper. Using such paper will not only produce unsatisfactory results, but can also cause the printer to jam or malfunction.

- Folded, curled, or wrinkled paper
- Damp paper
- Paper that is too thin (weighing less than 17 lb / 64 gsm)
- Paper that is too thick (plain paper, except for Canon genuine paper, weighing more than 28 lb / 105 gsm)
- Paper thinner than a postcard, including plain paper or notepad paper cut to a small size (when printing on A5 or smaller sized paper)
- Picture postcards
- Postcards affixed with photos or stickers
- Envelopes with a double flap (or sticker flaps)
- Envelopes with pressure seals
- Envelopes with an embossed or treated surface
- Envelopes whose gummed flaps are already moistened and adhesive
- Any type of paper with holes
- Paper that is not rectangular
- Paper bound with staples or glue
- Paper with adhesives
- Paper decorated with glitter, etc.



Routine Maintenance

This section describes how to replace ink tanks when they run out of ink, to clean the printer when the print result is faint, or to take an action when paper does not feed properly.

Replacing an Ink Tank

- [Checking the Ink Status](#)
- [Replacing Procedure](#)

When Printing Becomes Faint or Colors Are Incorrect

- [Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern](#)
- [Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern](#)
- [Cleaning the Print Head](#)
- [Cleaning the Print Head Deeply](#)
- [Aligning the Print Head](#)

Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller

Cleaning the Pad in the Cassette

Opening the Maintenance Screens

- [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#)
- [Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility \(Macintosh\)](#)



Replacing an Ink Tank

When ink runs out while printing is in progress, the **Alarm** lamp flashes orange four times and the error message will appear on your computer screen. Make sure which ink tank has run out of ink and replace it with a new ink tank.



Note

- If the error message appears, confirm the displayed message and take an appropriate action. For details, refer to the "Four Flashes: Ink has run out." of the "Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange" in the "[Troubleshooting](#)" of the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide*.
 - For information on compatible ink tanks, refer to the printed manual: *Getting Started*.
-



[↑ Page top](#)

■ Checking the Ink Status

You can check the ink status on the ink lamps or your computer screen.

● With the Ink Lamps

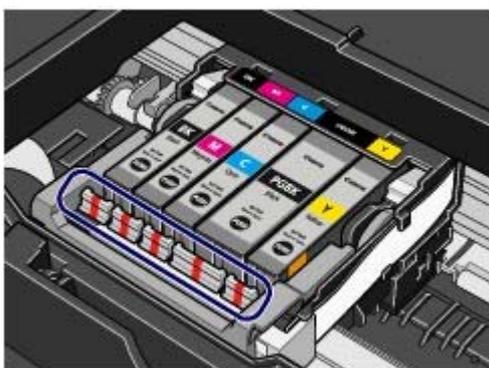
1. Make sure that the power is turned on, and open the Paper Output Tray gently.
2. Open the Top Cover.



Note

- The printer may make operating noise when the Print Head moves to the replacement position.

3. Check the ink lamps.



● Ink lamp is on

The ink tank is correctly installed and there is sufficient ink left for printing.

● Ink lamp is flashing

Flashing slowly (at around 3-second intervals)



Ink is low. You can continue printing for a while, but we recommend you to have a new ink tank available.

Flashing fast (at around 1-second intervals)



The ink tank is installed in the wrong position or it is empty. Make sure that the ink tank is installed in the correct position as indicated by the label on the Print Head Holder. If the position is correct but the lamp flashes, the ink tank is empty. Replace it with a new one.

● Ink lamp is off

The ink tank is not installed properly or the function for detecting the remaining ink level is disabled. If the ink tank is not installed properly, press the mark  (Push) on the ink tank until the ink tank clicks into place. If it does not click into place, make sure that the orange protective cap has been removed from the bottom of the ink tank. If the function for detecting the remaining ink level is disabled, replace the ink tank with a new one.

See [Prepare the new ink tank.](#)

If the ink lamp is still off after reinstalling the ink tank, there has been an error and the printer cannot print. Check the **Alarm** lamp on the printer.

Refer to the "[Troubleshooting](#)" in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide*.

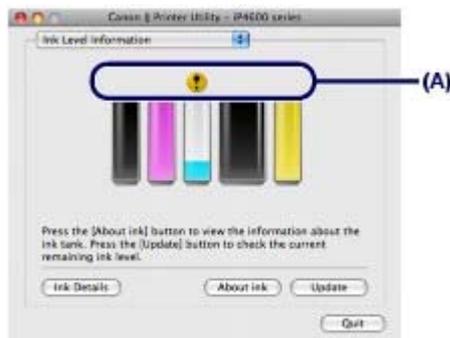
● With the Computer Screen

You can confirm the status of each ink tank on the printer status monitor (Windows) and Canon IJ Printer Utility (Macintosh).

Windows



Macintosh



(A) Check if any symbol appears on the screen.

- Ink with  (Ink low) is running low. You can continue printing for a while, but we recommend you to have a new ink tank available.



Note

- An error message may appear while printing. Confirm the message and take an appropriate action.

Follow the procedure below to open each of the confirmation screens.

Windows

1. Open the printer properties dialog box.

See [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#) .

2. Click View Printer Status on the Maintenance sheet.

To confirm the ink tank information, click the Ink Details menu.



Note

- You can also display the printer status monitor by clicking Canon XXX (where " XXX" is your printer's name) which appears on the taskbar during printing.

Macintosh

1. Open the Canon IJ Printer Utility.

See [Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility \(Macintosh\)](#).

2. Select Ink Level Information in the pop-up menu.

To confirm the ink tank information, click Ink Details.



■ Replacing Procedure

When the ink tanks run out of ink, follow the procedure below to replace them.

⚠ Important

Handling Ink

- To maintain optimal print quality, we recommend the use of specified Canon brand ink tanks. Refilling ink is not recommended.
- If you remove an ink tank, replace it immediately. Do not leave the printer with ink tanks removed.
- Use new ink tanks for replacement. Installing used ink tanks may cause the nozzles to clog. Furthermore, with such tanks, the printer will not be able to inform you when to replace the ink tanks properly.
- To maintain optimal print quality, install ink tanks in the printer within the date indicated on the package box. And also use ink tanks within 6 months of first use (We recommend you to put down the date when installing them).

📖 Note

- Color ink may be consumed even when printing a black-and-white document or when black-and-white printing is specified. Every ink is also consumed in the standard cleaning and deep cleaning of the Print Head, which may be necessary to maintain the printer's performance. When an ink tank is out of ink, replace it immediately with a new one.

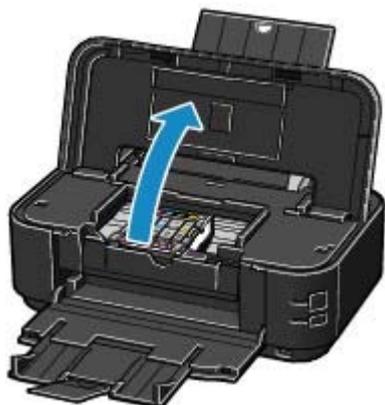
1. Make sure that the power is turned on and open the Paper Output Tray gently.

2. Open the Top Cover.

The Print Head moves to the replacement position.

⚠ Caution

- Do not hold the Print Head Holder to stop or move it forcibly. Do not touch the Print Head Holder until it stops completely.
- Do not touch the metallic parts or other parts inside the printer.



⚠ Important

- If the Top Cover is left open for more than 10 minutes, the Print Head Holder moves to the right. In this case, close and reopen the Top Cover.

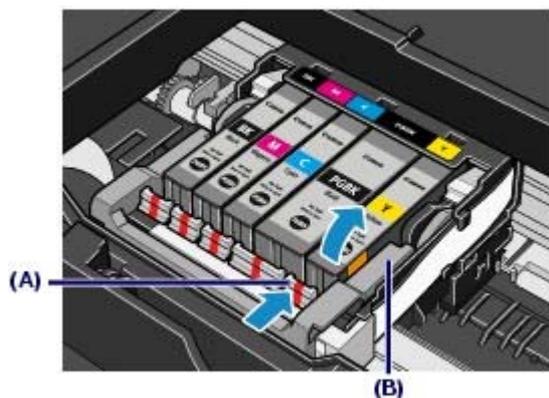
📖 Note

- The printer may make operating noise when the Print Head moves to the replacement position.

3. Replace the ink tank with the lamp flashing fast.

Push the tab (A) and lift the ink tank to remove.

Do not touch the Print Head Lock Lever (B).



Important

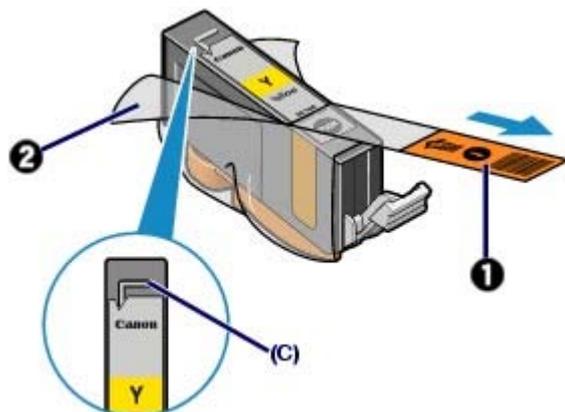
- Handle the ink tank carefully to avoid staining of clothing or the surrounding area.
- Discard empty ink tank according to the local laws and regulations regarding disposal of consumables.

Note

- Do not remove two or more ink tanks at the same time. Be sure to replace ink tanks one by one when replacing two or more ink tanks.
- For details on ink lamp flashing speed, see [Checking the Ink Status](#).

4. Prepare the new ink tank.

- (1) Take the new ink tank out of its package, pull the orange tape (1) in the direction of the arrow to peel off the tape, then remove the film (2).



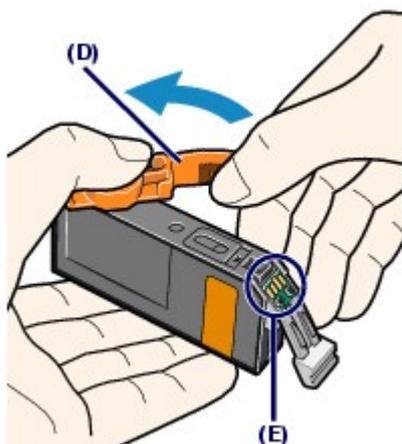
Important

- Make sure that the film is completely removed from the air hole (C). If the air hole is blocked with the remaining film, ink may leak out or may not eject properly.

- (2) Hold the orange protective cap (D) as indicated in the figure below, then twist and remove it from the bottom of the ink tank.

Remove the protective cap while holding it to prevent the ink from staining your fingers.

Discard the protective cap once it is removed.



Important

- Do not touch the electrical contacts (E) on the ink tank. It can cause the printer to malfunction or become unable to print.

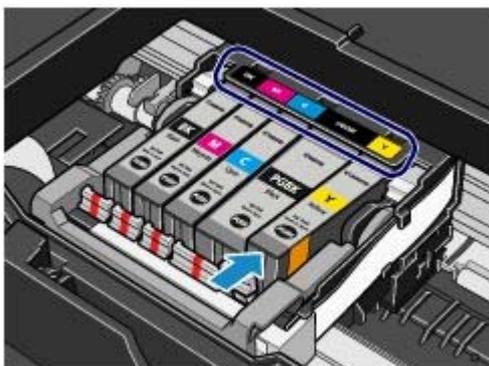
Important

- If you shake an ink tank, the ink may spill out and stain your hands and the surrounding area. Handle an ink tank carefully.
- Do not squeeze the side of ink tanks as this may cause the ink to leak out.
- Be careful not to stain your hands and the surrounding area with ink on the removed protective cap.
- Do not reattach the protective cap once you have removed it. Discard it according to the local laws and regulations regarding disposal of consumables.
- Do not touch the open ink port once the protective cap is removed, as this may prevent the ink from being ejected properly.

5. Install the new ink tank.

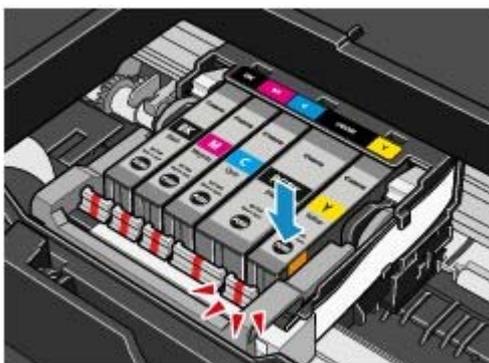
(1) Insert the front end of ink tank into the Print Head at a slant.

Make sure the position of the ink tank matches the label.



(2) Press the mark (Push) on the ink tank until the ink tank snaps firmly into place.

Make sure that the ink lamp lights up red.



 **Important**

- You cannot print if the ink tank is installed in the wrong position. Be sure to install the ink tank in the correct position according to the label on the Print Head Holder.
- You cannot print unless all the ink tanks are installed. Be sure to install all the ink tanks.

6. Close the Top Cover.

If you replaced the ink tank during printing, the printer resumes printing automatically.

 **Note**

- If the **Alarm** lamp still flashes orange after the Top Cover is closed, refer to the "Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange" in the "[Troubleshooting](#)" of the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide*.
- When you start printing after replacing the ink tank, the printer starts cleaning the Print Head automatically. Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the cleaning of the Print Head. The **Power** lamp flashes green during cleaning.
- If printed ruled lines are printed or the print head position is misaligned, adjust the print head position.
See [Aligning the Print Head](#).
- The printer may make operating noise when preparing for printing.



 [Page top](#)

When Printing Becomes Faint or Colors Are Incorrect

If print results are blurred or colors are not printed correctly, the print head nozzles are probably clogged. Follow the procedure below to print nozzle check pattern, check the print head nozzle condition, then clean the Print Head.

If printed ruled lines are misaligned or print results are otherwise unsatisfactory, aligning the Print Head may improve print quality.

Caution

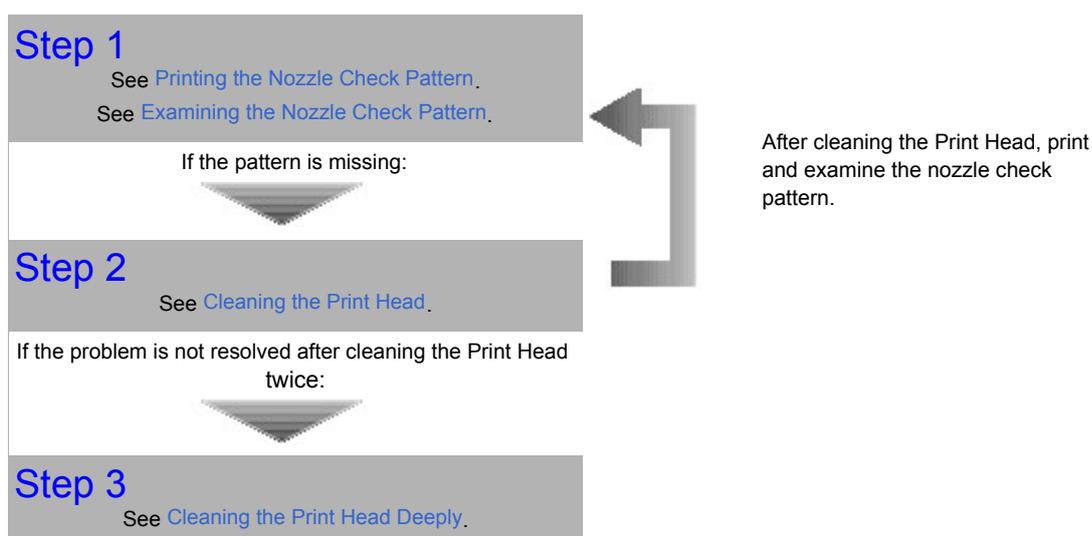
- Do not rinse or wipe the Print Head and ink tanks. This can cause trouble with the Print Head and ink tanks.

Note

Before performing maintenance

- Open the Top Cover and make sure that all lamps on the ink tanks are lit red. If not, see [Checking the Ink Status](#) and take an appropriate action.
- Increasing the print quality in the printer driver settings may improve the print result. For details, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).

● When the Print Results Are Blurred or Uneven:



Note

- If you have performed the procedure until step 3 and the problem has not been resolved, turn off the power and clean the Print Head deeply again after 24 hours. If the problem is still not resolved, the Print Head may be damaged. Contact your Canon service representative.

● When the Print Results Are Not Even such as the Ruled Lines Are Misaligned:

See [Aligning the Print Head](#).



■ Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern

Print the nozzle check pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

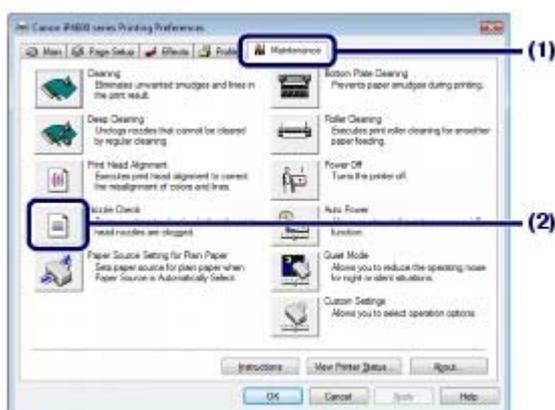
You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

Note

- If the Inner Cover is open, close it.
- If the remaining ink level is low, the nozzle check pattern will not be printed correctly. Replace the ink tank whose ink is low.
See [Replacing an Ink Tank](#).
- You can also print the nozzle check pattern from the printer itself using the **RESUME/CANCEL** button.
 1. Make sure that the power is turned on and one or more sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper are loaded in the Cassette.
 2. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.
 3. Hold down the **RESUME/CANCEL** button until the **Power** lamp flashes green twice, and then release it immediately.
The nozzle check pattern will be printed. Do not open the Top Cover while printing is in progress. Examine the pattern and take an appropriate action.
See [Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern](#).

Windows

1. Make sure that the power is turned on and one or more sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper are loaded in the Cassette.
2. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.
3. Open the printer properties dialog box.
See [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#).
4. Print the nozzle check pattern.



(1) Click the Maintenance tab.

(2) Click Nozzle Check.

(3) Confirm the displayed message and click Print Check Pattern.

The nozzle check pattern will be printed. Do not open the Top Cover while printing is in progress.

**Note**

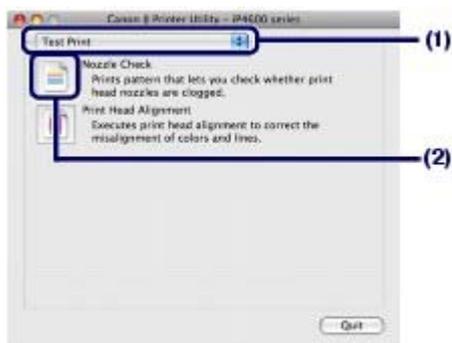
- Clicking Initial Check Items displays the items to be checked before printing the pattern.

5. Examine the pattern.

See [Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern](#).

Macintosh

1. Make sure that the power is turned on and one or more sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper are loaded in the Cassette.
2. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.
3. Open the Canon IJ Printer Utility dialog box.
See [Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility \(Macintosh\)](#).
4. Print the nozzle check pattern.



(1) Select Test Print in the pop-up menu.

(2) Click Nozzle Check.

(3) Confirm the displayed message and click Print Check Pattern.

The nozzle check pattern will be printed. Do not open the Top Cover while printing is in progress.

**Note**

- Clicking Initial Check Items displays the items to be checked before printing the pattern.

5. Examine the pattern.

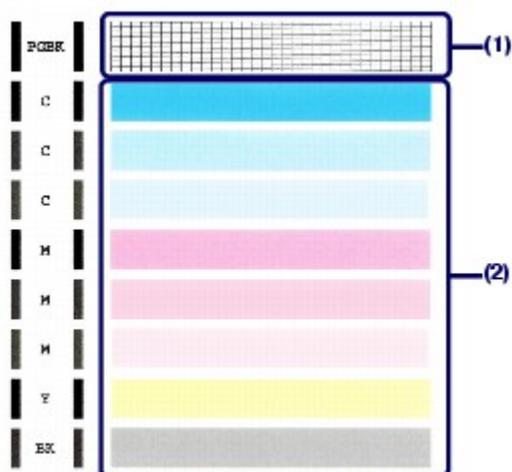
See [Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern](#).



■ Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern

Examine the nozzle check pattern, and clean the Print Head if necessary.

1. Check if there are no missing lines in the pattern (1) or no white streaks in the pattern (2).



- (1) Check if lines are missing in this pattern.

If yes, clean the Print Head of the PGBK black ink tank.



(A) Good

(B) Bad (Lines are missing)

- (2) Check if white streaks are present in this pattern.

If yes, clean the Print Heads of the color ink tanks including the BK black ink tank.



(A) Good

(B) Bad (White streaks are present)

If there are missing lines in (1) and also white streaks in (2), clean all the ink tanks.

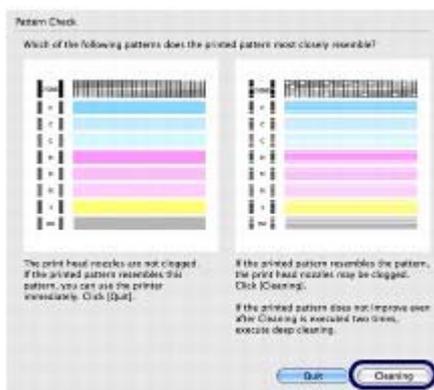
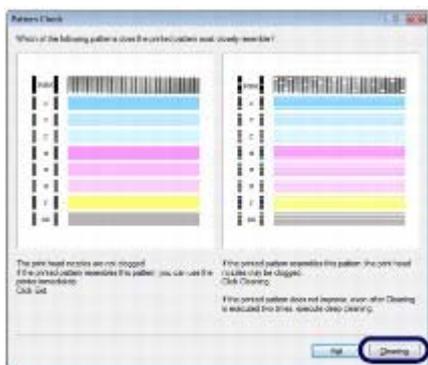
2. Take necessary action.

- When cleaning is not required

Click Exit (Windows) or Quit (Macintosh) on the Pattern Check dialog box to exit nozzle check pattern examination.

- When cleaning is required





Click Cleaning.

Make sure that one or more sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper are loaded in the Cassette, and then proceed to the procedure below.



Go to the procedure of (3) in step 4.



Go to the procedure of (3) in step 4.



[↑ Page top](#)

■ Cleaning the Print Head

Clean the Print Head if lines are missing or if white streaks are present in the printed nozzle check pattern. Cleaning unclogs the nozzles and restores the print head condition. Cleaning the Print Head consumes ink, so clean the Print Head only when necessary.

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper



Note

- If the Inner Cover is open, close it.

Cleaning the Print Head without a computer

- You can also clean the Print Heads of all color ink tanks at the same time from the printer itself using the **RESUME/CANCEL** button.

1. Make sure that the power is turned on.
2. Hold down the **RESUME/CANCEL** button until the **Power** lamp flashes green once, and then release it immediately.

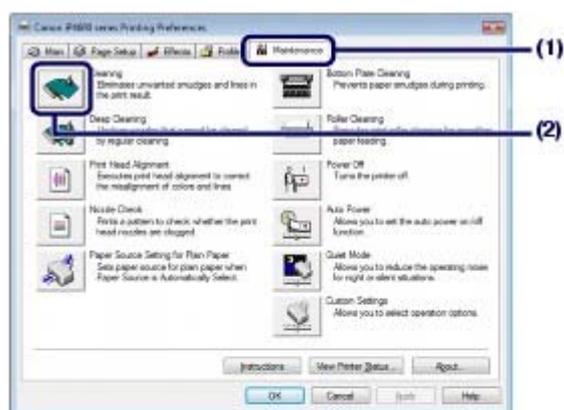
The printer starts cleaning the Print Head. When the **Power** lamp is lit green after flashing, the cleaning will be completed. Print the nozzle check pattern to check the print head condition after cleaning.

See [Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern](#).



If you click Cleaning on the Pattern Check dialog box that appears after printing the nozzle check pattern, the printer starts cleaning the Print Head. Make sure that one or more sheets of A4 or Letter-sized paper are loaded in the Cassette, and then go to the procedure of (3) in step 4.

1. Make sure that the power is turned on and one or more sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper are loaded in the Cassette.
2. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.
3. Open the printer properties dialog box.
See [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#) .
4. Clean the Print Head.



(1) Click the Maintenance tab.

(2) Click Cleaning.

(3) Select the ink group to clean.

When cleaning the nozzles of black ink tanks: Select Black if there are missing lines in PGBK of the nozzle check pattern, or Color if there are white streaks in BK of the nozzle check pattern.

For details on the nozzle check pattern, see [Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern](#).

(4) Click Execute.

The printer starts cleaning the Print Head when the **Power** lamp starts flashing green.

Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the cleaning of the Print Head. This takes about 1 minute 30 seconds.



Note

- Clicking Initial Check Items displays the items to be checked before printing the pattern.

(5) Confirm the displayed message and click Print Check Pattern.

The nozzle check pattern will be printed.

Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the printing of the nozzle check pattern.

5. Check the printed nozzle check pattern.

See [Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern](#).



Note

- If the problem is not resolved after cleaning the Print Head twice, clean the Print Head deeply. See [Cleaning the Print Head Deeply](#).

Macintosh

If you click Cleaning on the Pattern Check dialog box that appears after printing the nozzle check pattern, the printer starts cleaning the Print Head. Make sure that one or more sheets of A4 or Letter-sized paper are loaded in the Cassette, and then go to the procedure of (3) in step 4.

1. Make sure that the power is turned on and one or more sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper are loaded in the Cassette.

2. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.
3. Open the Canon IJ Printer Utility dialog box.
See [Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility \(Macintosh\)](#).
4. Clean the Print Head.



(1) Make sure that Cleaning is selected in the pop-up menu.

(2) Click Cleaning.

(3) Select the ink group to clean.

When cleaning the nozzles of black ink tanks: Select Black if there are missing lines in PGBK of the nozzle check pattern, or Color if there are white streaks in BK of the nozzle check pattern.

For details on the nozzle check pattern, see [Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern](#).

(4) Click OK.

The printer starts cleaning the Print Head when the **Power** lamp starts flashing green.

Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the cleaning of the Print Head. This takes about 1 minute 30 seconds.



Note

- Clicking Initial Check Items displays the items to be checked before cleaning.

(5) Confirm the displayed message and click Print Check Pattern.

The nozzle check pattern will be printed.

Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the printing of the nozzle check pattern.

5. Check the printed nozzle check pattern.

See [Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern](#).



Note

- If the problem is not resolved after cleaning the Print Head twice, clean the Print Head deeply.
See [Cleaning the Print Head Deeply](#).



[↑ Page top](#)

Contents > Routine Maintenance > When Printing Becomes Faint or Colors Are Incorrect > Cleaning the Print Head Deeply

■ Cleaning the Print Head Deeply

If print quality does not improve by standard cleaning of the Print Head, clean the Print Head deeply. Cleaning the Print Head deeply consumes more ink than standard cleaning of the Print Head, so clean the Print Head deeply only when necessary.

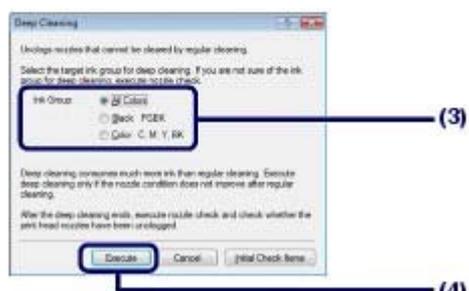
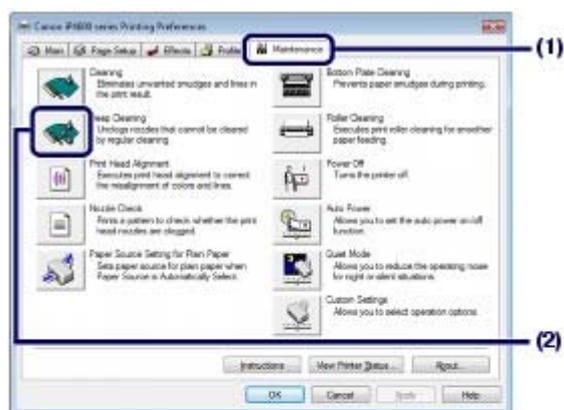
Windows

1. Make sure that the power is turned on.

2. Open the printer properties dialog box.

See [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#) .

3. Clean the Print Head deeply.



(1) Click the Maintenance tab.

(2) Click Deep Cleaning.

(3) Select the ink group to clean deeply.

When cleaning the nozzles of black ink tanks: Select Black if there are missing lines in PGBK of the nozzle check pattern, or Color if there are white streaks in BK of the nozzle check pattern.

For details on the nozzle check pattern, see [Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern](#).

(4) Click Execute.



Note

- Clicking Initial Check Items displays the items to be checked before cleaning the Print Head deeply.

(5) Confirm the displayed message and click OK.

The printer starts cleaning the Print Head deeply when the **Power** lamp starts flashing green.

Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the deep cleaning of the Print Head. This takes about 3 minutes.

4. Print the nozzle check pattern to check the print head condition.

See [Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern](#).



Note

- If the problem is not resolved, open the Top Cover to confirm that the ink is remaining, turn off the printer, then clean the Print Head deeply again after 24 hours.
- If this does not solve the problem, the Print Head may be damaged. Contact the Canon service representative.

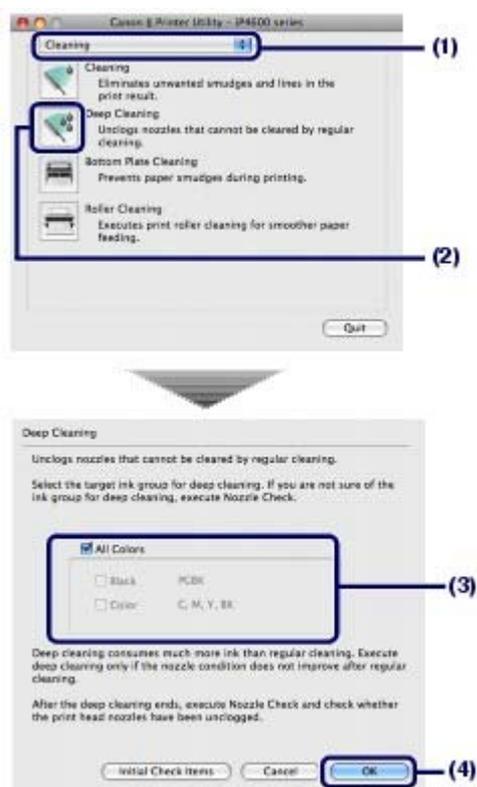
Macintosh

1. Make sure that the power is turned on.

2. Open the Canon IJ Printer Utility dialog box.

See [Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility \(Macintosh\)](#).

3. Clean the Print Head deeply.



(1) Make sure that Cleaning is selected in the pop-up menu.

(2) Click Deep Cleaning.

(3) Select the ink group to clean deeply.

When cleaning the nozzles of black ink tanks: Select Black if there are missing lines in PGBK of the nozzle check pattern, or Color if there are white streaks in BK of the nozzle check pattern.

For details on the nozzle check pattern, see [Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern](#).

(4) Click OK.

The printer starts cleaning the Print Head deeply when the **Power** lamp starts flashing green.

Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the deep cleaning of the Print Head. This takes about 3 minutes.

**Note**

- Clicking Initial Check Items displays the items to be checked before cleaning the Print Head deeply.
-

4. Print the nozzle check pattern to check the print head condition.

See [Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern](#).

**Note**

- If the problem is not resolved, open the Top Cover to confirm that the ink is remaining, turn off the printer, then clean the Print Head deeply again after 24 hours.
 - If this does not solve the problem, the Print Head may be damaged. Contact the Canon service representative.
-



[↑ Page top](#)

■ Aligning the Print Head

If printed ruled lines are misaligned or print results are otherwise unsatisfactory, adjust the print head position.

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized supplied paper or Canon Matte Photo Paper MP-101



Note

- If the Inner Cover is open, close it.

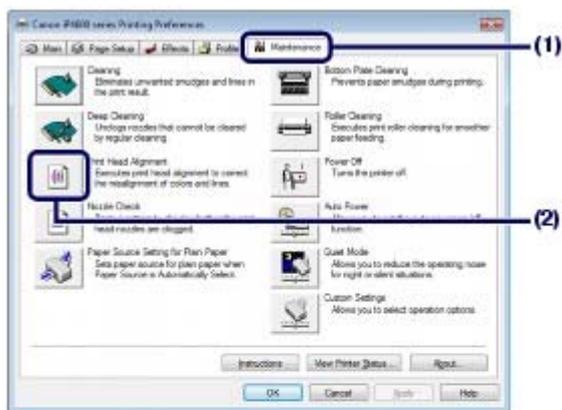
Aligning the Print Head without a computer

- You can also align the Print Head from the printer itself using the **RESUME/CANCEL** button.

1. Make sure that the power is turned on and a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized supplied paper or Canon Matte Photo Paper MP-101 is loaded in the Rear Tray. Load them with the printing side (whiter side) facing you in the Rear Tray.
2. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.
3. Hold down the **RESUME/CANCEL** button until the **Power** lamp flashes green four times, and then release it immediately.
The print head alignment pattern will be printed. Do not open the Top Cover while printing is in progress.
The print head position is adjusted automatically when the printer finishes printing the print head alignment pattern.

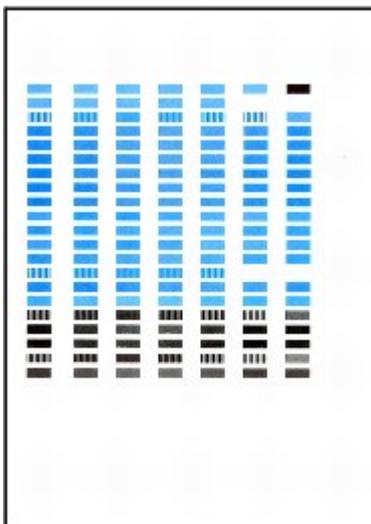
Windows

1. Make sure that the power is turned on and a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized supplied paper or Canon Matte Photo Paper MP-101 is loaded in the Rear Tray.
Load them with the printing side (whiter side) facing you in the Rear Tray.
2. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.
3. Open the printer properties dialog box.
See [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#) .
4. Adjust the print head position.



- (1) Click the Maintenance tab.
- (2) Click Print Head Alignment.
- (3) Confirm the displayed message, and click Align Print Head.

The print head alignment pattern will be printed and the printer will adjust the print head position automatically. Do not open the Top Cover while printing is in progress. Printing takes about 7 minutes to complete.



Note

- The pattern will be printed in black and blue.
- If the adjustment has failed, the **Alarm** lamp will flash. Refer to the "Eleven flashes: Automatic Print Head Alignment failed." in the "Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange" of the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).
- If the above does not improve the print results, align the Print Head manually. Refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).

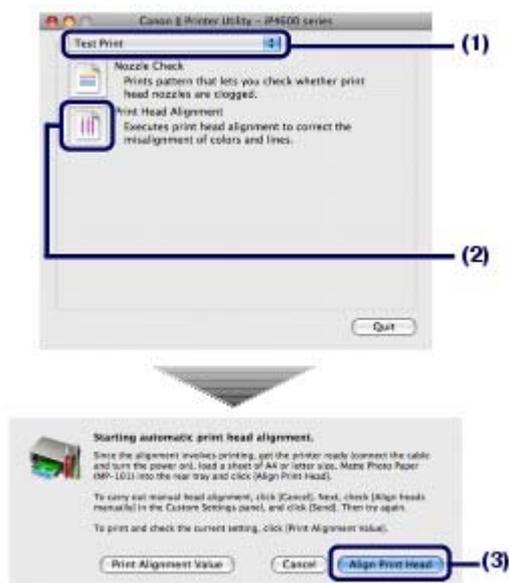
Macintosh

1. Make sure that the power is turned on and a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized supplied paper or Canon Matte Photo Paper MP-101 is loaded in the Rear Tray. Load them with the printing side (whiter side) facing you in the Rear Tray.
2. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.

3. Open the Canon IJ Printer Utility dialog box.

See [Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility \(Macintosh\)](#).

4. Adjust the print head position.

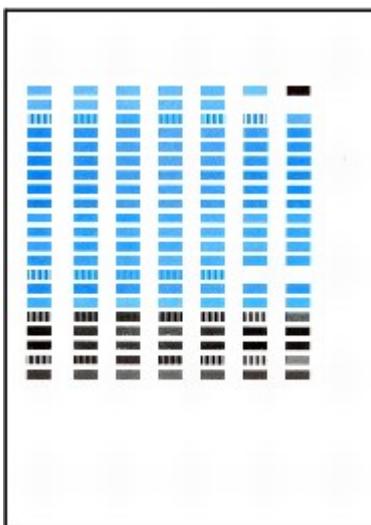


(1) Select Test Print in the pop-up menu.

(2) Click Print Head Alignment.

(3) Confirm the displayed message, and click Align Print Head.

The print head alignment pattern will be printed and the printer will adjust the print head position automatically. Do not open the Top Cover while printing is in progress. Printing takes about 7 minutes to complete.



Note

- The pattern will be printed in black and blue.
- If the adjustment has failed, the **Alarm** lamp flashes.
Refer to the "Eleven flashes: Automatic Print Head Alignment failed." in the "Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange" of the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).
- If the above does not improve the print results, align the Print Head manually.
Refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).



Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller

If the Paper Feed Roller is dirty or paper powder is attached to it, paper may not be fed from the Rear Tray or Cassette properly. In this case, clean the Paper Feed Roller. Cleaning will wear out the Paper Feed Roller, so perform this only when necessary.

You need to prepare: three sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

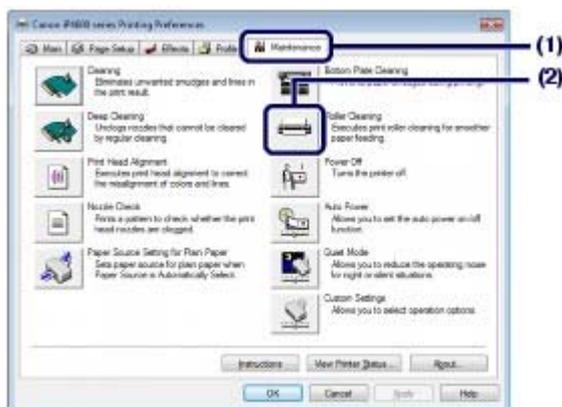


Note

- If the Inner Cover is open, close it.



1. Make sure that the power is turned on, and remove any paper in the printer.
2. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.
3. Open the printer properties dialog box.
See [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#) .
4. Clean the Paper Feed Roller.



- (1) Click the Maintenance tab.
- (2) Click Roller Cleaning.
- (3) Select the paper source to clean.
- (4) Click OK.



- (5) Confirm the displayed message, and click OK.
The Paper Feed Roller will rotate as it is cleaned.

5. Make sure that the Paper Feed Roller stops rotating. When the message appears, load paper in the paper source you selected in the procedure of (3) in step 4.

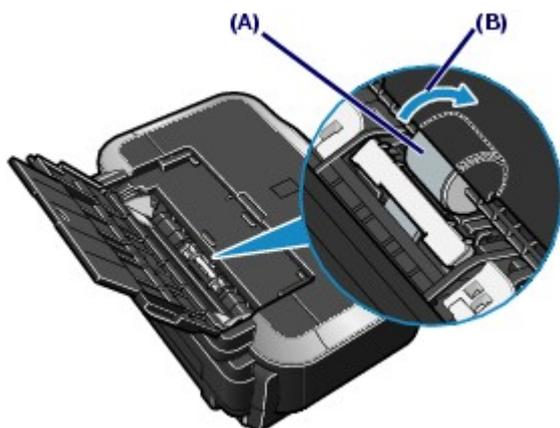
Load three sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper.

6. Confirm the displayed message, and click OK.

The paper that is loaded in the printer will feed through the printer and be ejected.

Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the cleaning of the Paper Feed Roller.

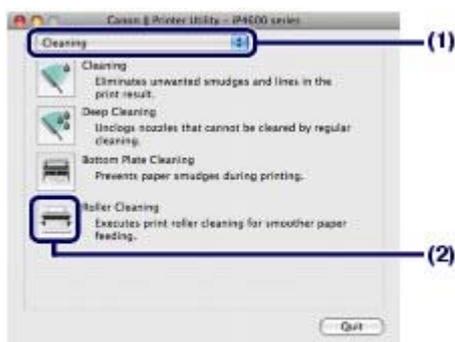
7. When the completion message appears, click OK.



If the problem is not resolved after cleaning the Paper Feed Roller (A) in the Rear Tray as described above, turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and then wipe the Paper Feed Roller located in the center inside the Rear Tray with a moistened cotton swab or the like. Rotate the roller manually in the direction of the arrow (B) as you clean it. Do not touch the roller with your fingers; rotate it with the cotton swab. If this does not solve the problem, contact your Canon service representative.

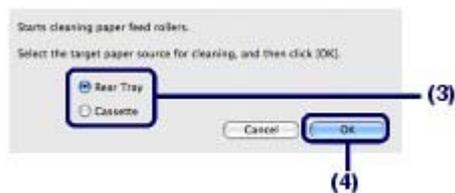
Macintosh

1. Make sure that the power is turned on, and remove any paper in the printer.
2. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and extend to open the Output Tray Extension.
3. Open the Canon IJ Printer Utility dialog box.
See [Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility \(Macintosh\)](#).
4. Clean the Paper Feed Roller.



- (1) Make sure that Cleaning is selected in the pop-up menu.
- (2) Click Roller Cleaning.
- (3) Select the paper source to clean.

- (4) Click OK.

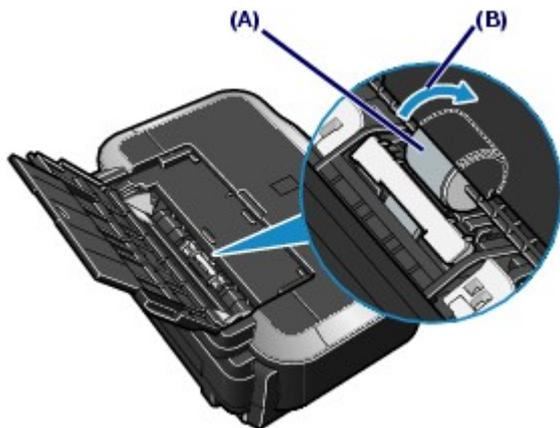


- (5) Confirm the displayed message, and click OK.
The Paper Feed Roller will rotate as it is cleaned.

5. Make sure that the Paper Feed Roller stops rotating. When the message appears, load paper in the paper source you selected in the procedure of (3) in step 4.
Load three sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper.

6. Confirm the displayed message, and click OK.

The paper that is loaded in the printer will feed through the printer and be ejected.
Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the cleaning.



If the problem is not resolved after cleaning the Paper Feed Roller (A) in the Rear Tray as described above, turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and then wipe the Paper Feed Roller located in the center inside the Rear Tray with a moistened cotton swab or the like. Rotate the roller manually in the direction of the arrow (B) as you clean it. Do not touch the roller with your fingers; rotate it with the cotton swab. If this does not solve the problem, contact your Canon service representative.

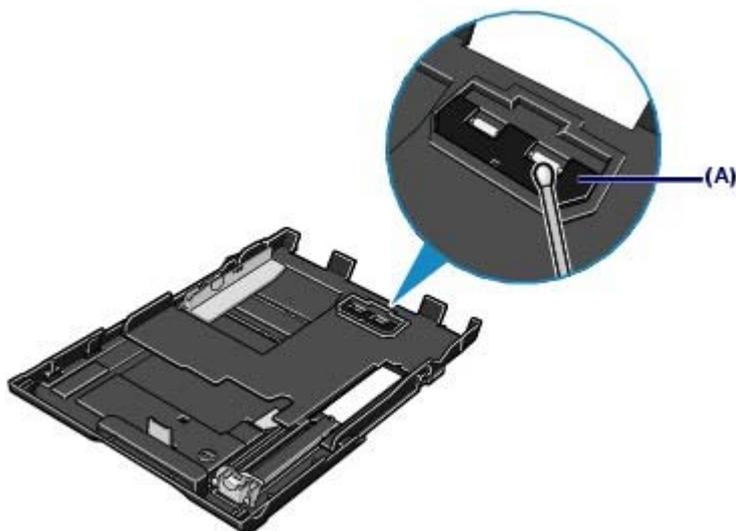


Cleaning the Pad in the Cassette

If the Pad in the Cassette is smeared with paper powder or dirt, two or more sheets of paper may be ejected. Follow the procedure below to clean the Pad in the Cassette.

You need to prepare: cotton swab

1. Pull out the Cassette from the printer, and remove all the papers.
2. Clean the Pad sideways with a moistened cotton swab.



(A) Pad

Important

- After cleaning the smeared Pad, dry it completely.
- If the problem is not resolved, contact your Canon service representative.



Opening the Maintenance Screens

You can maintain the printer from the printer properties dialog box (Windows) or Canon IJ Printer Utility (Macintosh).

■ Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box (Windows)

1. Click Control Panel, and Printer under Hardware and Sound.

In Windows XP, click Control Panel, Printers and Other Hardware, then Printers and Faxes.

In Windows 2000, click Control Panel, and Printers.

2. Right-click the Canon XXX icon (where "XXX" is your printer's name), and select Printing Preferences.



The printer properties dialog box opens.



Note

- You can also open the printer properties dialog box from your software application or My Printer on a desktop.

For details, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).

■ Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility (Macintosh)

1. Open System Preferences, and click Print & Fax.

2. Select your printer's name in Printers, and click Open Print Queue.

The list of printer jobs appears.

3. Click Utility.

The print list dialog box appears.

4. Select your printer's name in the Product list, and click Maintenance.



The Canon IJ Printer Utility starts up.



Note

- You can also open Canon IJ Printer Utility by the procedure below. Select Applications from the Go menu, double-click the Utilities folder, then double-click Printer Setup Utility. For details, refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).



[↑ Page top](#)

Appendix

[Safety Precautions](#)

[Legal Limitations on Use of Your Product and Use of Images](#)

[Tips on How to Use Your Printer](#)



[↑ Page top](#)

⚠ Safety Precautions

Please read the safety warnings and cautions provided in this manual to ensure that you use the printer safely. Do not attempt to use the printer in any way not described in this manual. It causes unexpected accident, fire, or electrical shock.

⚠ Warning

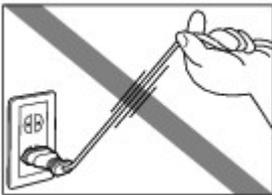
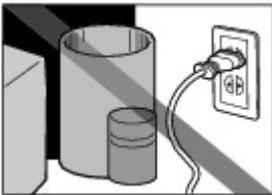
- This product emits low level magnetic flux. If you use a cardiac pacemaker and feel abnormalities, please move away from this product and consult your doctor.
- You may cause an electric shock, fire, or damage the printer if you ignore any of these safety precautions.

<p>Choosing a location</p>	<p>Do not place the printer close to flammable solvents such as alcohol or thinners.</p>
<p>Power supply</p>	<p>Never attempt to plug in or unplug the printer from the power supply when your hands are wet.</p> <p>Always push the plug all the way into the power outlet.</p> <div> </div> <p>Never damage, modify, stretch or excessively bend or twist the power cord. Do not place heavy objects on the power cord.</p> <div> </div> <p>Never plug the printer into a power socket that is shared with other equipment (extension lead/cord, 2- or 3-way adapter, etc.).</p> <p>Never use the printer if the power cord is bundled or knotted.</p> <p>If you detect smoke, unusual smells or strange noises around the printer, immediately unplug the printer at the power supply and call for service.</p> <div> </div> <p>Periodically, unplug the printer and use a dry cloth to wipe off any dust or dirt collected on the plug and the power outlet. If the printer is placed at a location exposed to a lot of dust, smoke, or high humidity, the dust collected on the plug absorbs moisture and may cause insulation failure and fire.</p> <p>If you hear thunder, disconnect the power supply of the printer and refrain from using it. Leaving the printer plugged in may cause fire, electric shock, or damage to the printer, depending on the thunder storm.</p> <p>Use the power cable included with the printer.</p>
<p>Cleaning the printer</p>	<div> </div> <p>Use a damp cloth to clean the printer. Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene or thinners.</p> <p>If flammable solvents come in contact with electrical components inside the printer, it could cause a fire or electric shock.</p> <p>Always unplug the printer from the power outlet before cleaning the printer.</p>

	If you accidentally switch the printer on while cleaning it, you could injure yourself or damage the printer.
Maintaining the printer	Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the printer. There are no user serviceable parts inside the printer. The printer contains high-voltage components. Never attempt any maintenance procedure not described in this guide.
Working around the printer	Do not use highly flammable sprays near the printer. This could cause a fire or electric shock if the spray comes into contact with electrical components inside the printer.

 **Caution**

- You may cause injury or damage the printer if you ignore any of these safety precautions.

Choosing a location	Do not install the printer in a location that is unstable or subject to excessive vibration.
	Do not install the printer in locations that are very humid or dusty, in direct sunlight, outdoors, or close to a heating source. To avoid the risk of fire or electric shocks, install the printer in a location with an ambient temperature range of 5°C to 35°C (41°F to 95°F) and humidity of 10% to 90% (condensation free).
	Do not place the printer on a thick rug or carpet.
	Do not place the printer with its back attached to the wall.
Power supply	 Never remove the plug by pulling on the cord.
	 Do not use an extension lead/cord.
	 Ensure that the area around the power outlet is kept clear at all times so you can easily unplug the power cord if necessary.
Working around the printer	Never put your hands or fingers in the printer while it is printing.
	When moving the printer, carry the printer at both ends.
	Do not place any object on the printer.
	Do not place metal objects (paper clips, staples, etc.) or containers of flammable solvents (alcohol, thinners, etc.) on top of the printer.
	If any foreign object (metal or liquid) fall into the printer, unplug the power cord and call for service.
	Do not transport or use the printer on a slant, vertically or upside-down, as the ink may leak and damage the printer.
Print Head and ink tanks	Keep ink tanks out of the reach of children. In case ink is accidentally licked or swallowed, rinse out mouth or give one or two glasses of water to drink.

If irritation or discomfort occurs, obtain medical advice immediately.

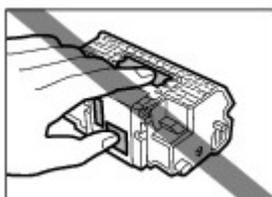
In case ink gets in contact with eyes, rinse with water immediately.

In case ink gets in contact with skin, wash with soap and water immediately.

If irritation to eyes or skin persists, obtain medical advice immediately.

Do not shake Print Heads or ink tanks.

Ink may spill out and stain clothing or the surrounding area.



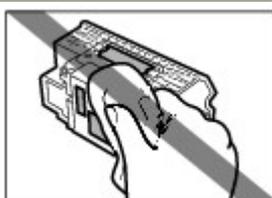
Never touch the electrical contacts on a Print Head after printing.

The metal parts may be very hot and could cause burns.

Do not throw ink tanks into fire.

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the Print Head and ink tanks.

Do not handle the Print Head and ink tanks roughly such as applying them excessive pressure or dropping them.



Do not rinse or wipe the Print Head and ink tanks.

Once you have installed the Print Head and ink tanks, do not remove them unnecessarily.

● **Note when you place the printer near other electrical appliances such as fluorescent lamps**

Place the printer at least 5.91 inches / 15 cm away from other electrical appliances such as fluorescent lamps. If the printer is placed closer to those, it may not be able to work properly due to fluorescent noises.

● **When you turn off the power**

When you turn off the power, always press the **Power** button and be sure that the **Power** lamp (in green) has gone out. If you disconnect the power plug from the power outlet when the **Power** lamp lights or flashes, the Print Head cannot be protected and you may not be able to print later.



Legal Limitations on Use of Your Product and Use of Images

It may be unlawful to print the following documents.

The list provided is non-exhaustive. When in doubt, check with a legal representative in your jurisdiction.

- Paper money
- Money orders
- Certificates of deposit
- Postage stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Identifying badges or insignias
- Selective service or draft papers
- Checks or drafts issued by governmental agencies
- Motor vehicle licenses and certificates of title
- Traveler's checks
- Food stamps
- Passports
- Immigration papers
- Internal revenue stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Bonds or other certificates of indebtedness
- Stock certificates
- Copyrighted works/works of art without permission of copyright owner



[↑ Page top](#)

Tips on How to Use Your Printer

This section introduces the tips on how to use your printer and for printing with optimal quality.

■ Ink is used for various purposes.

● How is ink used for various purposes other than printing?

Ink may be used for purposes other than printing. Ink is not only used for printing, but also for cleaning the Print Head to maintain the optimal printing quality.

The printer has the function to automatically clean the ink jet nozzles to prevent clogging. In the cleaning procedure, ink is pumped out from the nozzles. Used ink for nozzle cleaning is limited to a small amount.

● Important

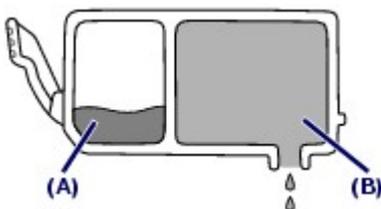
- The ink pumped out from the nozzles, such as when cleaning the Print Head, is absorbed by ink absorber in the printer. The ink absorber needs to be replaced when it is full. You cannot replace it by yourself. Contact your Canon service representative as soon as possible. Before the ink absorber becomes full, the **Alarm** lamp indicates you that it needs to be replaced with a new one. Refer to the "[Troubleshooting](#)" in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide*.

● Does black-and-white printing use color ink?

The use of each ink varies depending on the color of image to be printed or the contents of document. Two kinds of black ink (PGBK and BK) are used automatically depending on the media type to print or on the settings of the printer driver. PGBK is used mainly for printing text-based documents and BK is used mainly for printing photos, illustration, etc. Black-and-white printing may also use ink other than black ink. So, color ink is consumed even when printing in black-and-white.

● The ink lamp informs you when ink is running low.

The inside of the ink tank consists of (A) the part where ink is preserved and (B) the sponge with absorbed ink.



When the ink (A) runs out, the ink lamp flashes slowly to indicate that the ink is running low. Then, when the ink (B) runs out, the ink lamp flashes fast to indicate that the ink needs to be replaced with a new one.

■ Printing on special paper: How to print with optimal quality!?

● Tip!: Check the printer status before printing!

● Is the Print Head ok?

If print head nozzles are clogged, print will be faint and papers will be wasted. Print the nozzle check pattern to check the Print Head.

See [When Printing Becomes Faint or Colors Are Incorrect](#) .

● Is the inside of the printer smeared with ink?

After printing large quantities of paper or performing borderless printing, the area where papers go through may get smeared with ink. Clean the inside of your printer with Bottom Plate Cleaning.

Refer to the on-screen manual: [Advanced Guide](#).

● Tip!: Check how to load the paper correctly!

● Is the paper loaded in the correct orientation?

When loading paper in the Rear Tray or Cassette, make sure the orientation of paper.



(A)

(A) Rear Tray
(B) Cassette



(B)

● To load paper in the Rear Tray, load paper with the printing side facing you.

● To load paper in the Cassette, load paper with the printing side facing down.

● Is the paper curled?

The curled paper causes paper jam. Flatten the curled paper, then reload it.

Refer to the "[Troubleshooting](#)" in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide*.

● Tip!: After loading paper, be sure to specify the paper settings!

After loading paper, be sure to select the loaded paper in Media Type of the printer driver. If the type of paper is not selected, you may not be able to get the satisfactory print result.

See [Printing](#).

There are various types of paper: paper with special coating on the surface for printing photos with optimal quality and paper suitable for documents. Media Type of the printer driver has different settings for each type of paper in advance (such as using ink, ejecting ink, or distance from nozzles) so that you can print on each paper with the optimal image quality. You can print with different settings in Media Type suitable for each type of loaded paper.

■ Use the RESUME/CANCEL button to cancel printing!

● Tip!: Never press the Power button!

If you press the **Power** button while printing is in progress, the print data sent from the computer queues in the printer and you may not be able to continue to print.

Press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button to cancel printing.



Note

- If you cannot cancel printing by pressing the **RESUME/CANCEL** button while printing from a computer, open the printer properties dialog box to delete the unnecessary print jobs from the printer status monitor (Windows).

■ How to maintain the optimal printing quality?

The key to printing with the optimal printing quality is to prevent the Print Head from drying or clogging. Always follow the following steps for optimal printing quality.

● Follow the procedure below to unplug the power cord.

- 1 Press the **Power** button on the printer to turn it off.
- 2 Be sure that the **Power** lamp is not lit.
- 3 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet, or turn off the extender cable connector.

If you press the **Power** button to turn off the power, the printer caps the Print Head (nozzles) automatically to prevent from drying. If you unplug the power cord from the wall outlet or turn off the extender cable connector before the **Power** lamp is turned off, the Print Head will not be capped properly and this will cause drying or clogging.

To unplug the power cord, be sure to follow this procedure.

● **Print periodically!**

Just as the tip of a felt pen becomes dry and unusable if it has not been used for a long time, even if it is capped, the Print Head too, may become dried or clogged if the printer has not been used for a long time.

We recommend the printer to be used at least once a month.



Note

- Depending on the type of paper, ink may blur if you trace the printed area with a highlight pen or paint-stick, or bleed if water or sweat comes in contact with the printed area.

■ Does the printer need to be handled with care when using or transporting?

● **Tip!: Do not use or transport the printer vertically or slanted!**

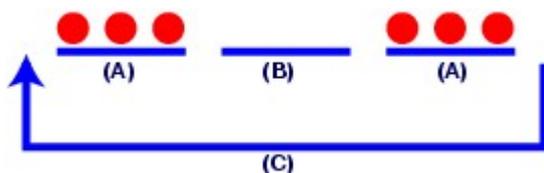
If the printer is used or transported vertically or slanted, the printer may become damaged or ink may leak from the printer.

Be sure not to use or transport the printer vertically or slanted.



■ Lamp on the printer is flashing: What can I do?

● **Alarm lamp is flashing orange.**



(A) **Alarm** lamp flashes

(B) **Alarm** lamp is off

(C) **Alarm** lamp flashes repeatedly

→Your printer has an error. Refer to the "[Troubleshooting](#)" in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide*, then resolve the error.

● **Power lamp flashes green once and Alarm lamp flashes orange once alternately.**

→An error that requires repair has occurred. Contact your Canon service representative.

■ Colors are uneven, and print results are blurred.

- **Tip!: Print the nozzle check pattern to check if the nozzles are clogged.**

If the print head nozzles are clogged, colors may become uneven or the print results may be blurred.



In this case



Print the nozzle check pattern

Check the printed check pattern to see if the nozzles are clogged.
See [When Printing Becomes Faint or Colors Are Incorrect](#) .



[↑ Page top](#)



Printing

Troubleshooting

How to Use This Manual

Printing This Manual

Printing on DVD/CDs

Maintenance

Changing the Printer Settings

Appendix

When you display this On-screen Manual in a language environment other than English, some English descriptions may be displayed.

Printing

Printing from a Computer

Printing with the Bundled Application Software

What Is Easy-PhotoPrint EX?

Printing Photos

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting a Photo

Selecting the Paper

Printing

Creating an Album

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper and Layout

Selecting a Photo

Editing

Printing

Printing a DVD/CD

Printing Calendars

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper and Layout

Selecting a Photo

Editing

Printing

Printing Stickers

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper and Layout

Selecting a Photo

Editing

Printing

Printing Layout

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper and Layout

Selecting a Photo

Editing

Printing

Correcting and Enhancing Photos

Using the Auto Photo Fix Function

Using the Red-Eye Correction Function

Using the Face Brightener Function

Using the Face Sharpener Function

Using the Digital Face Smoothing Function

Using the Blemish Remover Function

Adjusting Images

Correct/Enhance Images Window

Questions and Answers

How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?

How Do I Print with Even Margins?

What Is "C1" or "C4"?

Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings

Printing on a DVD/CD

Printing Vivid Photos

Reducing Photo Noise

Cropping Photos (Photo Print)

Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)

Printing Multiple Photos on One Page

Printing an Index

Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)

Printing Photo Information

Saving Photos

Opening Saved Files

Changing Layout

Changing Background

Adding Photos

Swapping Positions of Photos

Replacing Photos

Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos

Cropping Photos

Framing Photos

Printing Dates on Photos

Attaching Comments to Photos

Adding Text to Photos

Saving

Setting Holidays

Setting Calendar Display

Printing with Other Application Software

Various Printing Methods

Printing with Easy Setup

Setting a Page Size and Orientation

Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order

Setting the Stapling Margin

Borderless Printing

Fit-to-Page Printing

Scaled Printing

Page Layout Printing

Poster Printing

Booklet Printing

Duplex Printing

Stamp/Background Printing

Saving a Stamp Setting

- Saving Image Data to be Used as a Background
- Printing an Envelope
- Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose
- Displaying the Print Results before Printing
- Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)
- Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data
 - Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
 - Printing a Color Document in Monochrome
 - Specifying Color Correction
 - Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data
 - Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver
 - Printing with ICC Profiles
 - Adjusting Color Balance
 - Adjusting Brightness
 - Adjusting Intensity
 - Adjusting Contrast
 - Simulating an Illustration
 - Representing Image Data with a Single Color
 - Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors
 - Smoothing Jagged Outlines
 - Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration
 - Reducing Photo Noise
- Overview of the Printer Driver
 - Canon IJ Printer Driver
 - How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window
 - Maintenance Tab
 - Canon IJ Status Monitor
 - The Canon IJ Preview

Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device

- Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device
 - Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device
 - About PictBridge Print Settings
 - Settings on a PictBridge Compliant Device

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting

- If an Error Occurs
 - The Printer Can Not Be Powered On
 - Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange
 - Power Lamp Flashes Green and Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange Alternately
 - Cannot Install the Printer Driver
 - Cannot Connect to Computer Properly
 - Printing Speed Is Slow / Hi-Speed USB Connection Does Not Work/"This device can perform faster" Message Is Displayed
 - Print Results Not Satisfactory
 - Cannot Print to End of Job
 - Part of the Page Is Not Printed

No Printing Results/Printing Is Blurred/Colors Are Wrong/
White Streaks

Lines Are Misaligned

Printed Paper Curled or Has Ink Blots

Paper Is Smudged/Printed Surface Is Scratched

Back of the Paper Is Smudged

Vertical Lines Are Printed on the Sides of the Printout

Colors Are Uneven or Streaked

Printing Does Not Start

Printing Stops Before It Is Completed

Printer Moves But Ink Is Not Ejected

Printing Speed Not as Fast as Expected

Print Head Holder Does Not Move to the Position for
Replacing

Paper Does Not Feed Properly

Paper Does Not Feed from the Paper Source Specified in the
Printer Driver

Paper Jams

Message Appears on the Computer Screen

Service Error 5100 Is Displayed

Error Regarding Automatic Duplex Printing Is Displayed

Error Regarding Automatic Print Head Alignment Is
Displayed

Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error

Error Number: 300 Is Displayed

Error Number: 1700 Is Displayed

Ink Info Number: 1600 Is Displayed

Ink Info Number: 1683 Is Displayed

Ink Info Number: 1688 Is Displayed

Error Number: 1851 Is Displayed

Error Number: 1856 Is Displayed

Error Number: 2001 Is Displayed

Error Number: 2002 Is Displayed

Error Number: 2500 Is Displayed

Other Error Messages

Cannot Print Properly with Automatic Duplex Printing

For Windows Users

Printer Status Monitor Is Not Displayed

The Inkjet Printer/Scanner Extended Survey Program
Screen Is Displayed

Error Message Appears on a PictBridge Compliant Device

FAQs

If You Cannot Resolve the Problem

Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)

Using Easy-PhotoPrint EX

About Solution Menu

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > How to Use This Manual

How to Use This Manual

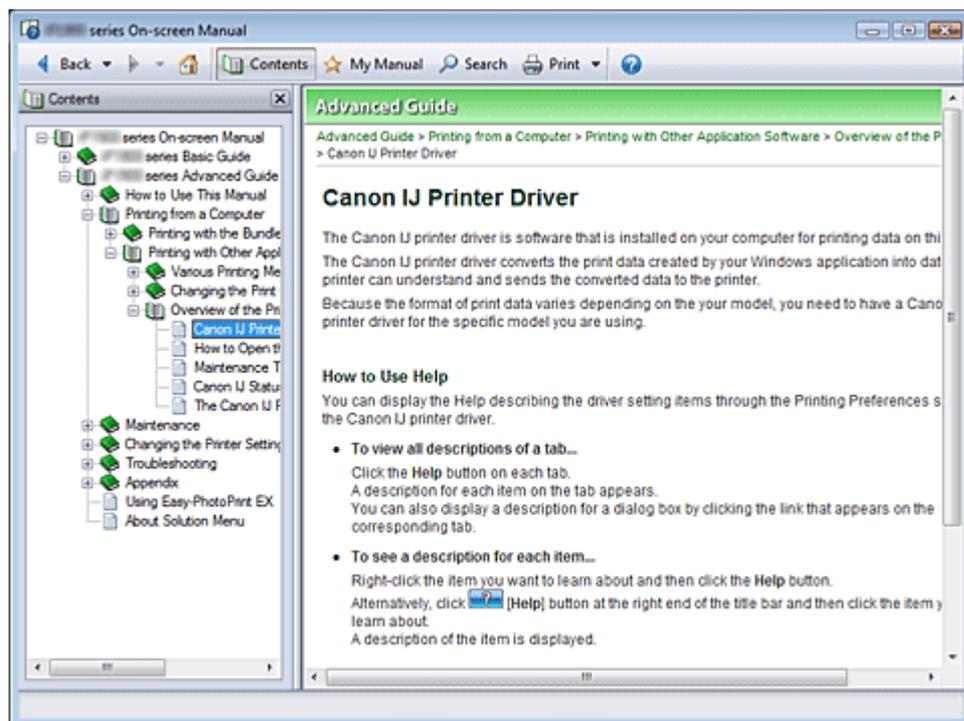
- ➔ [Operating the Contents Screen](#)
- ➔ [Operating the Explanation Screen](#)
- ➔ [Printing This Manual](#)
- ➔ [Using Keywords to Find a Topic](#)
- ➔ [Registering Topics to My Manual](#)
- ➔ [Symbols Used in this Document](#)
- ➔ [Trademarks](#)

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > How to Use This Manual > Operating the Contents Screen

Operating the Contents Screen



When you click a title displayed in the Contents screen found to the left of the On-screen Manual, the pages of that title are displayed in the description window on the right side.

When you click  found to the left of , the titles found in the lower hierarchies are displayed.

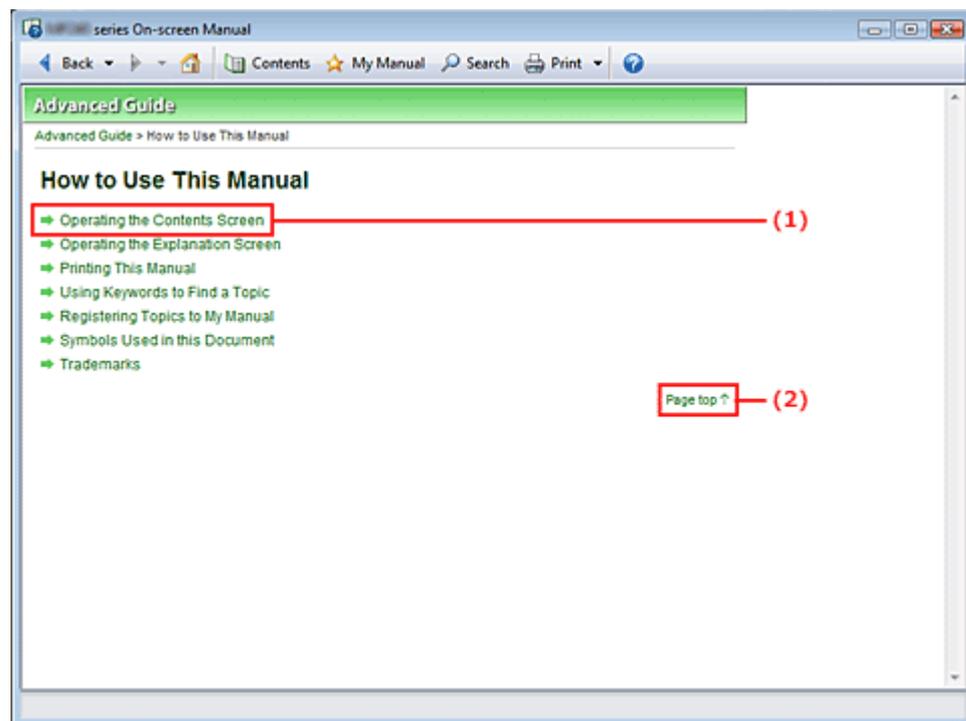
Note

- Click  to close or display the Contents screen.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > How to Use This Manual > Operating the Explanation Screen

Operating the Explanation Screen



(1) Click the green characters to jump to the corresponding page.

(2) The cursor jumps to the top of this page.

Page top ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > How to Use This Manual > Printing This Manual

Printing This Manual



Click  to display the Print window to the left of the On-screen Manual.

Note

- Click , and then click Option Settings to display the Option Settings dialog box. You can then set up the printing operation.
- To display the Print dialog box, click  and then click Print Settings. When the dialog box is displayed, select the printer to be used for printing. After selecting the printer to be used, click Properties... to specify the print settings.

The following four methods of printing are available:

- [Current Document](#)
- [Selected Documents](#)
- [My Manual](#)
- [All Documents](#)

Current Document

You can print the currently displayed topic.

1. From Select Target, select Current Document

The title of the currently displayed topic is displayed in the Documents to Be Printed list.

Note

- By selecting Print linked documents, you can also print documents that are linked to the current document. The linked documents are added to the Documents to Be Printed list.
- Click Print Preview to display and check what the print results will look like before you actually print the document.

2. Click Start Printing

The Print Page Count Confirmation dialog box is displayed.

3. Execute print

Confirm the number of pages to be printed, and then click Yes.

The topics that are currently displayed are printed.

Selected Documents

You can select and print the topics that you want printed.

1. From Select Target, select Selected Documents

The titles of all topics are displayed in the Documents to Be Printed list.

2. Select the topics to be printed

From the Documents to Be Printed list, select the title check boxes of the topics to be printed.



Note

- When you select the Automatically select documents in lower hierarchies check box, the check boxes of all titles found in the lower hierarchies are selected.
- Click Select All to select the check boxes of all titles.
Click Clear All to clear the check boxes of all titles.
- Click Print Preview to display and check what the print results will look like before you actually print the document.

3. Click Start Printing

The Print Page Count Confirmation dialog box is displayed.

4. Execute print

Confirm the number of pages to be printed, and then click Yes.

All topics with selected check boxes are printed.

My Manual

You can select and print topics registered in My Manual.

For details about My Manual, see "[Registering Topics to My Manual](#)."

1. From Select Target, select My Manual

The titles of the topics that have been registered to My Manual are displayed in the Documents to Be Printed list.

2. Select the topics to be printed

From the Documents to Be Printed list, select the title check boxes of the topics to be printed.



Note

- Click Select All to select the check boxes of all titles.
Click Clear All to clear the check boxes of all titles.
- Click Print Preview to display and check what the print results will look like before you actually print the document.

3. Click Start Printing

The Print Page Count Confirmation dialog box is displayed.

4. Execute print

Confirm the number of pages to be printed, and then click Yes.

All topics with selected check boxes are printed.

All Documents

You can print all topics of the On-screen Manual.

1. From Select Target, select All Documents

The titles of all topics are displayed in the Documents to Be Printed list, and the check boxes are automatically selected.

Note

- If you clear the check box of a topic, that topic is not printed.
 - Click Select All to select the check boxes of all titles.
Click Clear All to clear the check boxes of all titles.
 - Click Print Preview to display and check what the print results will look like before you actually print the document.
-

2. Click Start Printing

The Print Page Count Confirmation dialog box is displayed.

3. Execute print

Confirm the number of pages to be printed, and then click Yes.

All topics are printed.

Important

- A large amount of paper is necessary to print all topics. Before printing, be sure to check the number of print pages displayed in the Print Page Count Confirmation dialog box.
- You can change the print magnification from the Print Preview dialog box. However, if the print data extends outside the paper with the new magnification, the portion of the document will not be printed on the paper.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > How to Use This Manual > Using Keywords to Find a Topic

Using Keywords to Find a Topic

You can enter a keyword to search for a target page.

All installed On-screen Manuals (user's guides) are searched.



1. Click

A search window is displayed to the left of the On-screen Manual.

Note

- Click  to close or display the Search window.

2. Enter a keyword

In Keyword, enter a keyword for the item to be checked.

If you want to enter multiple keywords, insert a space between the keywords.

Note

- You can enter up to 10 keywords or up to 255 characters.
- Uppercase and lowercase are not discriminated.
- The program can also search for keywords that contain spaces.

3. Click Start Searching

The search is started, and the titles of topics containing the keyword are displayed in the search results list.

When you execute a search by entering multiple keywords, the search results are displayed as shown below.

[Documents Containing Perfect Match]

Topics containing the entire search character string (including spaces) exactly as entered (perfect match)

[Documents Containing All Keywords]

Topics containing all keywords that were entered

[Documents Containing Any Keyword]

Topics containing at least one of the keywords that were entered

4. Display the topic that you want to read

From the search results list, double-click (or select and press Enter) the title of the topic you want to read.

When the pages of that title are displayed, the keywords found on those pages are highlighted.

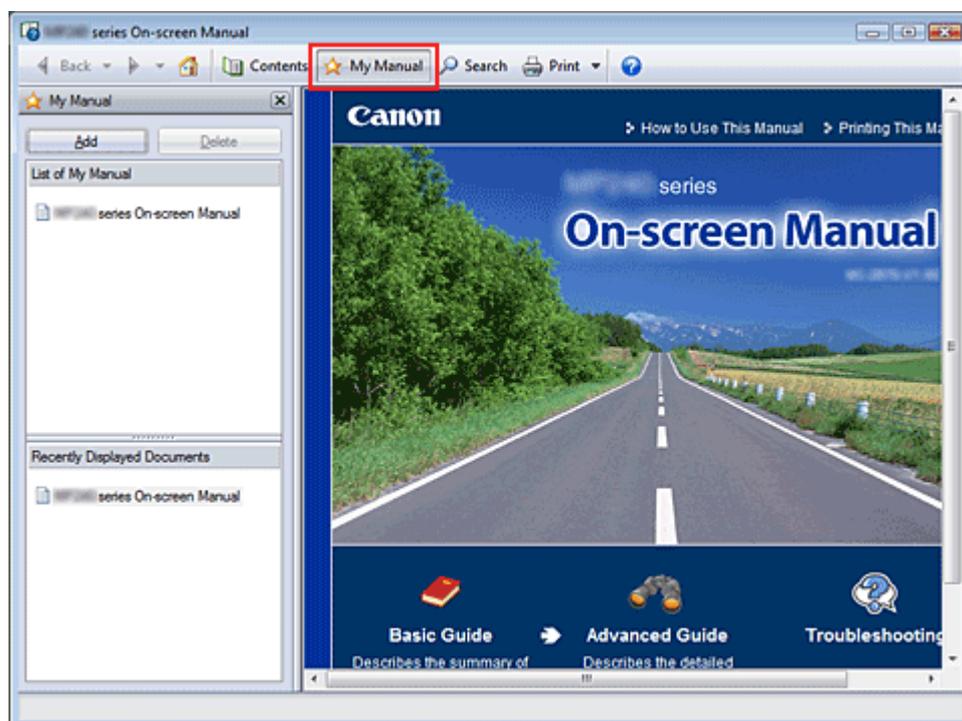
[Page top ↕](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > How to Use This Manual > Registering Topics to My Manual

Registering Topics to My Manual

Register frequently read pages as My Manual topics so that you can refer to those pages easily at any time.



1. Display the topic

Display the topic to be added to My Manual.

2. Click My Manual

The My Manual window is displayed to the left of the On-screen Manual.

Note

- Click  to close or display the My Manual window.

3. Register the topic to My Manual

Click Add.

The currently displayed topic is added to List of My Manual.

Note

- Alternatively, from the Recently Displayed Documents list, double-click (or select and press Enter) the topic to be added to My Manual to display that topic, and then click Add.

4. Display My Manual

When you double-click (or select and press Enter) a topic displayed in List of My Manual, that topic is displayed in the Description window.

Note

- To delete a topic from List of My Manual, select that topic from the list, and then click Delete (or press Delete).

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [How to Use This Manual](#) > [Symbols Used in this Document](#)

Symbols Used in this Document

Warning

Instructions that, if ignored, could result in death or serious personal injury caused by incorrect operation of the equipment. These must be observed for safe operation.

Caution

Instructions that, if ignored, could result in personal injury or material damage caused by incorrect operation of the equipment. These must be observed for safe operation.

Important

Instructions that must be observed for safe operation.

Note

Instructions as notes for operation or additional explanations.

Windows

Indicates operations in Windows.

Macintosh

Indicates operations in Macintosh.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [How to Use This Manual](#) > [Trademarks](#)

Trademarks

- Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.
- Windows is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Windows Vista is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Macintosh and Mac are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Adobe, Adobe Photoshop, Adobe RGB and Adobe RGB (1998) are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and or other countries.

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer

Printing from a Computer

- ➔ [Printing with the Bundled Application Software](#)
- ➔ [Printing with Other Application Software](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with the Bundled Application Software](#)

Printing with the Bundled Application Software

- ➔ [What Is Easy-PhotoPrint EX?](#)
- ➔ [Printing Photos](#)
- ➔ [Creating an Album](#)
- ➔ [Printing a DVD/CD](#)
- ➔ [Printing Calendars](#)
- ➔ [Printing Stickers](#)
- ➔ [Printing Layout](#)
- ➔ [Correcting and Enhancing Photos](#)
- ➔ [Questions and Answers](#)
- ➔ [Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

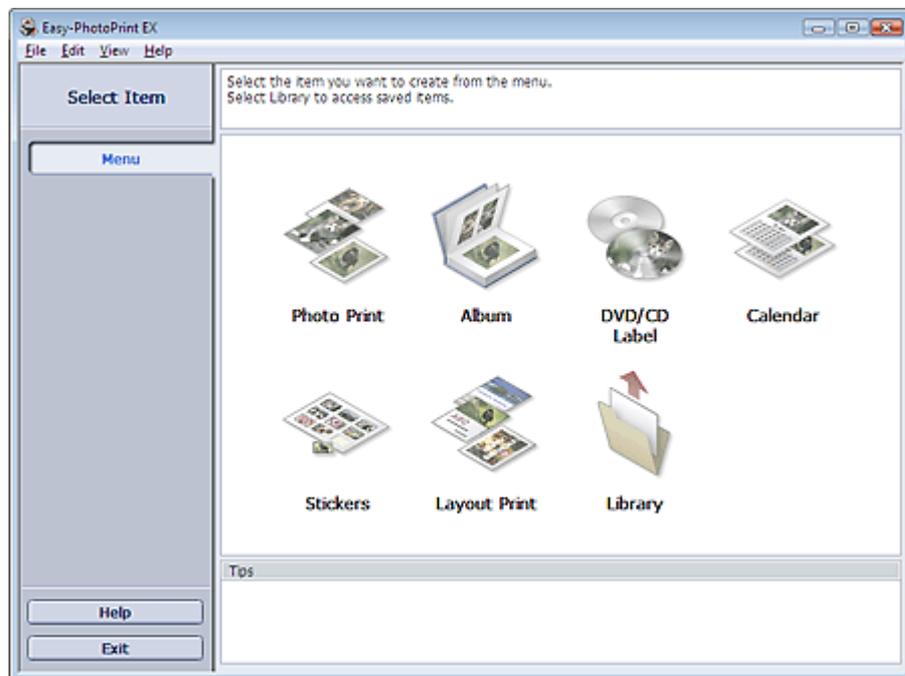
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > What Is Easy-PhotoPrint EX?

What Is Easy-PhotoPrint EX?

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create albums, calendars and stickers easily using photos taken with digital cameras.

You can also print borderless photos easily.



Important

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX does not support Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows Me, or Windows NT4.
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX can only be used with Canon inkjet printers. It does not support some printers, including Canon compact printers (SELPHY CP series).
- If a printer that supports Easy-PhotoPrint EX is not installed, you cannot print items you create.
- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is installed on a computer that already has Easy-LayoutPrint installed, Easy-LayoutPrint will be replaced by Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Note

- Printing on paper larger than A4 is available with supported printers only. See your printer manual for details.
- See Help of Easy-PhotoPrint EX for descriptions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX screens. Click Help in a screen or dialog box, or select Easy-PhotoPrint EX Help from the Help menu. Help appears.

About Exif Print

Easy-PhotoPrint EX supports "Exif Print." Exif Print is a standard for enhancing the communication between digital cameras and printers.

By connecting to an Exif Print-compliant digital camera, the image data at the time of shooting is used and optimized, yielding extremely high quality prints.

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX from Other Applications

Easy-PhotoPrint EX can be started from other applications.

See the application's manual for details on the procedure for starting.

The Album function is available with the following applications:

- MP Navigator EX Ver.1.00 or later
- ZoomBrowser EX Ver.5.8 or later

The Photo Print function is available with the following applications:

- MP Navigator EX Ver.1.00 or later
- ZoomBrowser EX Ver.6.0 or later
- Digital Photo Professional Ver.3.2 or later

Note

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX is subject to the following restrictions when started from Digital Photo Professional:
 - Menu does not appear in the step button area on the left side of the screen.
 - Images cannot be corrected/enhanced.
 - Image display order cannot be changed.
 - Edited images cannot be saved.
 - Options other than Enable ICC Profile cannot be selected for Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box. Therefore, you cannot use the Vivid Photo and Photo Noise Reduction functions.

Supported Image File Formats (Extensions)

- BMP (.bmp)
- JPEG (.jpg, .jpeg)
- TIFF (.tif, .tiff)
- PICT (.pict, .pct)
- Easy-PhotoPrint image files (.epp)

Important

- When selecting an image, if there is a TIFF file in the selected folder, the image may not be displayed correctly or Easy-PhotoPrint EX may shut down depending on the TIFF format. In such cases, move the TIFF file to another folder or recreate the file in a different file format, and then select the folder again.

- The thumbnails of files in unsupported formats are displayed as  (Question Mark).

Note

- When Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started from Digital Photo Professional, all image files supported by Digital Photo Professional will be displayed.

File Formats (Extensions) Supported by Easy-PhotoPrint EX

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Photo Print file (.el6)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Album file (.el1)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Stickers file (.el2)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Calendar file (.el4)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Layout file (.el5)
- CD-LabelPrint data (.clid)

Advanced Guide

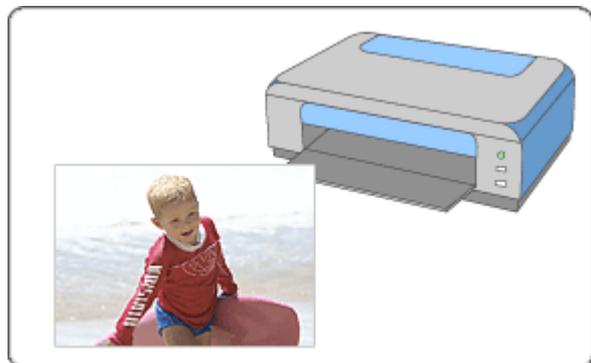
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Photos

Printing Photos

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to print your favorite photos in a variety of layouts.

You can also create borderless photos easily.

Corrections suitable for photos will be applied automatically when printing.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting a Photo
3. Selecting the Paper
4. Printing

Try This

- ➔ Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- ➔ Printing on a DVD/CD
- ➔ Printing Vivid Photos
- ➔ Reducing Photo Noise
- ➔ Cropping Photos (Photo Print)
- ➔ Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)
- ➔ Printing Multiple Photos on One Page
- ➔ Printing an Index
- ➔ Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)
- ➔ Printing Photo Information
- ➔ Saving Photos
- ➔ Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- ➔ How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?
- ➔ Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?
- ➔ How Do I Print with Even Margins?

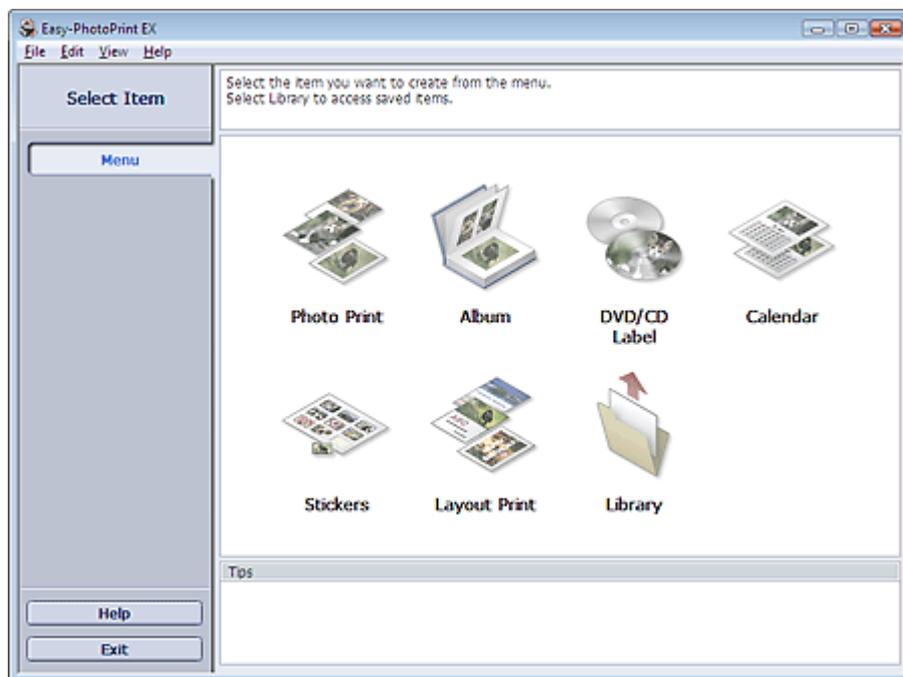
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Photos > Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



[Page top](#)↑

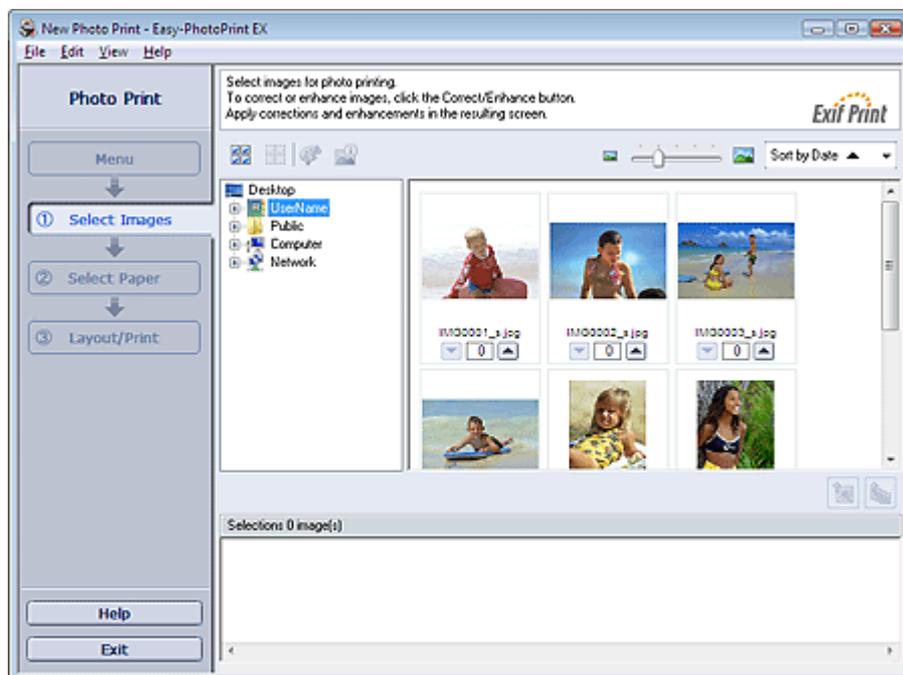
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Photos > Selecting a Photo

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Photo Print from Menu.

The Select Images screen appears.



Important

- The reduced images (thumbnails) displayed in the screen may appear as follows:
 - A black line appears along an edge of the image.
 - An edge of the image appears cropped.
 However, such images will be displayed normally when enlarged or previewed, and print results will not be affected.

2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Note

- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started from another application (MP Navigator EX, ZoomBrowser EX or Digital Photo Professional), the folder tree area will not be displayed. The images opened in the application will be displayed as thumbnails.

3. Click the image you want to print.

The number of copies appears as "1" below the clicked image, while the selected image itself will appear in the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click  (Delete Imported Image).

To delete all images from the selected image area, click  (Delete All Imported Images).

- To print two or more copies of an image, click  (Up arrow) until the number of copies you want is reached. To reduce the number of copies shown in the box, click  (Down arrow).
- You can change the order of photos using the list located at the top right corner of the screen. You can select the printing order from Sort by Date and Sort by Name.

 **Note**

-
- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
 - ➔ [Correcting and Enhancing Photos](#)
 - See Help for details on the Select Images screen.
-

[Page top](#)↑

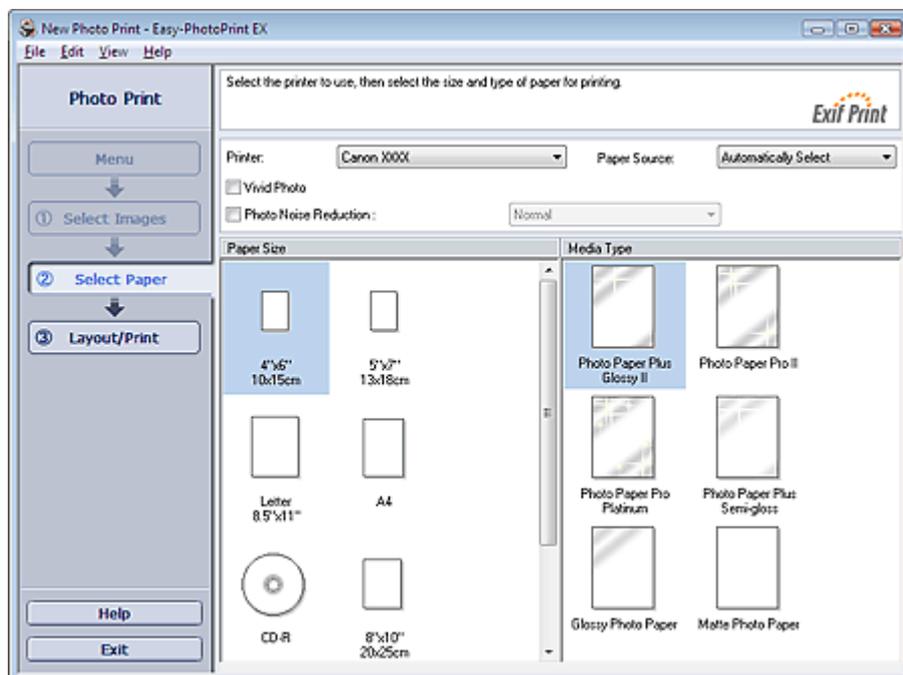
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Photos > Selecting the Paper

Selecting the Paper

1. Click Select Paper.

The Select Paper screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Paper Source

Paper Size

Media Type



Note

- The paper sizes and media types may vary depending on the printer. See Help for details.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.

Important

- When Fine Art Photo Rag is selected for Media Type, a 1.38 inch (35 mm) margin is automatically left at the top and bottom of the paper. It is recommended that you check the print range with the image shown in Preview before printing.

Note

- You can print directly on the DVD/CD surface by selecting CD-R for Paper Size.
 - ➔ [Printing on a DVD/CD](#)
- You can print photos with more vivid colors or you can reduce the photo noise.
 - ➔ [Printing Vivid Photos](#)
 - ➔ [Reducing Photo Noise](#)
- See Help for details on the Select Paper screen.



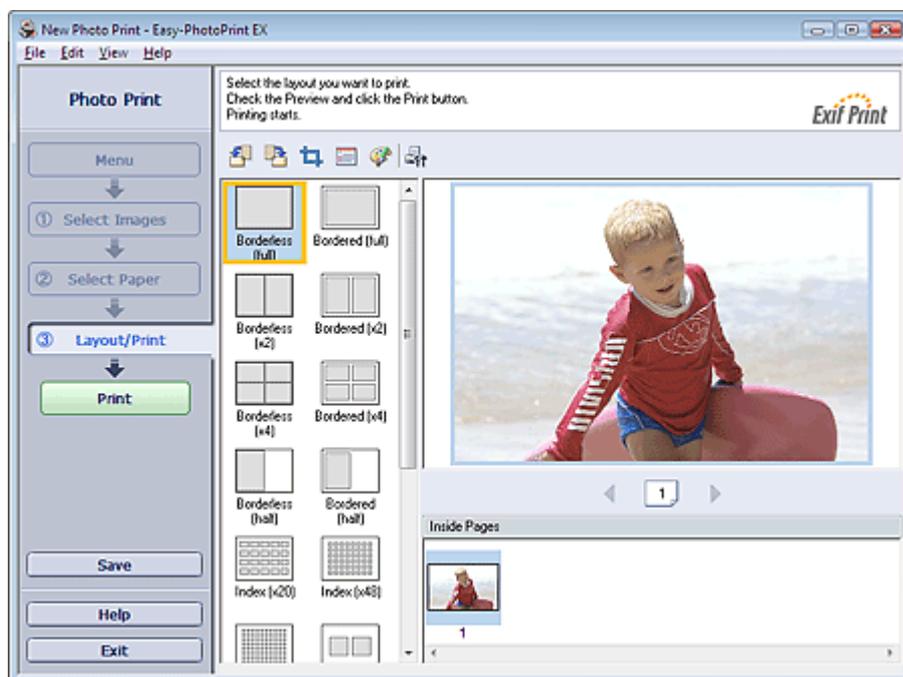
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Photos > Printing

Printing

1. Click Layout/Print.

The Layout/Print screen appears.



Important

- The reduced images (thumbnails) displayed in the screen may appear as follows:
 - A black line appears along an edge of the image.
 - An edge of the image appears cropped.
 However, such images will be displayed normally when enlarged or previewed, and print results will not be affected.

2. Select a layout you want to use.

Click a borderless layout to print borderless photos.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the printer, paper size, and media type.

3. Click Print.

Important

- When you print on large size paper such as A3/A3+, some computers cannot print properly if you print more than one page or copy at a time. It is recommended that you print page by page when you print on such paper.
- While printing on paper larger than A4 or printing high-resolution images, data may be printed only to the middle if many images are printed at one time. In such cases, select the Spool print job page by page checkbox in the Preferences dialog box, and then print again.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

- When Fine Art Photo Rag is selected for Media Type in the Select Paper screen, a 1.38 inch (35 mm) margin is automatically left at the top and bottom of the paper. It is recommended that you check the print range with the image shown in Preview before printing.

Note

- The photo print settings will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the settings.

It is recommended that you save the printed image if you want to print it again.

➔ [Saving Photos](#)

- When you print on a bordered layout, the margins on the left and right or the top and bottom may become wider than the other.

➔ [How Do I Print with Even Margins?](#)

- You can crop images or print dates on photos.

➔ [Cropping Photos \(Photo Print\)](#)

➔ [Printing Dates on Photos \(Photo Print\)](#)

- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.

➔ [Correcting and Enhancing Photos](#)

- You can specify advanced Photo Print settings (number of copies, print quality, etc.) in the Preferences dialog box.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

- See Help for details on the Layout/Print screen.
-



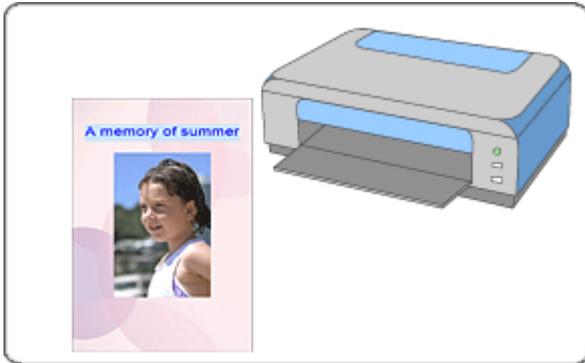
[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating an Album

Creating an Album

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create your own personalized photo album.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- ➔ Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- ➔ Changing Layout
- ➔ Changing Background
- ➔ Adding Photos
- ➔ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➔ Replacing Photos
- ➔ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➔ Cropping Photos
- ➔ Framing Photos
- ➔ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➔ Attaching Comments to Photos
- ➔ Adding Text to Photos
- ➔ Saving
- ➔ Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- ➔ How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?
- ➔ What Is "C1" or "C4"?

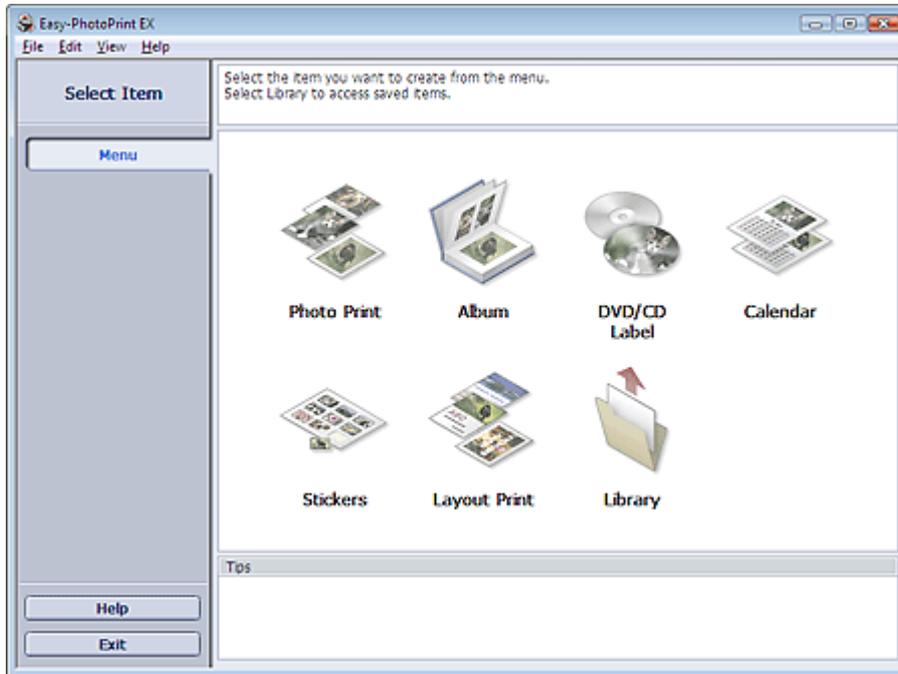
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating an Album > Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



[Page top](#)↑

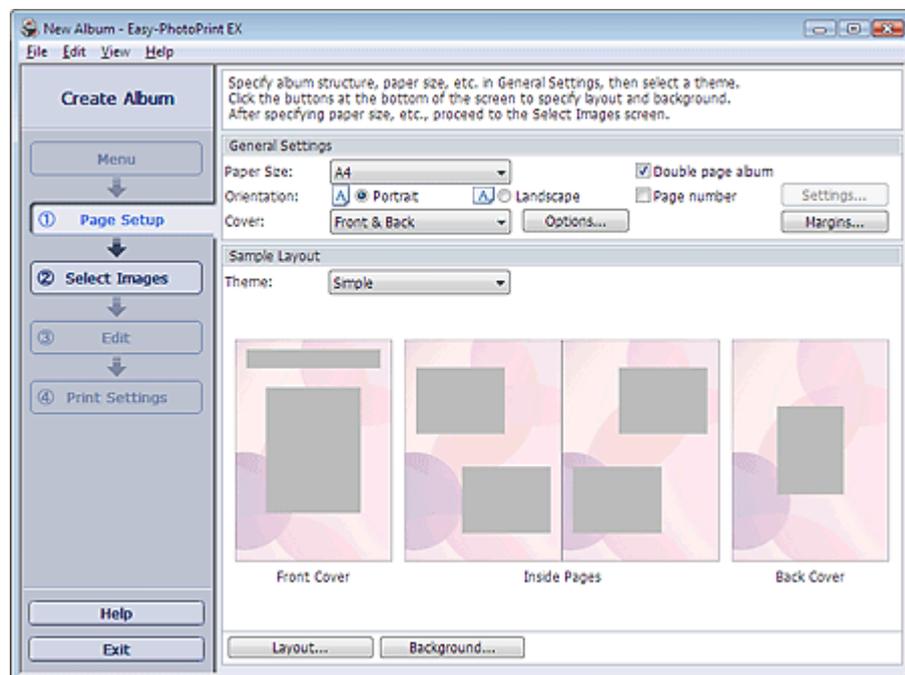
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating an Album > Selecting the Paper and Layout

Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Album from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Cover

Double page album

Page number



Note

- See Help on the paper size that can be selected.
- You can select whether to display images on the inside of the front and back covers in the Cover Options dialog box. To display the Cover Options dialog box, select Front or Front & Back for Cover and click Options....
- Select the Double page album checkbox to enable the spread page layout (consisting of two-page master). In a double-page album, you can arrange an image across the left and right pages.
- You can customize the page numbers (position, font size, etc.) in the Page Number Settings dialog box. To display the Page Number Settings dialog box, select the Page number checkbox and click Settings....
- You can customize the margins of the front cover, inside pages and back cover in the Margin Settings dialog box. To display the Margin Settings dialog box, click Margins....

3. Select the theme you want to use from Theme in Sample Layout.

4. If you want to change the layout, click Layout....

The Change Layout dialog box appears.

In the Change Layout dialog box, you can change the layout or select whether to print the date (on which the picture was taken) on the photo.



Note

- The album layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size, Orientation, Double page album, or the type of page selected (front cover, inside pages or back cover).
 - You can customize the date (position, size and color) in the Date Settings dialog box. To display the Date Settings dialog box, select the Print date checkbox in the Change Layout dialog box and click Date Settings....
-

5. If you want to change the background, click Background....

The Change Background dialog box appears.

In the Change Background dialog box, you can paint the background in a single color or paste an image file to it.

Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.
-



[Page top](#)

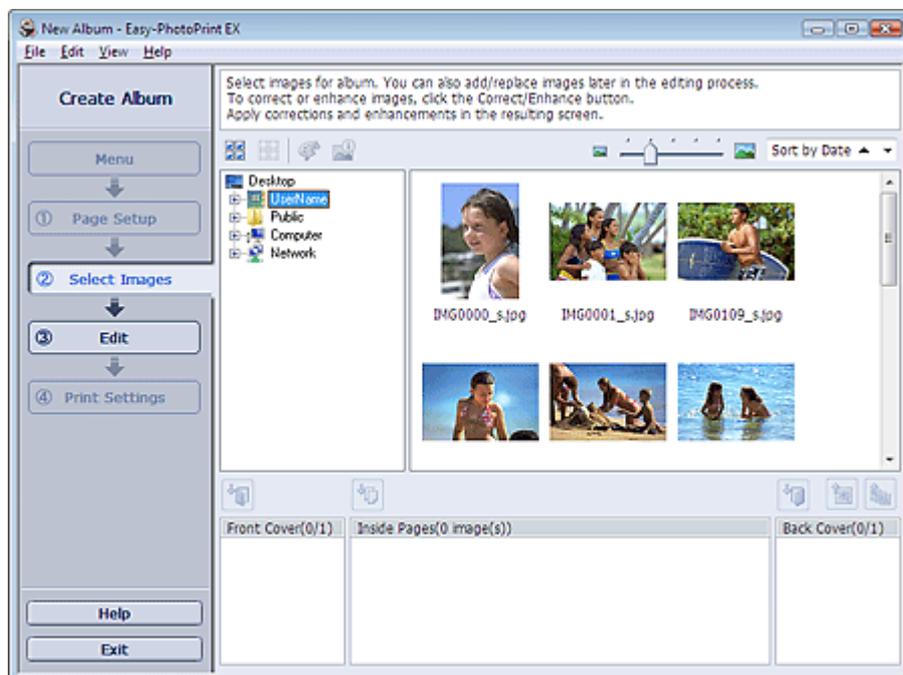
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating an Album > Selecting a Photo

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).



Note

- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started from another application (MP Navigator EX or ZoomBrowser EX), the folder tree area will not be displayed. The images opened in MP Navigator EX or ZoomBrowser EX will be displayed as thumbnails.

3. Select the image(s) you want to print, and click one of the buttons below.

To print on the front cover, click  (Import to Front Cover).

To print on the inside pages, click  (Import to Inside Pages).

To print on the back cover, click  (Import to Back Cover).

The selected images are displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging them into the selected image area.



Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click



(Delete Imported Image).

To delete all images from the selected image area, click  (Delete All Imported Images).



Note

- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.



[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating an Album > Editing

Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit your album if necessary.

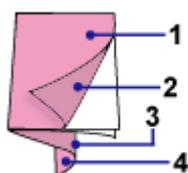
- ➔ Changing Layout
- ➔ Changing Background
- ➔ Adding Photos
- ➔ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➔ Replacing Photos
- ➔ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➔ Cropping Photos
- ➔ Framing Photos
- ➔ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➔ Attaching Comments to Photos
- ➔ Adding Text to Photos



Note

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited album. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.

The page numbers on the front and back covers of the album are displayed as follows:



- C1: Front cover
- C2: Inside the front cover
- C3: Inside the back cover
- C4: Back cover

➔ Saving

- See Help for details on the Edit screen.



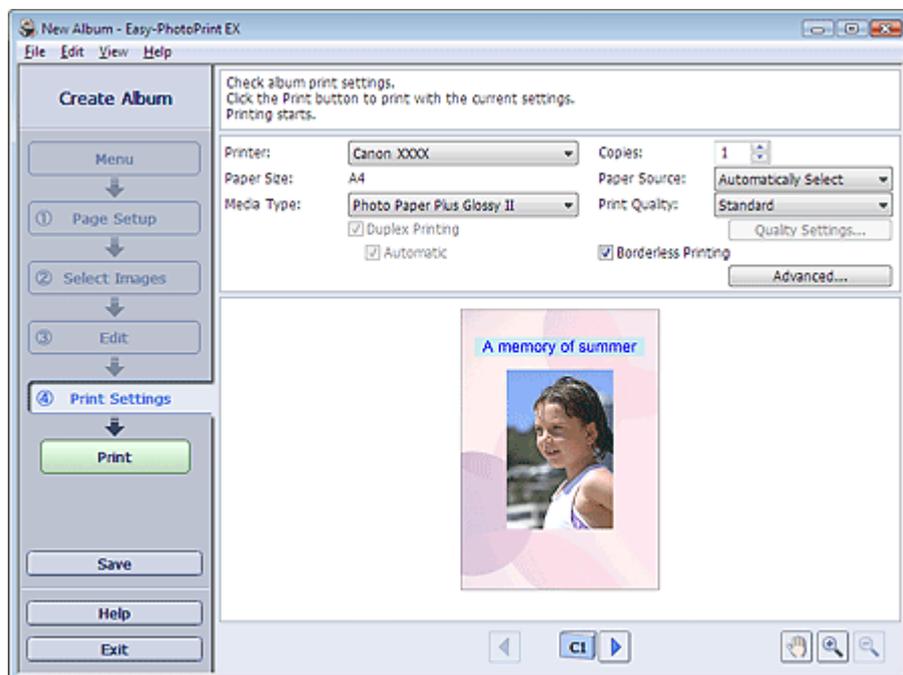
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating an Album > Printing

Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing



Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- Duplex Printing appears if the selected printer and media type support duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper.
- Automatic appears if you select the Duplex Printing checkbox after selecting a printer that supports automatic duplex printing and media type that supports duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper automatically.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- Select the Borderless Printing checkbox to print borderless photos.
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.



Note

- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing a DVD/CD

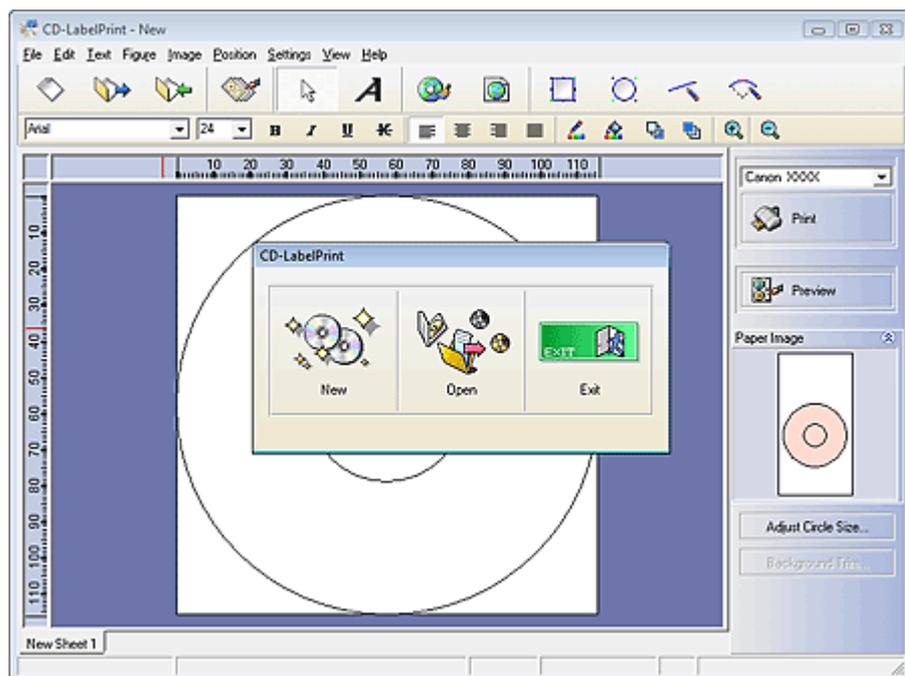
Printing a DVD/CD

Select DVD/CD Label in Menu to start CD-LabelPrint. CD-LabelPrint allows you to print DVD/CD labels easily.

For details on how to use CD-LabelPrint, install CD-LabelPrint and refer to the application's manual as follows. From the Start menu, select (All) Programs > CD-LabelPrint > Manual.

Important

- DVD/CD Label is not displayed in Menu if CD-LabelPrint is not installed on your computer.



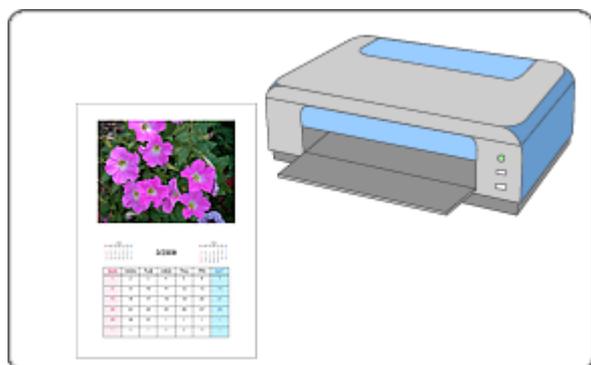
[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Calendars

Printing Calendars

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create your own calendar using your favorite photos.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- ➔ Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- ➔ Changing Layout
- ➔ Changing Background
- ➔ Adding Photos
- ➔ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➔ Replacing Photos
- ➔ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➔ Cropping Photos
- ➔ Framing Photos
- ➔ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➔ Adding Text to Photos
- ➔ Setting Calendar Display
- ➔ Setting Holidays
- ➔ Saving
- ➔ Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- ➔ How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

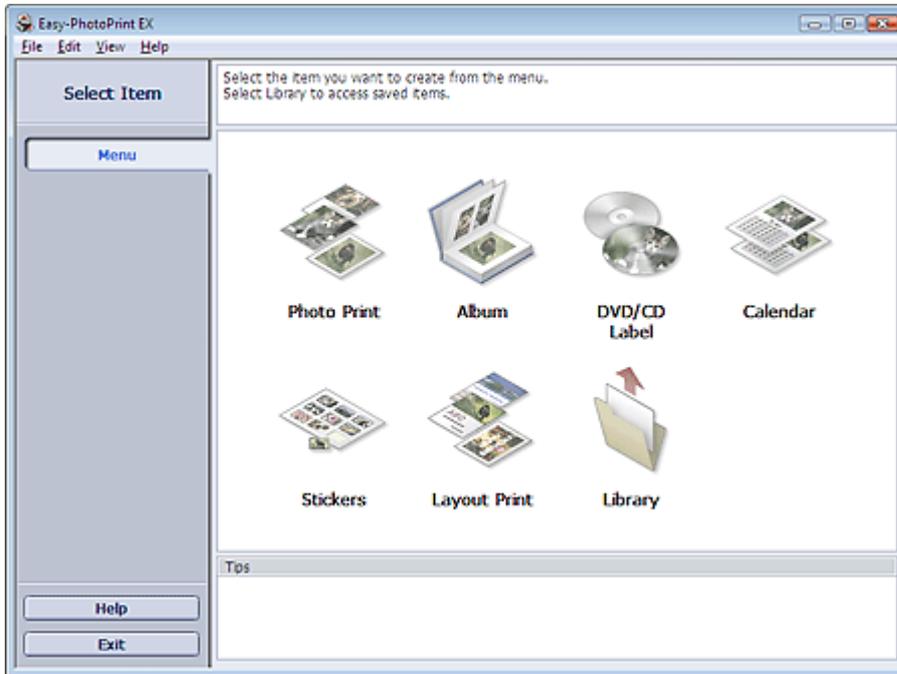
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Calendars > Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



[Page top](#)↑

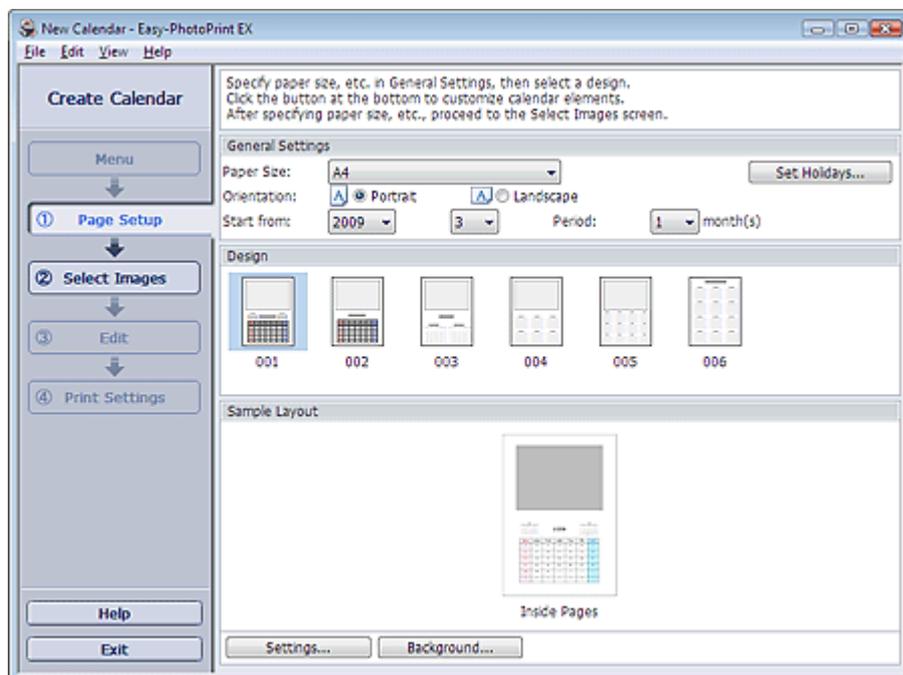
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Calendars > Selecting the Paper and Layout

Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Calendar from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Start from

Period



Note

- See Help on the paper size that can be selected.
- You can add holidays to your calendar.
 - ➔ [Setting Holidays](#)

3. Select a layout.

If necessary, make advanced settings on the calendar and set the background.



Note

- You can customize the calendar display (font colors of the dates and days of the week, position and size of the calendar, etc.).
 - ➔ [Setting Calendar Display](#)
- You can paint the background in a single color or paste an image file to it in the Change Background dialog box. To display the Change Background dialog box, click Background....



Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Calendars > Selecting a Photo

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

3. Select the image(s) you want to print and click (Import to Inside Pages).

The selected images are displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging them into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click



(Delete Imported Image).

To delete all images from the selected image area, click  (Delete All Imported Images).

Note

- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.



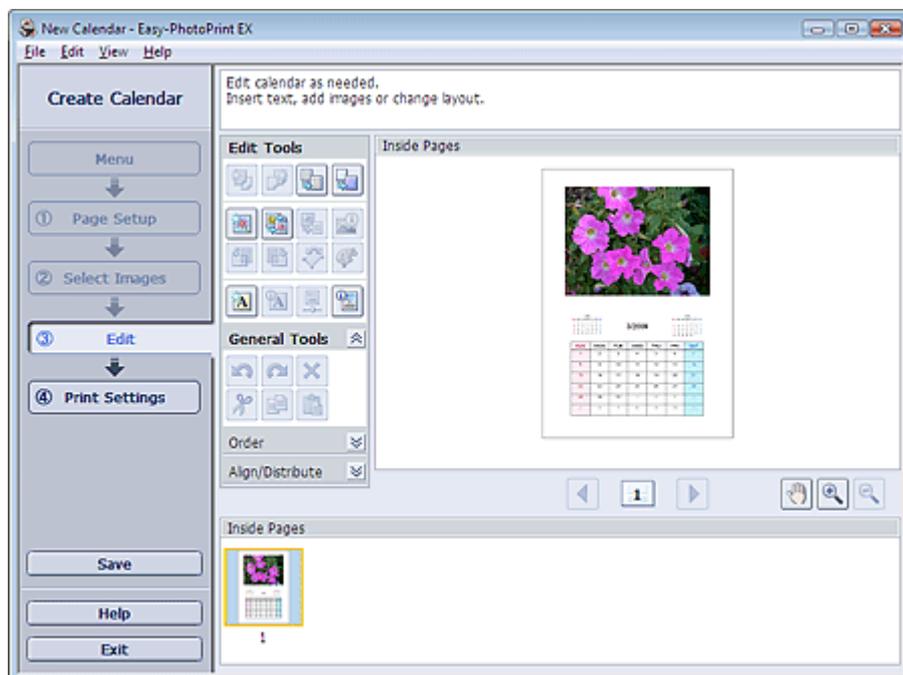
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Calendars > Editing

Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit the calendar if necessary.

- ➔ Changing Layout
- ➔ Changing Background
- ➔ Adding Photos
- ➔ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➔ Replacing Photos
- ➔ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➔ Cropping Photos
- ➔ Framing Photos
- ➔ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➔ Adding Text to Photos
- ➔ Setting Calendar Display
- ➔ Setting Holidays

Note

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited calendar. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
 - ➔ Saving
- See Help for details on the Edit screen.



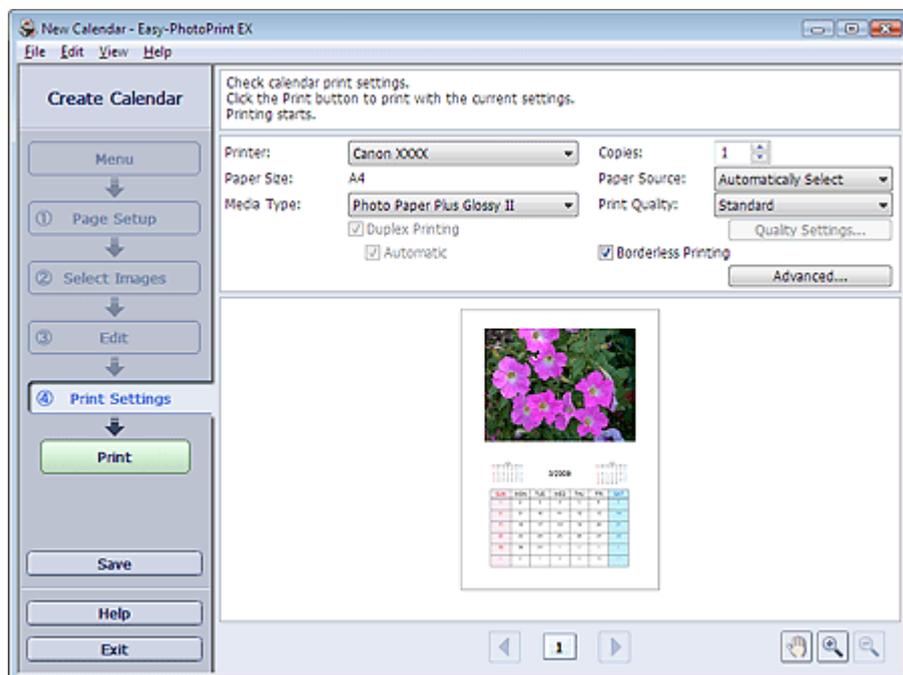
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Calendars > Printing

Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing



Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- Duplex Printing appears if the selected printer and media type support duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper.
- Automatic appears if you select the Duplex Printing checkbox after selecting a printer that supports automatic duplex printing and media type that supports duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper automatically.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.



Note

- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Stickers

Printing Stickers

You can print your favorite photos on compatible sticker sheets.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- ➔ Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- ➔ Adding Photos
- ➔ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➔ Replacing Photos
- ➔ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➔ Cropping Photos
- ➔ Framing Photos
- ➔ Adding Text to Photos
- ➔ Saving
- ➔ Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- ➔ How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

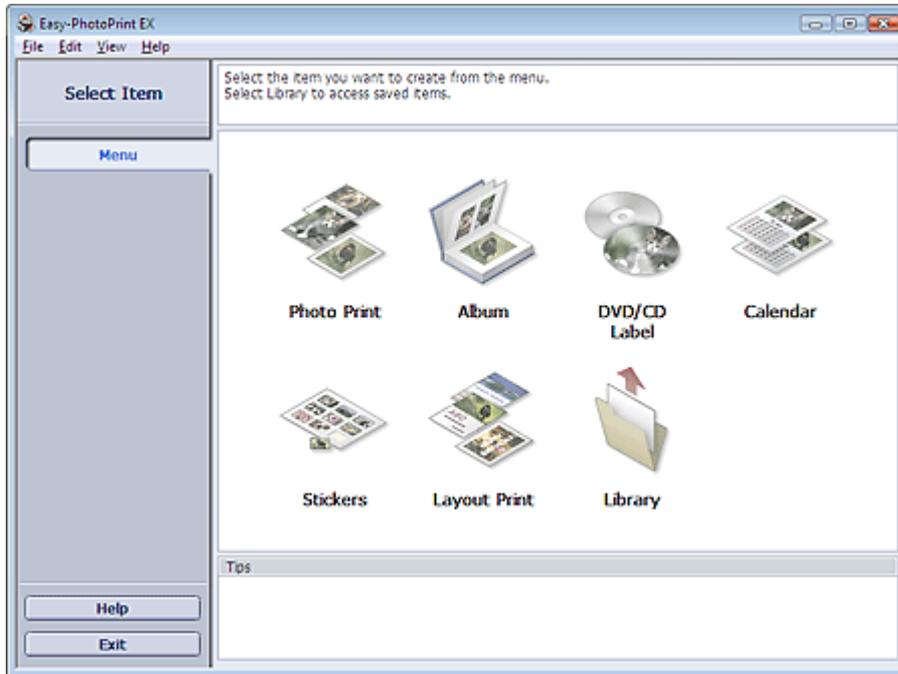
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Stickers > Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



[Page top](#)↑

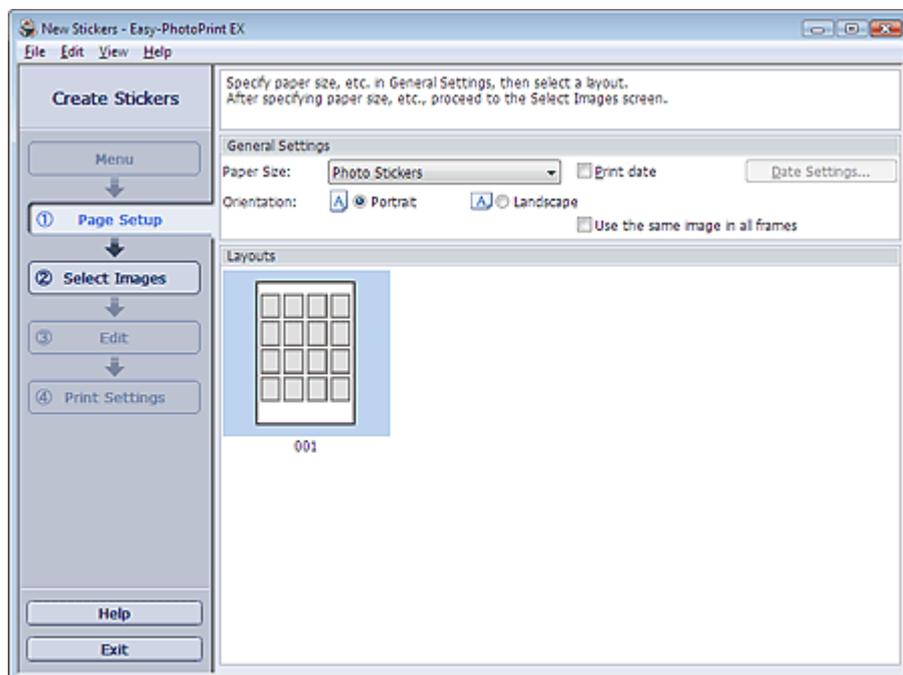
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Stickers > Selecting the Paper and Layout

Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Stickers from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Print date

Use the same image in all frames



Note

- Paper sizes other than Photo Stickers cannot be selected.
- Select the Use the same image in all frames checkbox to use the same image in all the frames on the page.
- You can customize the date (position, size and color) in the Date Settings dialog box. To display the Date Settings dialog box, select the Print date checkbox and click Date Settings....



Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Stickers > Selecting a Photo

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

3. Select the image(s) you want to print and click (Import to Inside Pages).

The selected images are displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging them into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click



(Delete Imported Image).

To delete all images from the selected image area, click  (Delete All Imported Images).

Note

- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.



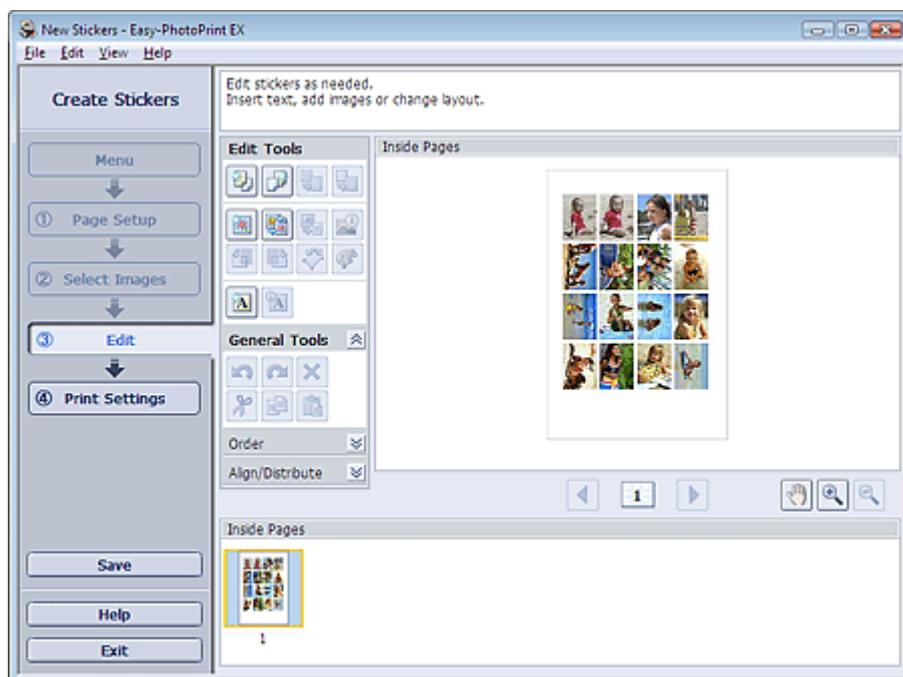
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Stickers > Editing

Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit the stickers if necessary.

- ➔ Adding Photos
- ➔ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➔ Replacing Photos
- ➔ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➔ Cropping Photos
- ➔ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➔ Adding Text to Photos

Note

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited stickers. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
 - ➔ Saving
- See Help for details on the Edit screen.



Page top↑

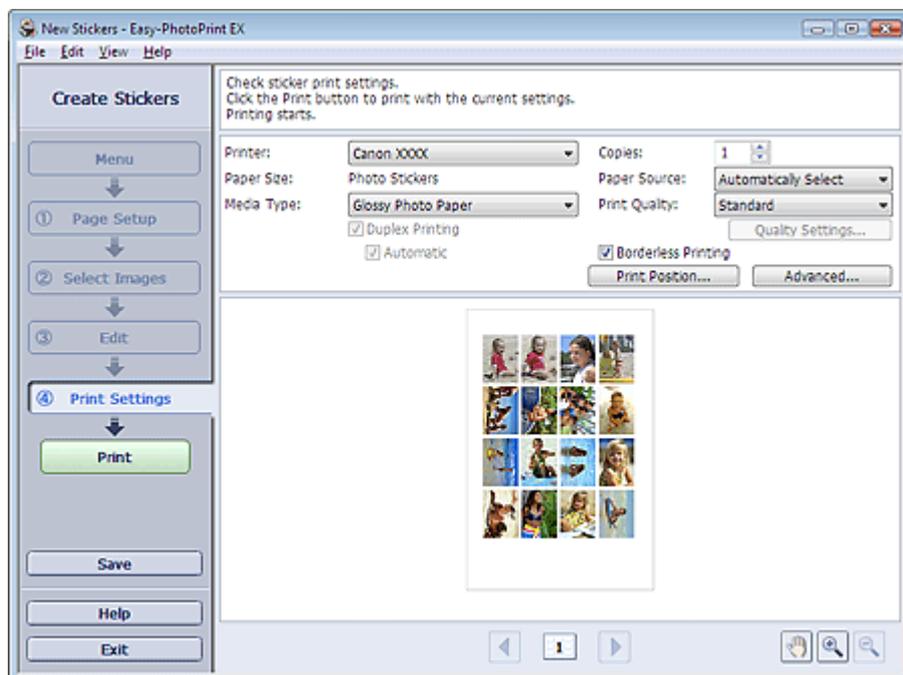
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Stickers > Printing

Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing



Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- You can adjust the printing position in the Adjust Print Position dialog box. To display the Adjust Print Position dialog box, click Print Position....
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.



Note

- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Layout

Printing Layout

You can add text to your favorite photos and print them in a variety of layouts.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- ➔ Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- ➔ Changing Layout
- ➔ Adding Photos
- ➔ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➔ Replacing Photos
- ➔ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➔ Cropping Photos
- ➔ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➔ Adding Text to Photos
- ➔ Saving
- ➔ Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- ➔ How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

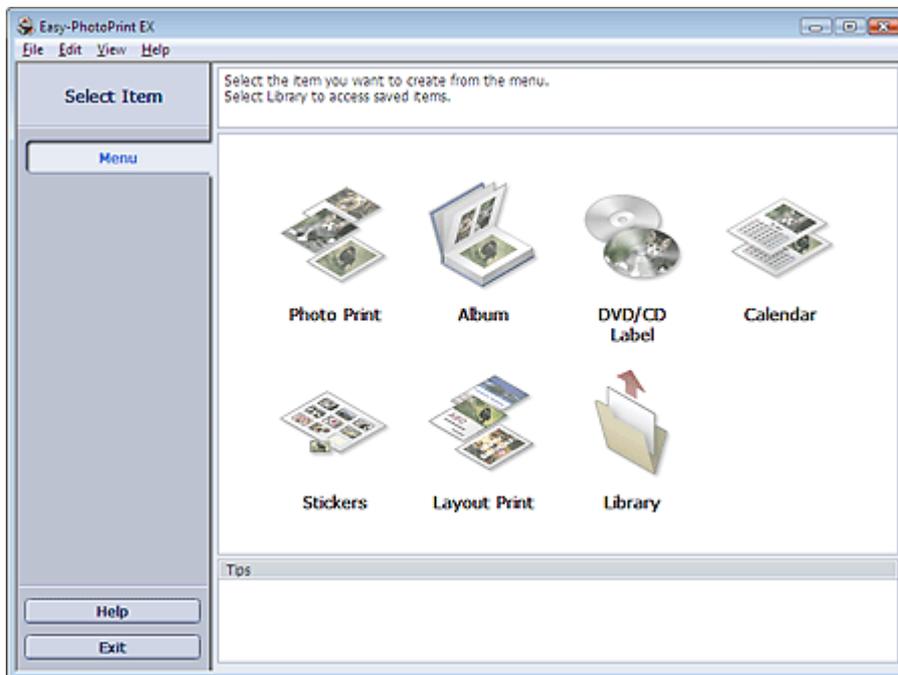
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Layout > Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



[Page top](#)↑

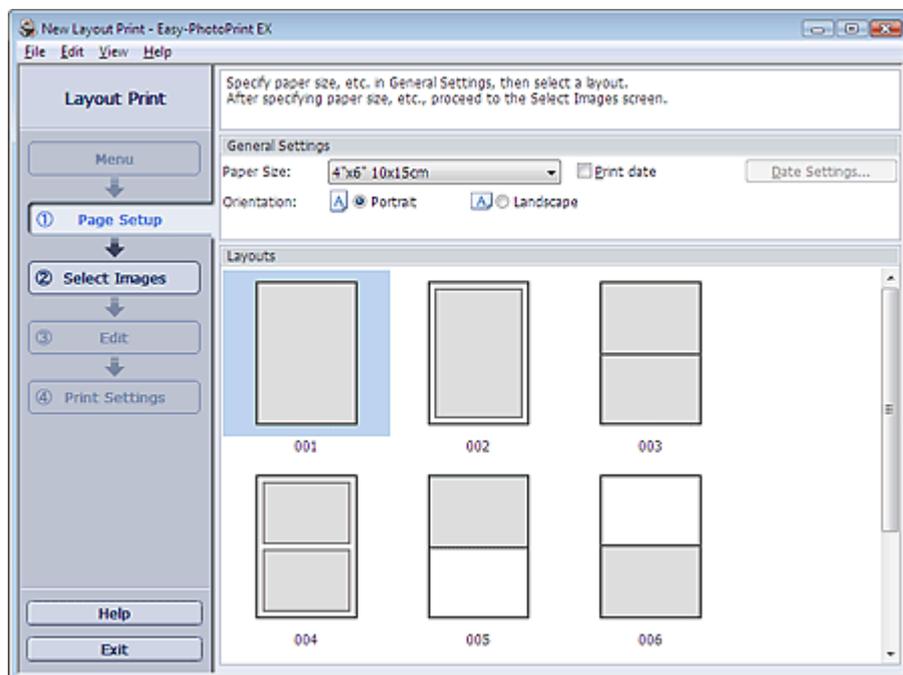
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Layout > Selecting the Paper and Layout

Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Layout Print from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Print date



Note

- See Help on the paper size that can be selected.
- You can customize the date (position, size and color) in the Date Settings dialog box. To display the Date Settings dialog box, select the Print date checkbox and click Date Settings....

3. Select a layout from Layouts.



Note

- The layouts displayed may vary depending on the Orientation.



Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Layout > Selecting a Photo

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

3. Select the image(s) you want to print and click (Import to Inside Pages).

The selected images are displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging them into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click



(Delete Imported Image).

To delete all images from the selected image area, click  (Delete All Imported Images).

Note

- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Layout > Editing

Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit the layout if necessary.

- ➔ Changing Layout
- ➔ Adding Photos
- ➔ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➔ Replacing Photos
- ➔ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➔ Cropping Photos
- ➔ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➔ Adding Text to Photos

Note

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited layout. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
 - ➔ Saving
- See Help for details on the Edit screen.



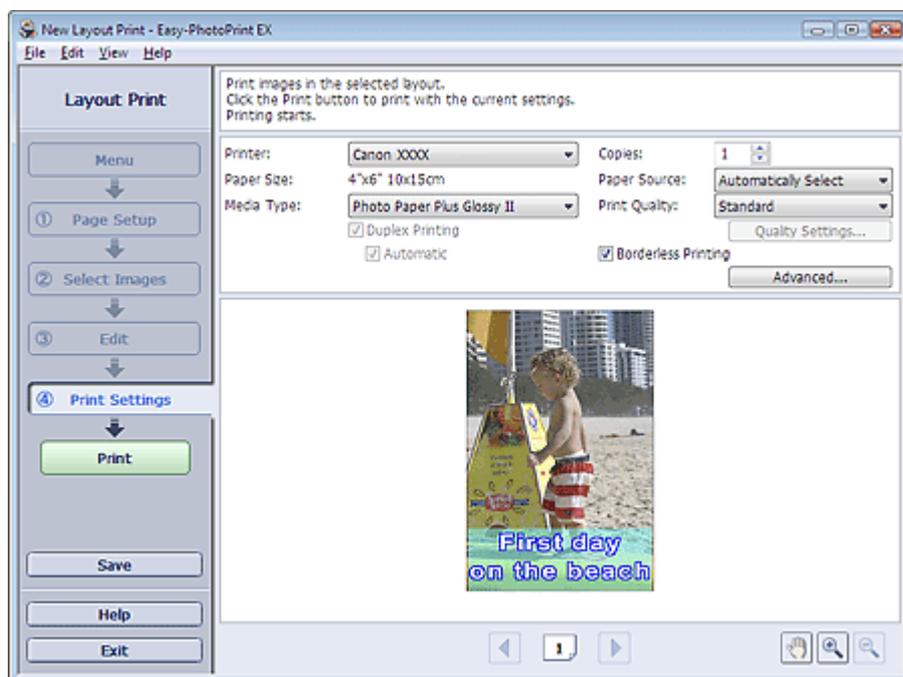
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Layout > Printing

Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing



Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- Duplex Printing appears if the selected printer and media type support duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper.
- Automatic appears if you select the Duplex Printing checkbox after selecting a printer that supports automatic duplex printing and media type that supports duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper automatically.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- Select the Borderless Printing checkbox to print borderless photos.
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.



Note

- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos

Correcting and Enhancing Photos

You can correct and enhance images.

Click  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Select Images or Edit screen, or in the Layout/Print screen of Photo Print. You can make the following corrections and enhancements in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Important

- For Photo Print, if you select Enable ICC Profile in the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box, you cannot correct/enhance images.

Note

- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Auto Photo Fix

This function will automatically analyze the captured scene and apply suitable corrections.

➔ [Using the Auto Photo Fix Function](#)

Red-Eye Correction Function

You can correct red eyes caused by a camera flash.

➔ [Using the Red-Eye Correction Function](#)

Face Brightener Function

You can brighten dark faces caused by bright background.

➔ [Using the Face Brightener Function](#)

Face Sharpener Function

You can sharpen out-of-focus faces in a photo.

➔ [Using the Face Sharpener Function](#)

Digital Face Smoothing Function

You can enhance skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.

➔ [Using the Digital Face Smoothing Function](#)

Blemish Remover Function

You can remove moles.

➔ [Using the Blemish Remover Function](#)

Image Adjustment

You can make fine adjustments to the overall brightness, contrast, etc. of images.

➔ [Adjusting Images](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Using the Auto Photo Fix Function

Using the Auto Photo Fix Function

Apply optimum corrections automatically to the photos used for an album or calendar.

Important

- The Auto Photo Fix function is not available for Photo Print. Photo Print allows you to automatically apply suitable corrections to all photos when printing. Select this option in Image on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box. To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) in the Layout/Print screen or select Preferences... from the File menu.

- Once image is corrected with Auto Photo Fix and saved, it cannot be corrected again with Auto Photo Fix.

Also, Auto Photo Fix may not be available for images edited using an application, digital camera, etc. manufactured by other companies.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to correct from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.

4. Click Auto Photo Fix, then click OK.

The entire photo is corrected automatically and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
 - Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction operation.
 - If you want to apply the correction to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.
-

5. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
 - Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for corrected images.
-

6. Click Exit.

Note

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.
-

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Using the Red-Eye Correction Function

Using the Red-Eye Correction Function

You can correct red eyes caused by a camera flash.

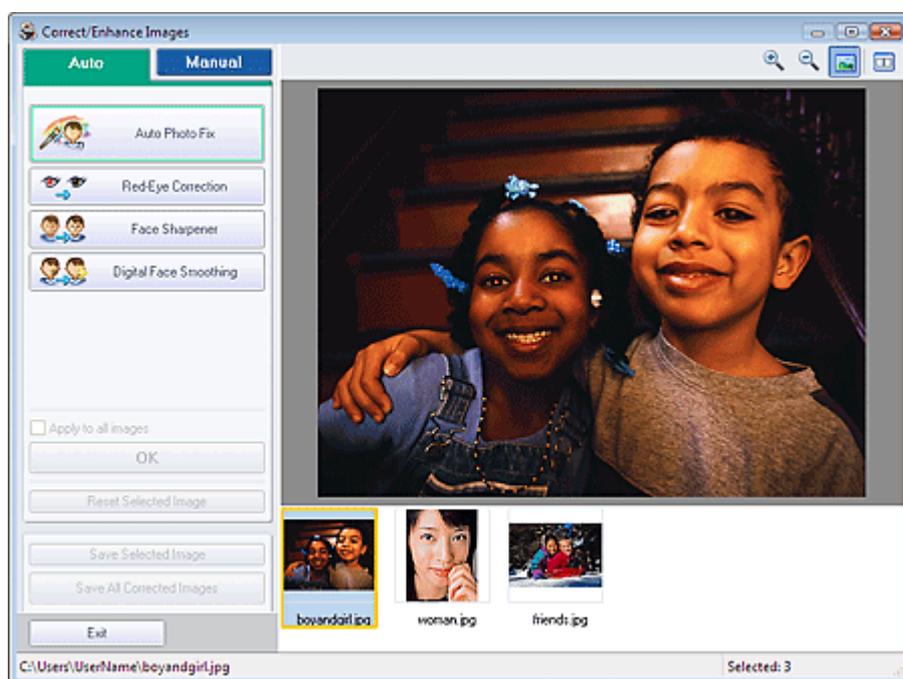
You can perform the Red-Eye Correction function either automatically or manually.

Note

- Photo Print allows you to automatically correct red eyes when printing. To correct automatically, select Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and select the Enable Red-Eye Correction checkbox.

- Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

- Select the image you want to correct from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

Auto Correction

- Make sure that Auto is selected.
- Click Red-Eye Correction.

5. Click OK.

Red eyes are corrected and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Important

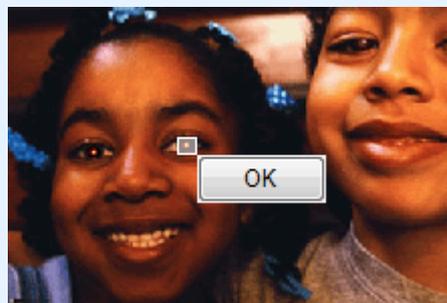
- Areas other than the eyes may be corrected depending on the image.

Note

- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction operation.
- If you want to apply the correction to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.

Manual Correction**3.** Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.**4.** Click Red-Eye Correction.

Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to  (Paintbrush).

**5.** Drag to select the red area you want to correct, then click OK that appears over the image.

Red eye is corrected and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click Undo to undo the preceding correction operation.
- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Red-Eye Correction.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
 - Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for corrected images.
-

7. Click Exit.

Note

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.
-

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

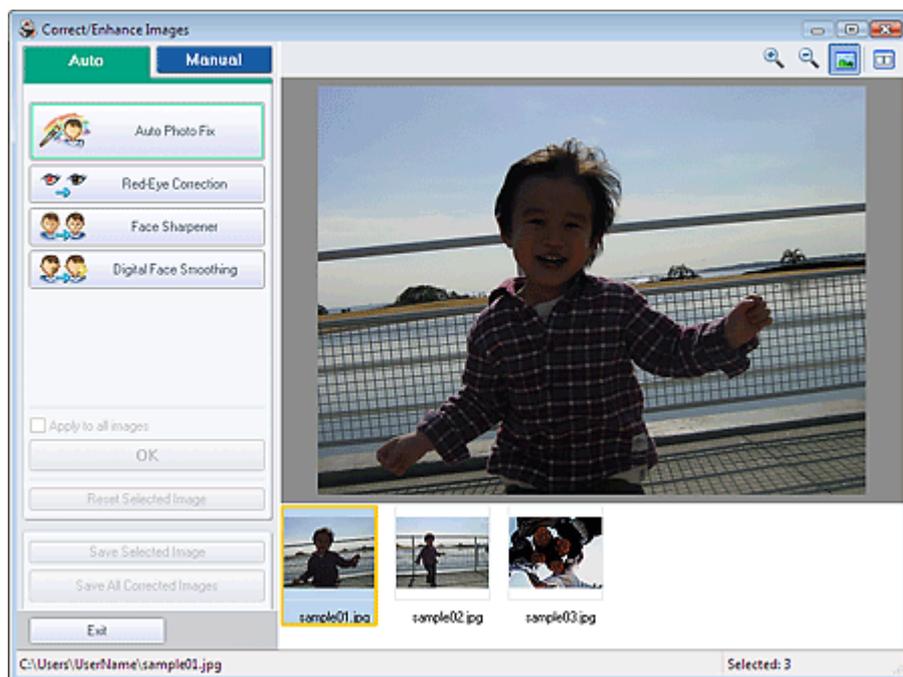
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Using the Face Brightener Function

Using the Face Brightener Function

You can brighten dark faces caused by bright background.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to correct from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

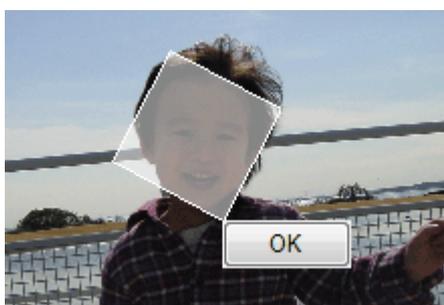
3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

4. Click Face Brightener.

Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to  (Cross).



5. Drag to select the area you want to correct, then click OK that appears over the image.



The entire image is corrected so that the selected area containing the face becomes brighter, and the 🧑 (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the rectangle.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding correction operation.
- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Face Brightener.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for corrected images.

7. Click Exit.

Note

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Using the Face Sharpener Function

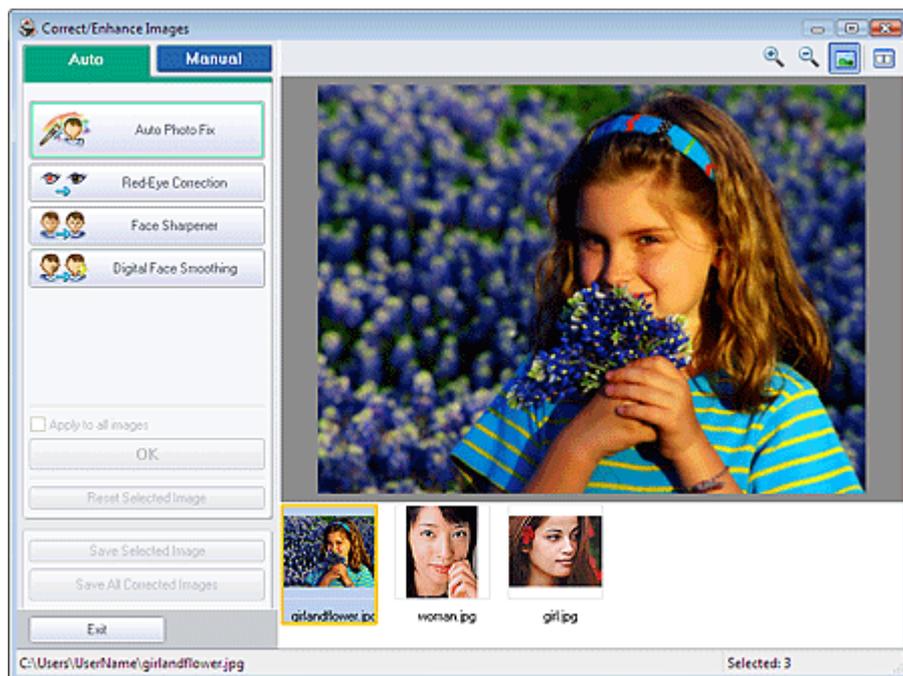
Using the Face Sharpener Function

You can sharpen out-of-focus faces in a photo.

You can perform the Face Sharpener function either automatically or manually.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to correct from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

Auto Correction

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.
4. Click Face Sharpener.
5. Click OK.

The face is sharpened and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Face Sharpener.
- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction operation.
- If you want to apply the correction to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.

Manual Correction

3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

4. Click Face Sharpener.

Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to  (Cross).



5. Drag to select the area you want to correct, then click OK that appears over the image.



The facial area in and around the selected area is sharpened and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the rectangle.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding correction operation.
- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Face Sharpener.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.

- Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for corrected images.
-

7. Click Exit.



Note

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.
-

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Using the Digital Face Smoothing Function

Using the Digital Face Smoothing Function

You can enhance skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.

You can perform the Digital Face Smoothing function either automatically or manually.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to enhance from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

Auto Enhancement

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.
4. Click Digital Face Smoothing.
5. Click OK.

Skin is enhanced beautifully and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

 **Note**

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Digital Face Smoothing.
- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the enhancement operation.
- If you want to apply the enhancement to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.

Manual Enhancement

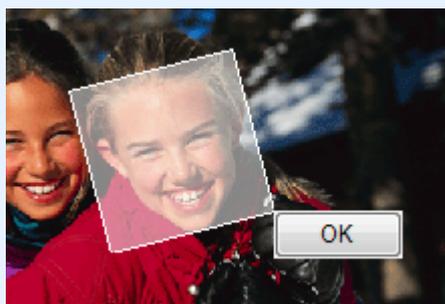
3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

4. Click Digital Face Smoothing.

Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to  (Cross).



5. Drag to select the area you want to enhance, then click OK that appears over the image.



Skin in and around the selected area is enhanced beautifully and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

 **Note**

- You can also drag to rotate the rectangle.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding enhancement operation.
- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Digital Face Smoothing.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save enhanced images as new files.

 **Note**

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.

- Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for enhanced images.
-

7. Click Exit.



- The enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving enhanced images.
-

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

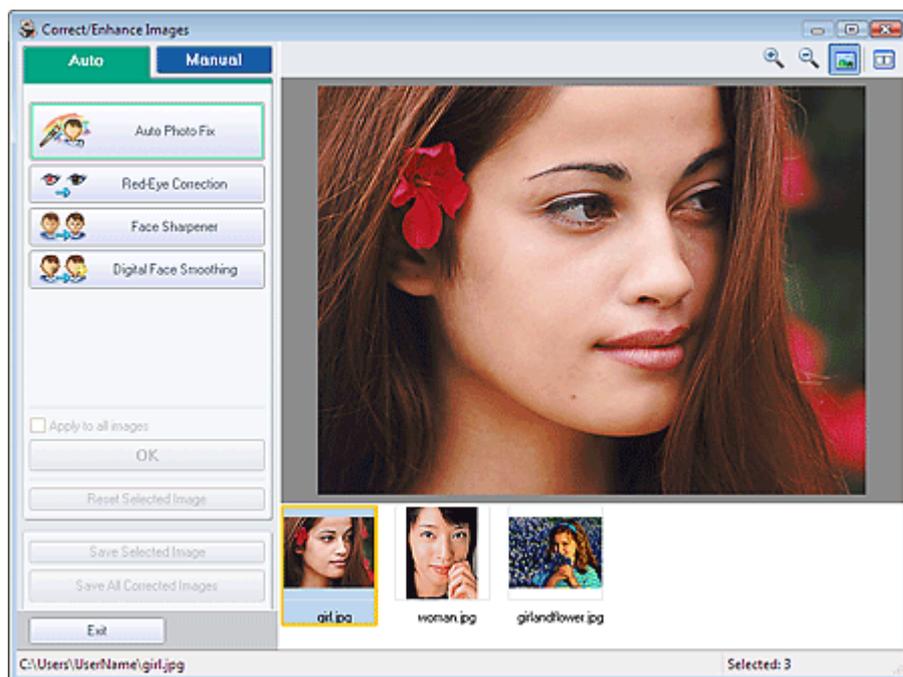
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Using the Blemish Remover Function

Using the Blemish Remover Function

You can remove moles.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to enhance from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

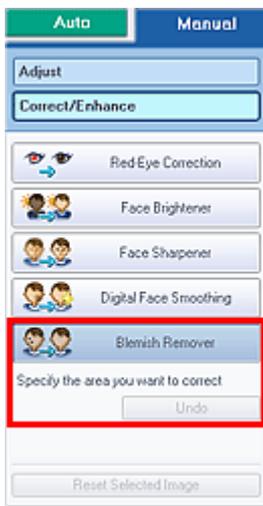
Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

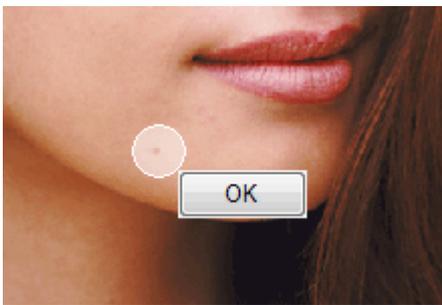
3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

4. Click Blemish Remover.

Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to  (Cross).



5. Drag to select the area you want to enhance, then click OK that appears over the image.



Moles in and around the selected area are removed and the 🧑🏻 (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click Undo to undo the preceding enhancement operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save enhanced images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for enhanced images.

7. Click Exit.

Note

- The enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving enhanced images.

Advanced Guide

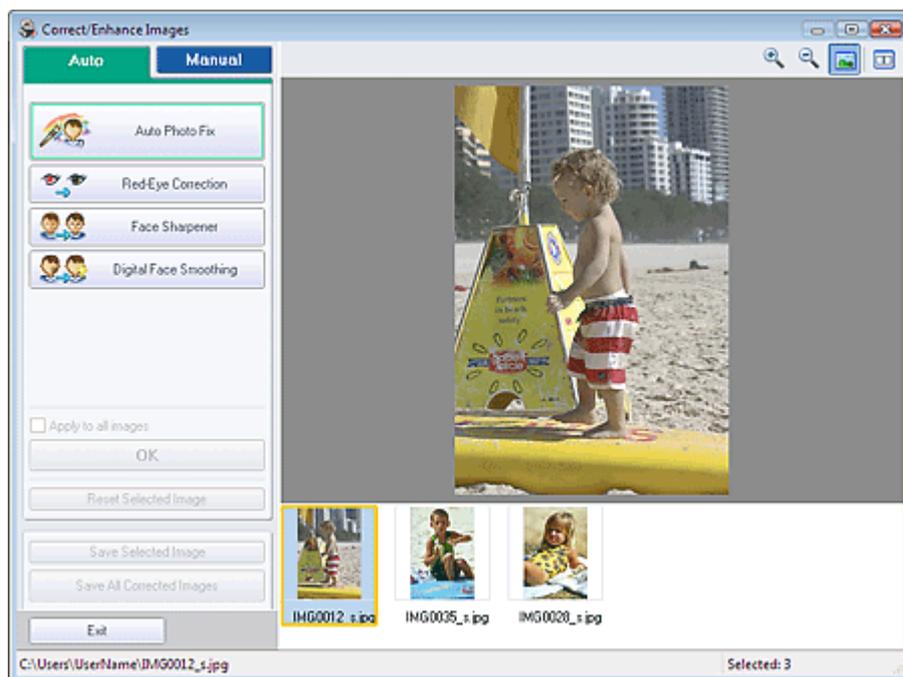
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Adjusting Images

Adjusting Images

You can make fine adjustments to the overall brightness, contrast, etc. of images.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to adjust from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

3. Click Manual, then click Adjust.

4. Move the slider of the item you want to adjust and set the effect level.

The following adjustments are available:

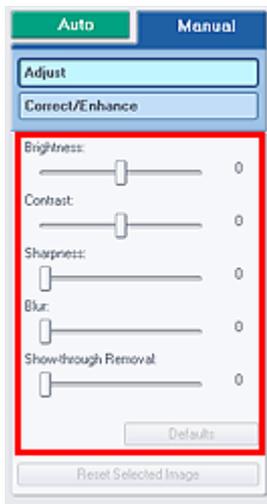
Brightness

Contrast

Sharpness

Blur

Show-through Removal

**Note**

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments.

5. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save adjusted images as new files.

**Note**

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for adjusted images.

6. Click Exit.**Note**

- The adjustments will be lost if you exit before saving adjusted images.

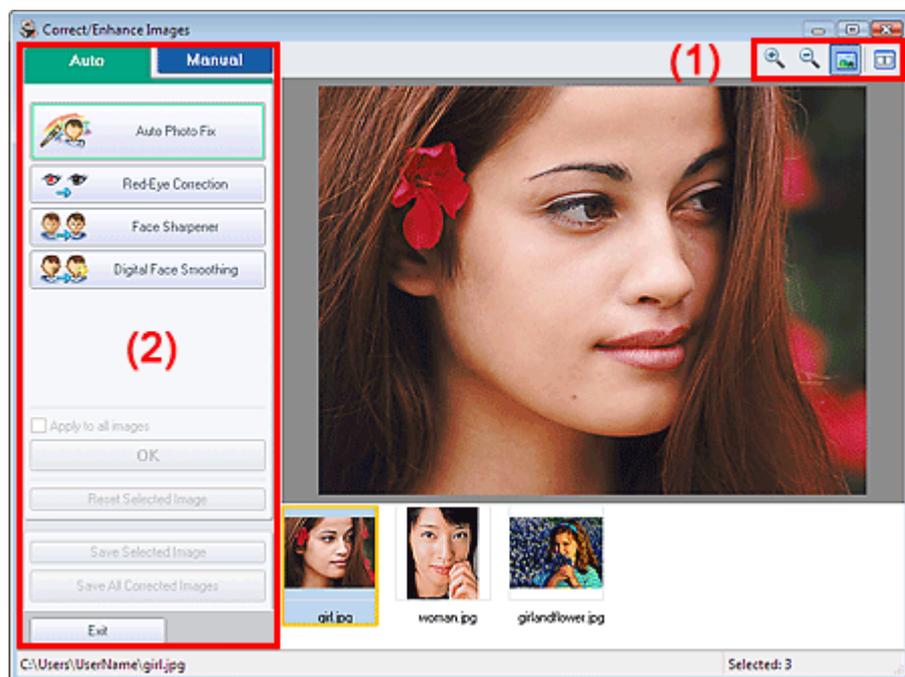
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Correct/Enhance Images Window

Correct/Enhance Images Window

You can correct/enhance images in this window.

To display the Correct/Enhance Images window, click  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Select Images or Edit screen, or in the Layout/Print screen of Photo Print.



(1)Toolbar

Toolbar

(Zoom In/Zoom Out)

Displays the enlarged or reduced preview of the page.

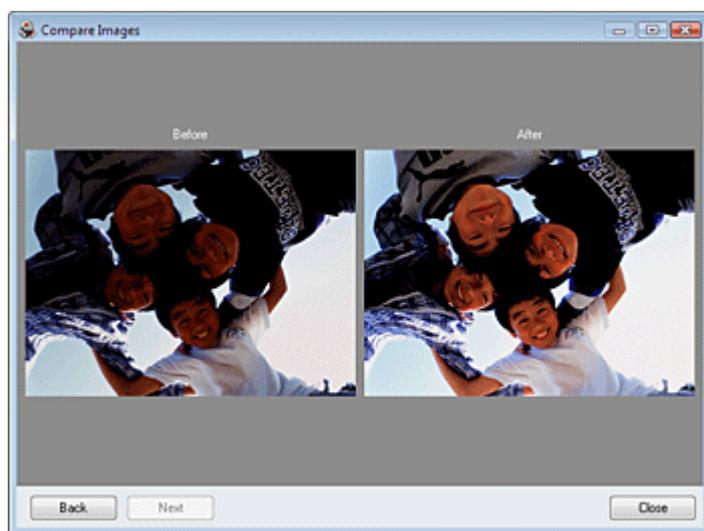
(Full Screen)

Displays the entire image in Preview.

(Compare)

Displays the Compare Images window. You can compare the images before and after the correction side by side.

The image before the correction/enhancement is displayed on the left, and the image after the correction/enhancement is displayed on the right.



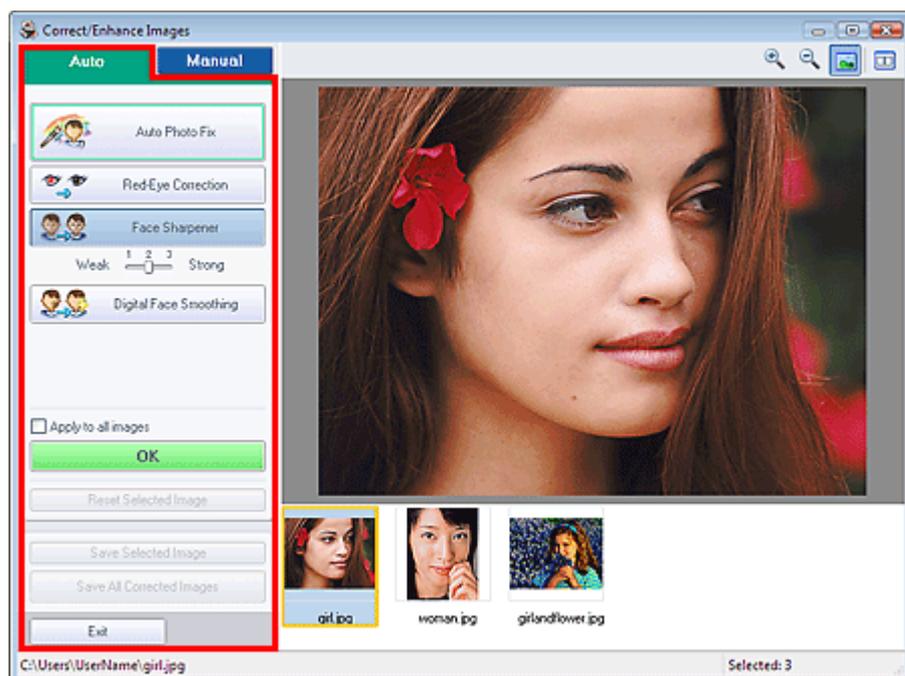
(2)Task Area

Available tasks and settings may vary between the Auto and Manual tabs.

Click Auto or Manual to display the corresponding tab.

Auto Tab

Select to correct automatically.



Auto Photo Fix

Applies automatic corrections suitable for photos.

Important

- The Auto Photo Fix function is not available for Photo Print. Photo Print allows you to automatically apply suitable corrections to all photos when printing. Select this option in Image on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box. To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) in the Layout/Print screen or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Red-Eye Correction

Corrects red eyes.

Note

- For Photo Print, you can also correct red eyes by selecting Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and selecting the Enable Red-Eye Correction checkbox.

Face Sharpener

Sharpens out-of-focus faces.

You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Digital Face Smoothing

Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.

You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Apply to all images

Automatically corrects all the images displayed in the list.

OK

Applies the selected effect to the selected image or all images.

Reset Selected Image

Cancels all corrections and enhancements applied to the selected image.

Save Selected Image

Saves the selected image.

Save All Corrected Images

Saves all the images displayed in the list.

Exit

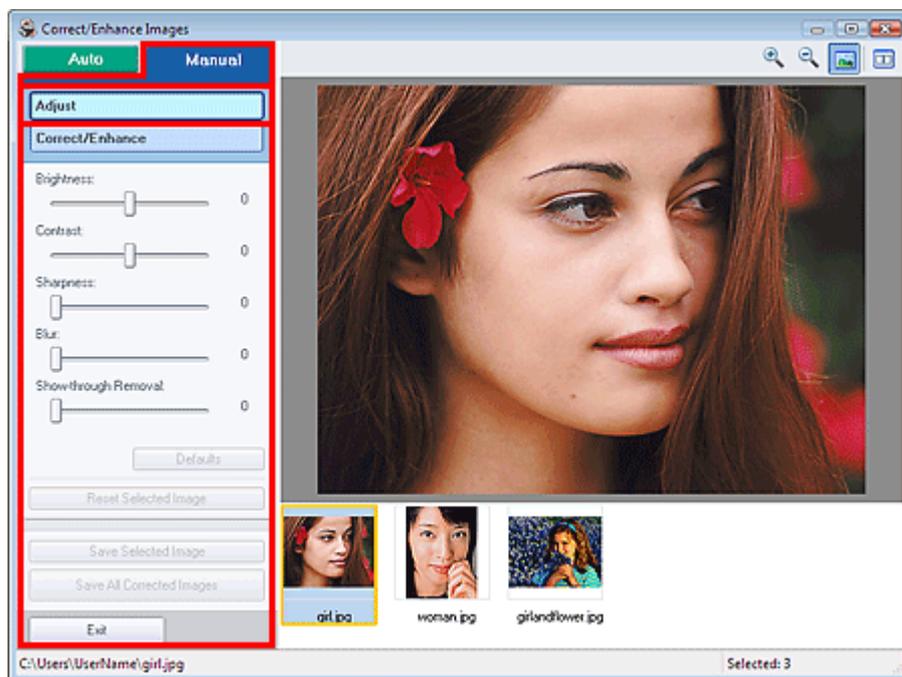
Click to close the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Manual Tab

Select to correct manually.

Use Adjust to adjust brightness and contrast, or to sharpen the entire image.

Use Correct/Enhance to correct/enhance specific areas.

Adjust**Brightness**

Adjusts the overall image brightness.

Move the slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.

Contrast

Adjusts the contrast of the image. Adjust the contrast when the image is flat due to lack of contrast.

Move the slider to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image.

Sharpness

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image. Adjust the sharpness when the photo is out of focus or text is blurred.

Move the slider to the right to sharpen the image.

Blur

Blurs the outline of the subjects to soften the image.
Move the slider to the right to soften the image.

Show-through Removal

Removes show-through of text from the reverse side or removes the base color. Adjust the show-through level to prevent text on the reverse side of thin document or the base color of the document from appearing on the image.

Move the slider to the right to increase the show-through removal effect.

Defaults

Resets all adjustments (brightness, contrast, sharpness, blur, and show-through removal).

Reset Selected Image

Cancels all adjustments applied to the selected image.

Save Selected Image

Saves the selected image.

Save All Corrected Images

Saves all the images displayed in the list.

Exit

Click to close the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Correct/Enhance**Red-Eye Correction**

Corrects red eyes.

You can specify the area you want to apply the effect to. You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Note

- For Photo Print, red eyes are automatically corrected when Enable Auto Photo Fix is selected in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and the Enable Red-Eye Correction checkbox is selected. To disable the automatic correction, deselect the checkbox.

Face Brightener

Corrects the entire image so that the selected facial area is brightened.

You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Face Sharpener

Sharpens out-of-focus faces.

You can specify the area you want to apply the effect to. You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Digital Face Smoothing

Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.

You can specify the area you want to apply the effect to. You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Blemish Remover

Removes moles.

You can specify the area you want to apply the effect to.

Undo

Cancels the latest correction/enhancement.

OK

Applies the selected effect to the specified area.

Reset Selected Image

Cancels all corrections and enhancements applied to the selected image.

Save Selected Image

Saves the selected image.

Save All Corrected Images

Saves all the images displayed in the list.

Exit

Click to close the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with the Bundled Application Software](#) > [Questions and Answers](#)

Questions and Answers

- ➔ [How Can I Move \(or Copy\) the Saved File?](#)
- ➔ [Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?](#)
- ➔ [How Do I Print with Even Margins?](#)
- ➔ [What Is "C1" or "C4"?](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

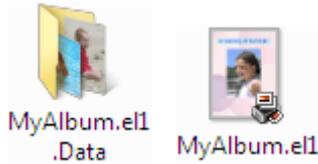
[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with the Bundled Application Software](#) > [Questions and Answers](#)
> [How Can I Move \(or Copy\) the Saved File?](#)

How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

If you want to move (or copy) a file created and saved with Easy-PhotoPrint EX from one folder to another, you need to move (or copy) the folder that was automatically created when originally saving that file as well.

For example, when you save a file named "MyAlbum.e1," a folder named "MyAlbum.e1.Data" is automatically created in the same folder that contains the "MyAlbum.e1" file. If you want to move (or copy) the "MyAlbum.e1" file to another folder, move (or copy) the "MyAlbum.e1.Data" folder as well.

The "MyAlbum.e1.Data" folder contains the photos used in the album.



Note

- The icons may vary depending on the items.

Important

- Do not change the Data folder name; otherwise you will not be able to display the photos you edited with Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Questions and Answers > Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?

Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?

As shown below, printing starts from the left side of the image displayed in the Layout/Print screen.



Outputs the paper in the direction as the arrow indicates.

See your printer manual for details on how to load paper (to print on the front/back, etc.).

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with the Bundled Application Software](#) > [Questions and Answers](#)
> [How Do I Print with Even Margins?](#)

How Do I Print with Even Margins?

When you print on a bordered layout, the margins on the left and right or the top and bottom may become wider than the other, depending on the image and printer.

To always print with even margins, select the Always crop images when selecting a layout with margins checkbox on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) in the Layout/Print screen or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Crop the photo to apply even margins individually.

➔ [Cropping Photos \(Photo Print\)](#)



Note

- The following setting is available for Photo Print only.
-

[Page top](#)↑

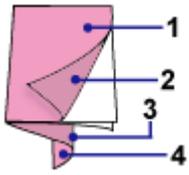
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Questions and Answers
> What Is "C1" or "C4"?

What Is "C1" or "C4"?

When an album is printed, labels such as "C1" and "C4" are printed as page numbers.

The "C1" and "C4" represent the front cover and back cover, respectively.



C1: Front cover

C2: Inside the front cover

C3: Inside the back cover

C4: Back cover

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings

Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings

- ➔ Printing on a DVD/CD
- ➔ Printing Vivid Photos
- ➔ Reducing Photo Noise
- ➔ Cropping Photos (Photo Print)
- ➔ Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)
- ➔ Printing Multiple Photos on One Page
- ➔ Printing an Index
- ➔ Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)
- ➔ Printing Photo Information
- ➔ Saving Photos
- ➔ Opening Saved Files
- ➔ Changing Layout
- ➔ Changing Background
- ➔ Adding Photos
- ➔ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➔ Replacing Photos
- ➔ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➔ Cropping Photos
- ➔ Framing Photos
- ➔ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➔ Attaching Comments to Photos
- ➔ Adding Text to Photos
- ➔ Saving
- ➔ Setting Holidays
- ➔ Setting Calendar Display

[Page top↑](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Printing on a DVD/CD

Printing on a DVD/CD

You can print on a DVD/CD using Photo Print.

Select CD-R for Paper Size in the Select Paper screen, then select a layout and enter the title.

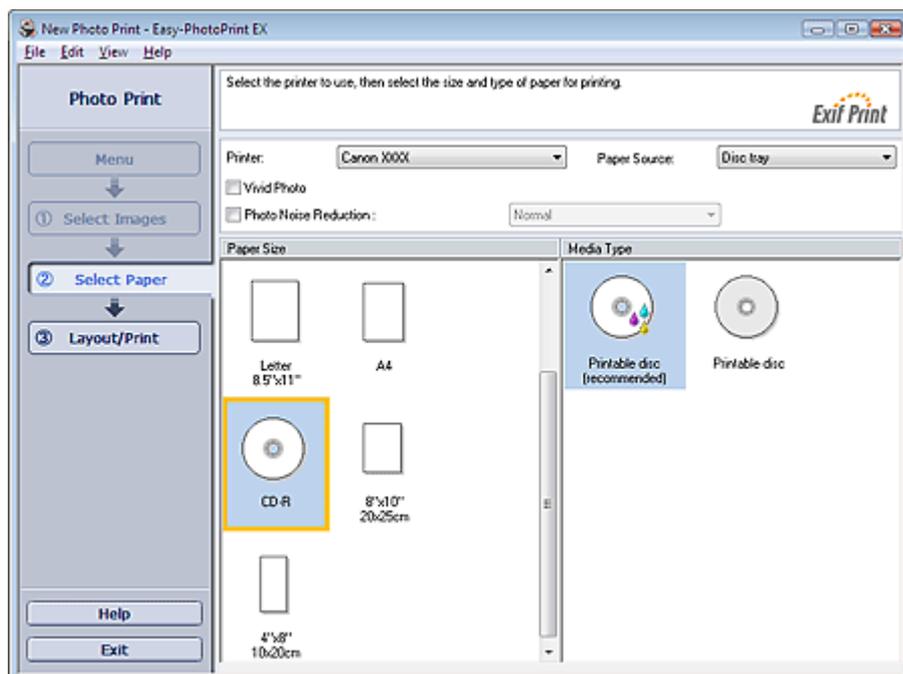
If you want to edit the details, return to Menu and select DVD/CD Label and edit/print using CD-LabelPrint.

Follow the steps for other items to complete image selection in the Select Images screen.

➔ Selecting a Photo

1. Select CD-R for Paper Size in the Select Paper screen.

Set the Printer and Media Type according to the printer and DVD/CD to be used.

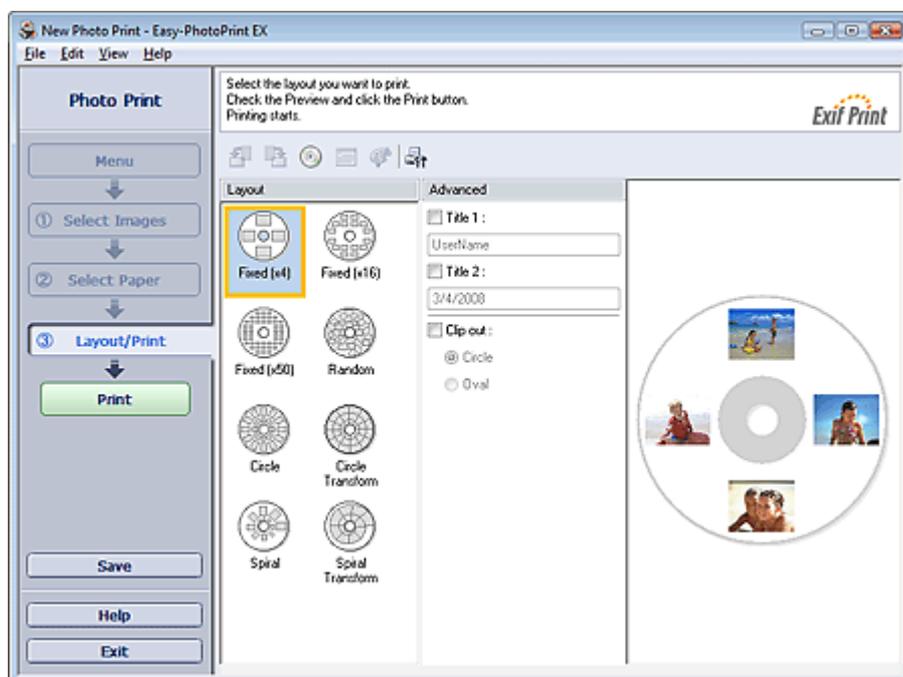


Note

- When CD-R is selected, only Disc tray will be selectable for Paper Source.

2. Click Layout/Print.

The Layout/Print screen appears.



3. Select a layout you want to use.
4. Enter the title(s) and specify the details of the layout in Advanced.

Note

- Items that can be set may vary depending on the selected layout.

5. Click Print.

Set a DVD/CD and print according to the message.

Printing starts from the top of the image displayed in Preview.

Important

- Do not install a CD-R tray until the message prompting you to set a DVD/CD appears.

Note

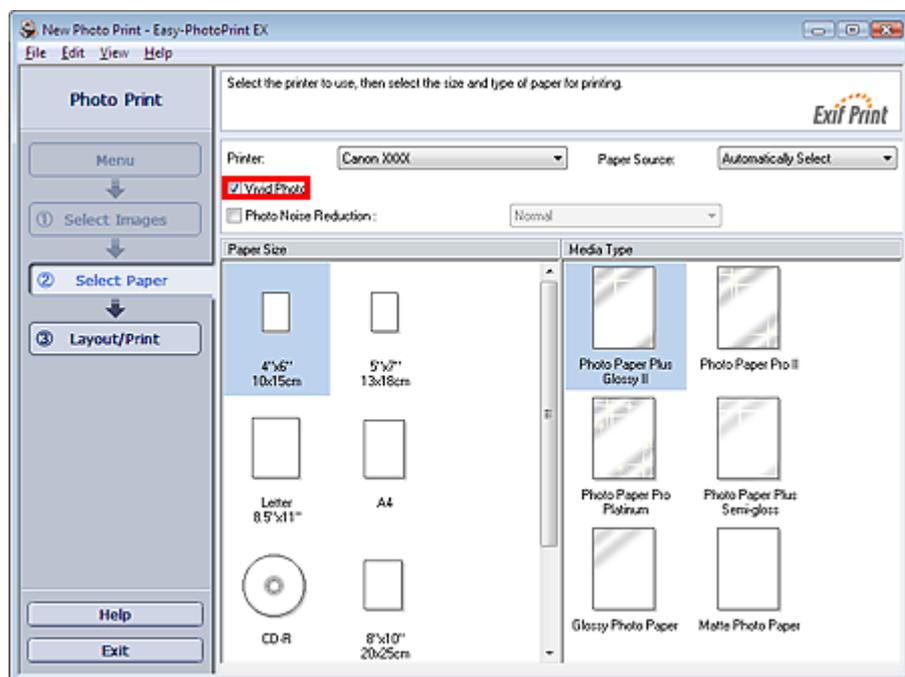
- You can adjust the printing position on the DVD/CD in the Adjust dialog box. To display the Adjust dialog box, click  (Adjust Print Area/Print Position).
- You can specify advanced Photo Print settings (number of copies, print quality, etc.) in the Preferences dialog box. To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Printing Vivid Photos

Printing Vivid Photos

Select the Vivid Photo checkbox in the Select Paper screen to boost the colors in a photo before printing.



Important

- This function is available only with a printer that supports Vivid Photo.
- This function is not available when Enable ICC Profile is selected on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- Even if you select the Vivid Photo checkbox, this effect applies only to the print result. The original image or preview image will not be affected.

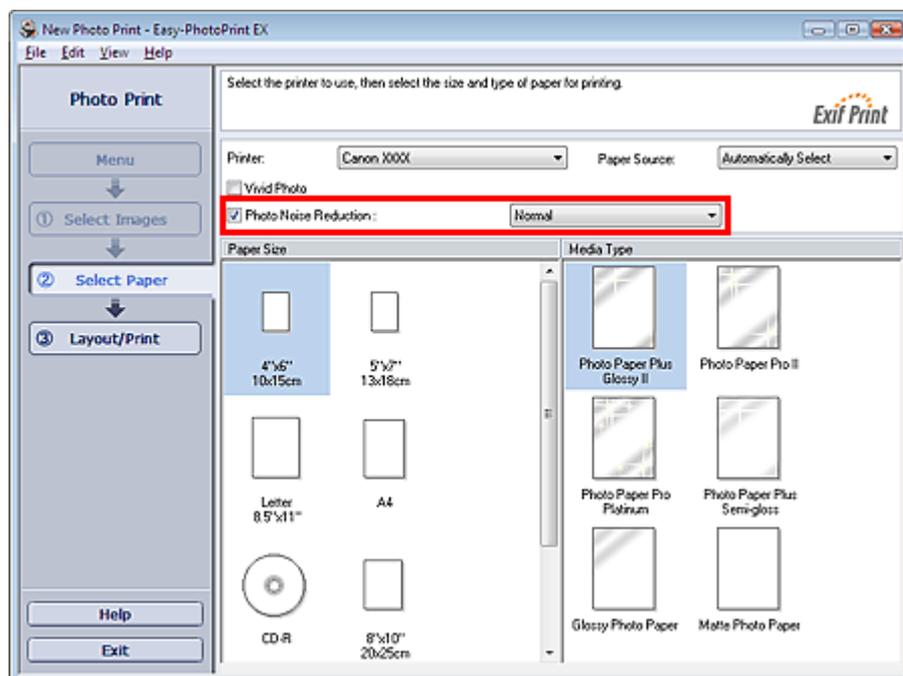
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Reducing Photo Noise

Reducing Photo Noise

When a photo is taken in a dark location such as night scene using digital camera, noise may appear in the image.

Select the Photo Noise Reduction checkbox in the Select Paper screen to reduce noise in the image and make the printed photos more vivid.



Important

- This function is not available when Enable ICC Profile is selected on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- When the noise is severe, change Normal to Strong.
- The noise reduction effect applies only to the print result. The original image or preview image will not be affected.

Advanced Guide

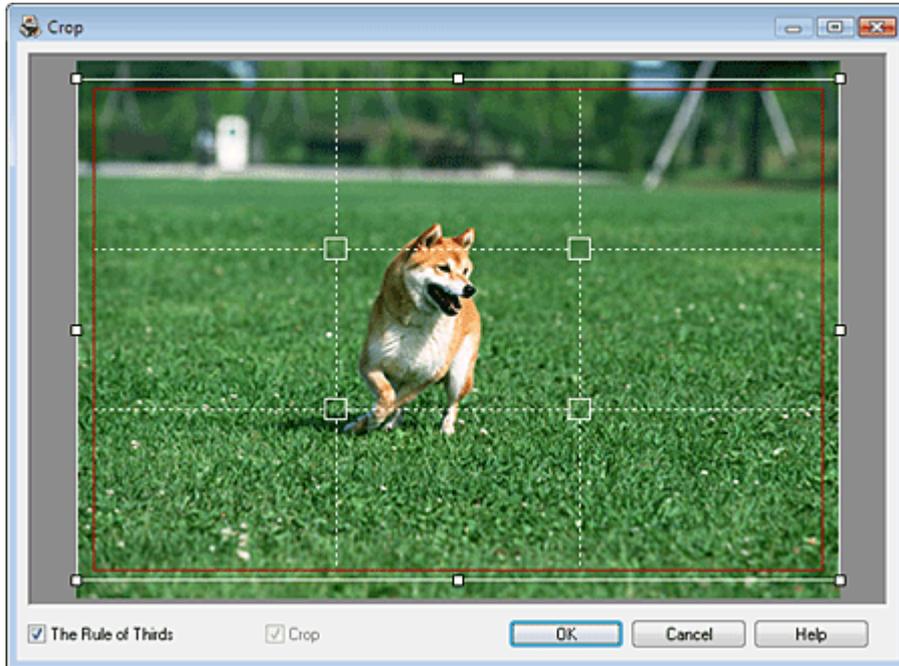
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Cropping Photos (Photo Print)

Cropping Photos (Photo Print)

Cropping a photo is the act of removing the unnecessary portions of the photo by selecting the necessary portions.

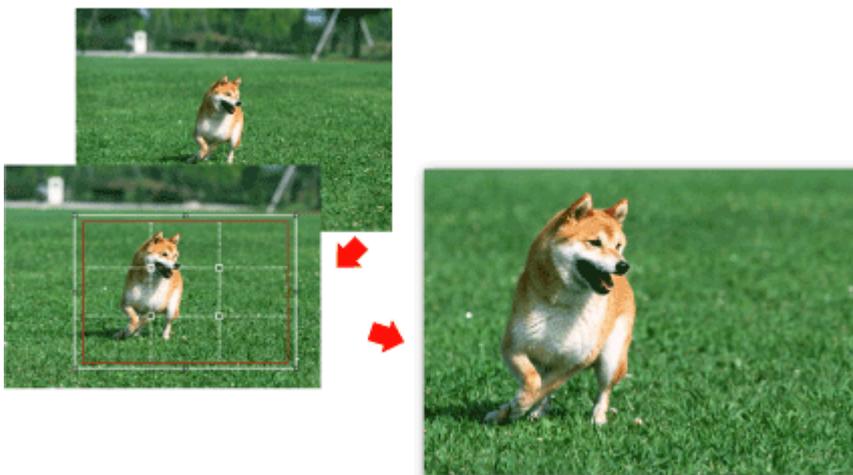
Click  (Crop Image) in the Layout/Print screen.

Move the white frame to the portion to print and click OK.



Note

- To move the cropping area, place the cursor within the white frame and drag it. Drag the white lines to enlarge/reduce the cropping area.
- Select the The Rule of Thirds checkbox to display white broken lines. To create a balanced composition, drag any of the intersecting points (white squares) or white broken lines over the main subject of the photo.



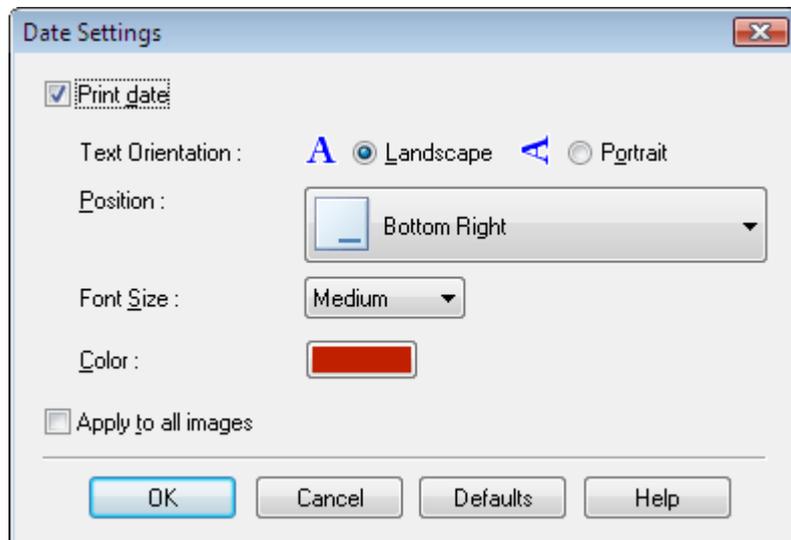
- The cropping effect applies only to the print result. The original image will not be cropped.
- See Help for details on the Crop window.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)

Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)

To print the date the photo was taken on the photo, click  (Date Settings) in the Layout/Print screen, then select the Print date checkbox in the Date Settings dialog box.



Note

- The date is displayed in the short date format (mm/dd/yyyy, etc.) specified in your operating system.
- In the Date Settings dialog box, you can change the orientation, position, size and color of the date according to the orientation and background of the photo. See Help for details.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Printing Multiple Photos on One Page

Printing Multiple Photos on One Page

You can print multiple photos on one page by selecting a multiple-photo layout in the Layout/Print screen.



Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
 - ➔ [Selecting a Photo](#)
- The available number of photos and layout may vary depending on the media type.
- Photos are arranged in the following order.

Example: Borderless (x4)

1	3
2	4

- You can change the printing order in Printing Order on the Print tab of the Preferences dialog box. You can select the printing order from By Date, By Name and By Selection.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Printing an Index

Printing an Index

You can print an index of selected photos. An index print shows the thumbnails of the photos in one page. It is convenient for managing your photos.

To print an index, select Index from the layouts in the Layout/Print screen.



Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
➔ [Selecting a Photo](#)
- Index print will be disabled if you select any of the following paper sizes.
 - Credit Card
 - Fine Art A4
 - Fine Art A3
 - Fine Art A3+
 - Fine Art Letter
 - CD-R
- Up to 80 thumbnails can be printed on one page.
- Photos are arranged in the following order.
Example: Index (x20)

1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20

- You can change the printing order in Printing Order on the Print tab of the Preferences dialog box. You can select the printing order from By Date, By Name, and By Selection.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)

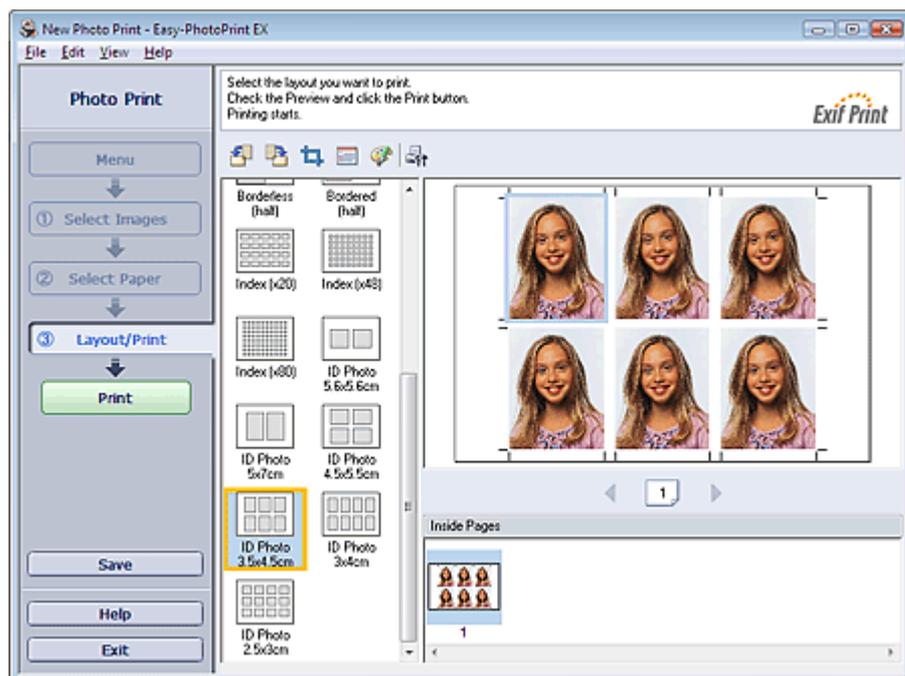
Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)

You can print a variety of ID photos.

Important

- The photo may not qualify as an official ID photo depending on its use. For details, contact the party to whom you will be submitting the photo.

To print ID photos, select 4"x6" 10x15cm for Paper Size in the Select Paper screen, and select a layout of the ID photo from the layouts in the Layout/Print screen.



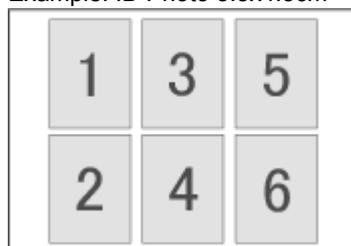
Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.

➔ Selecting a Photo

- Photos are arranged in the following order.

Example: ID Photo 3.5x4.5cm



- You can change the printing order in Printing Order on the Print tab of the Preferences dialog box. You can select the printing order from By Date, By Name, and By Selection.

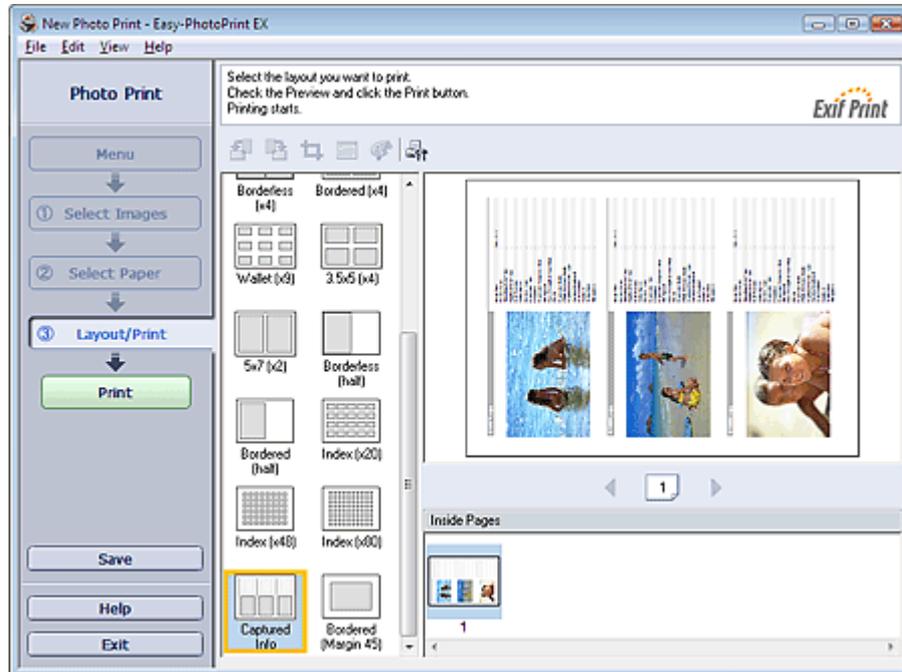
To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Printing Photo Information

Printing Photo Information

Select Captured Info from the layouts in the Layout/Print screen to print the photo and the Exif information side by side.



Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
 - ➔ [Selecting a Photo](#)
- This function is available only on paper sizes Letter 8.5"x11" and A4.

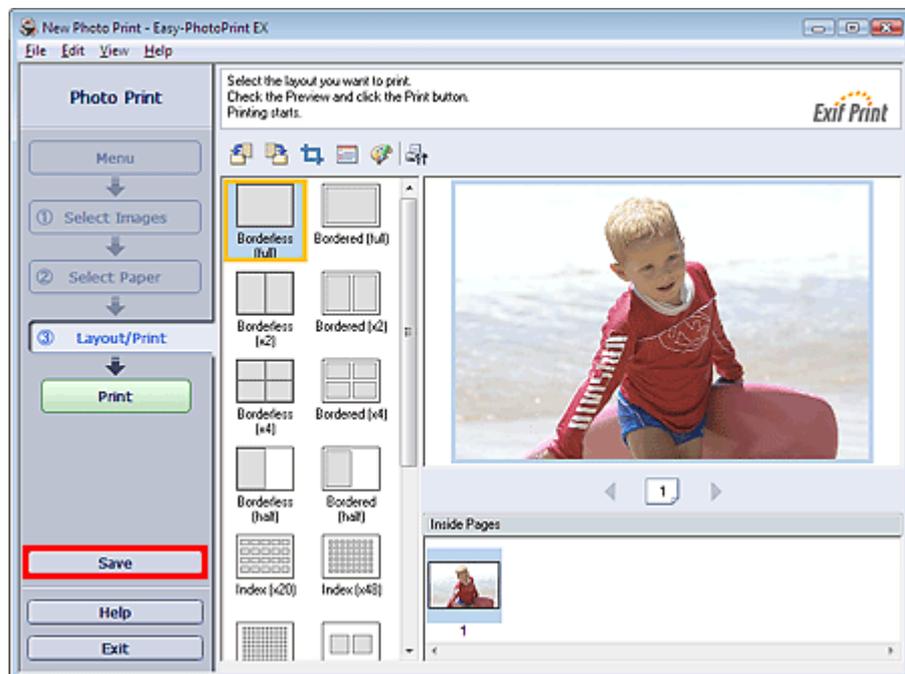
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Saving Photos

Saving Photos

You can save edited photos. The information of cropping and layout can be saved.

Click Save in the Layout/Print screen.



When the Save As dialog box appears, specify the save location and file name, then click Save.

Important

- If you edit a saved file and save it again, the file will be overwritten.
To save a file again with a new name or to a different location, select Save As... from the File menu and save.

Note

- Save will not be displayed in the Select Images or Select Paper screen.

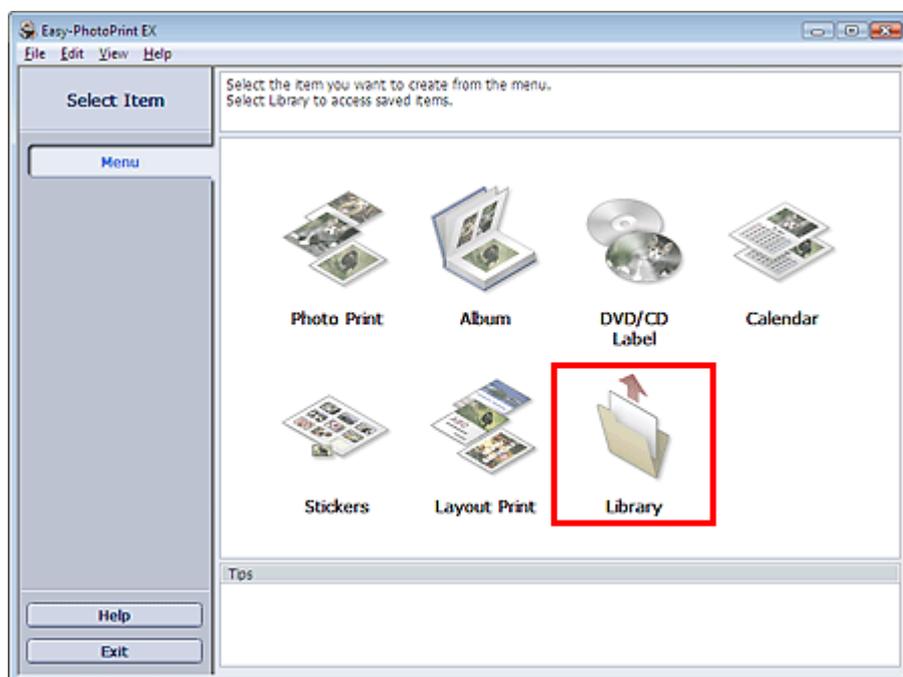
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Opening Saved Files

Opening Saved Files

You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

1. Click Library from Menu.



The Open dialog box appears.

You can check files created and saved with Easy-PhotoPrint EX by icon view (only for Windows Vista) or thumbnail view.

Important

- When using 64bit Edition of Windows Vista or Windows XP, the contents of files cannot be displayed on Explorer.

2. Select the file you want to open and click Open.

The Edit or Select Paper screen appears.

Note

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX supports the following file formats (extensions).
 - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Photo Print file (.el6)
 - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Album file (.el1)
 - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Stickers file (.el2)
 - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Calendar file (.el4)
 - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Layout file (.el5)
 - CD-LabelPrint data (.cld)

3. Edit the file if necessary.

Note

- See the following sections for details on the editing procedures.
 - ➔ [Editing Album](#)
 - ➔ [Editing Calendar](#)
 - ➔ [Editing Stickers](#)
 - ➔ [Editing Layout Print](#)

Note

- You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX with the following methods, besides from Library in Menu.
 - Double-click or click the file.
 - From the File menu, click Open..., then select the file you want to edit.
 - You can also open a recently used file by clicking the file name shown in the File menu.
-

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Changing Layout

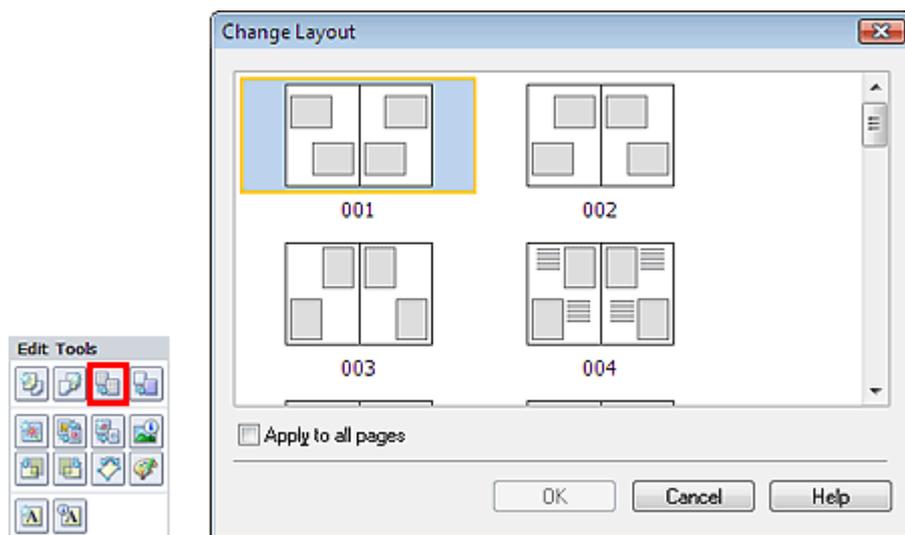
Changing Layout

You can change the layout of each page separately.

Select the page you want to change the layout of in the Edit screen, then click  (Change Layout).

Select the layout you want to use in the Change Layout dialog box and click OK.

Album



Important

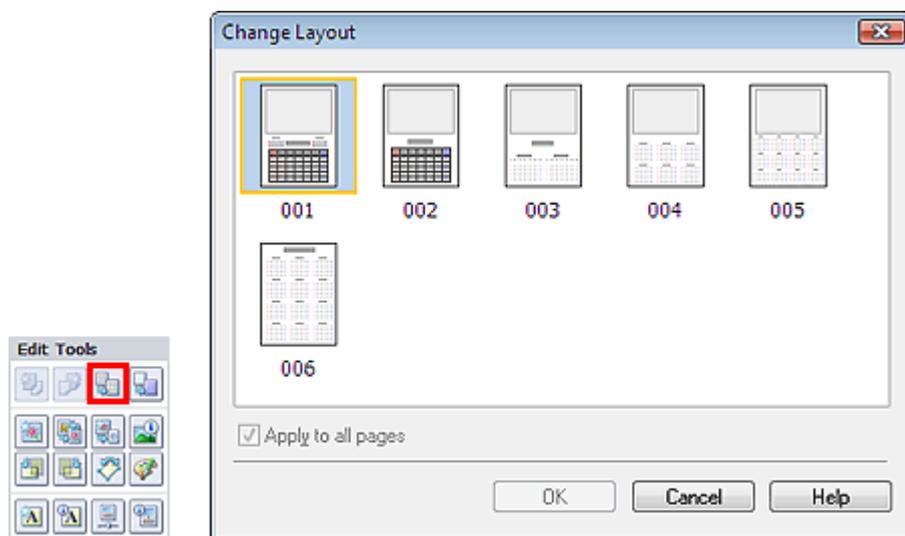
- The album layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size, Orientation, or the type of page selected (front cover, inside pages or back cover).
- If the new layout has a different number of frames per page from the current layout, the following will happen:

If the number of layout frames is increased	: Images will move from the subsequent pages to fill all the frames in the new layout.
If the number of layout frames is decreased	: Pages with the new layout will be added until all the images on the pages with the current layout can be fitted.
- If you change the selected layout for the front or back cover to one that has fewer layout frames, any image that does not fit in the new layout will be deleted, starting with the last image that was added to the former layout page.

Note

- Select the Apply to all pages checkbox to change the layouts of all pages to the one you newly selected.

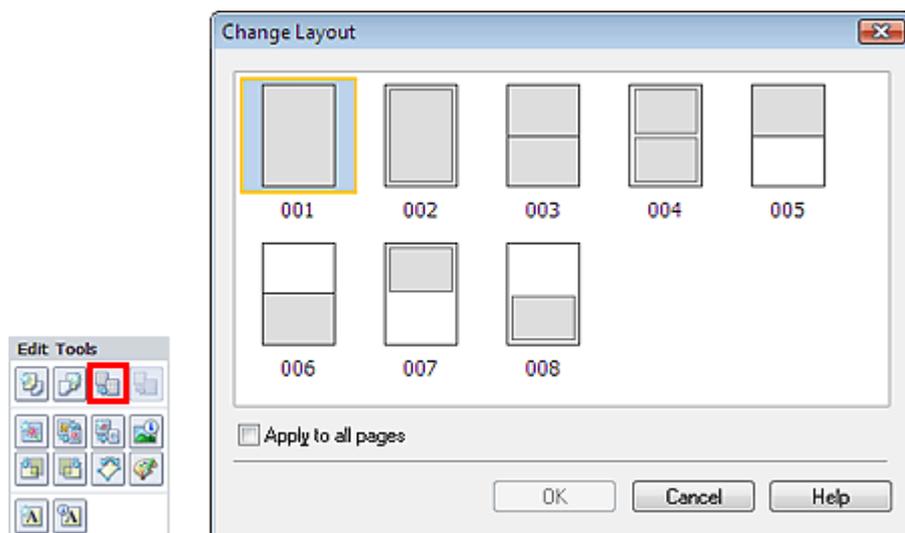
Calendar



Important

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size and Orientation.
- The layouts of all pages are changed to the selected layout.
- All images that do not fit in the new layout will be collected on one page.

Layout Print



Important

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size and Orientation.
- If the new layout has a different number of frames per page from the current layout, the following will happen:

If the number of layout frames is increased	: Images will move from the subsequent pages to fill all the frames in the new layout.
If the number of layout frames is decreased	: Pages with the new layout will be added until all the images on the pages with the current layout can be fitted.

Note

- Select the Apply to all pages checkbox to change the layouts of all pages to the one you newly selected.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Changing Background

Changing Background

You can change the background of each page.

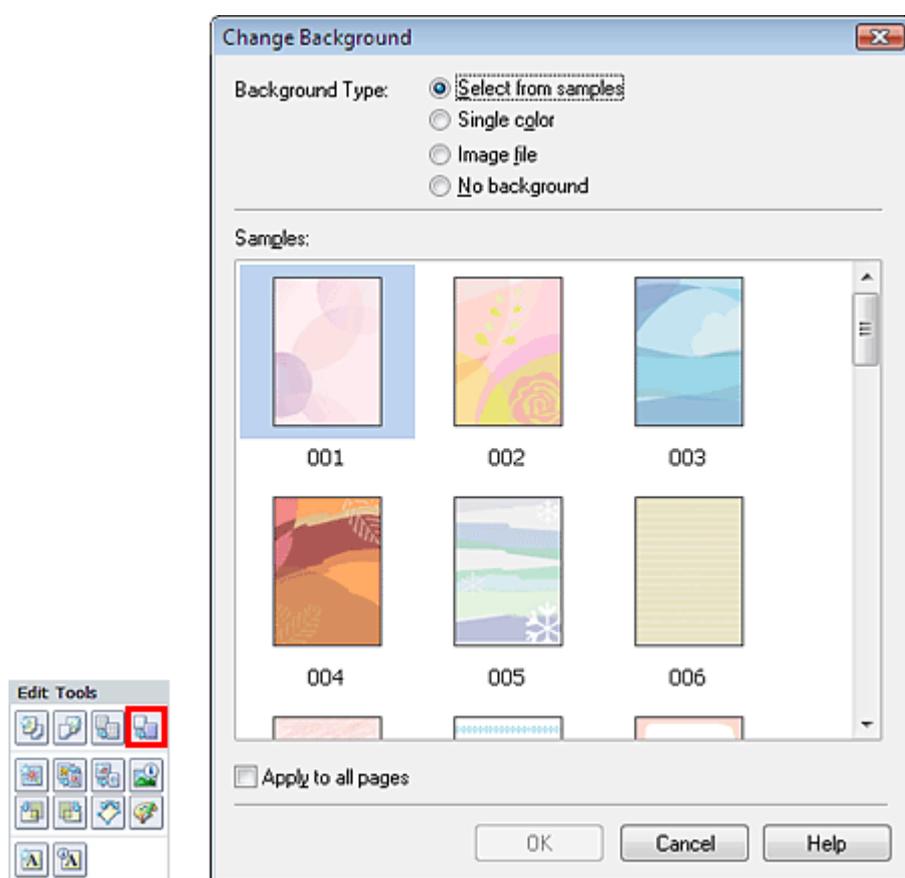
Important

- You cannot change the background of the Photo Print, Stickers, and Layout Print.

Select the page you want to change the background of in the Edit screen, then click  (Change Background).

Note

- The screens for Album printing are used as examples in the following descriptions. The screens may vary depending on what you create.



Select the type of background you want to use in the Change Background dialog box.

When **Select from samples** is Selected

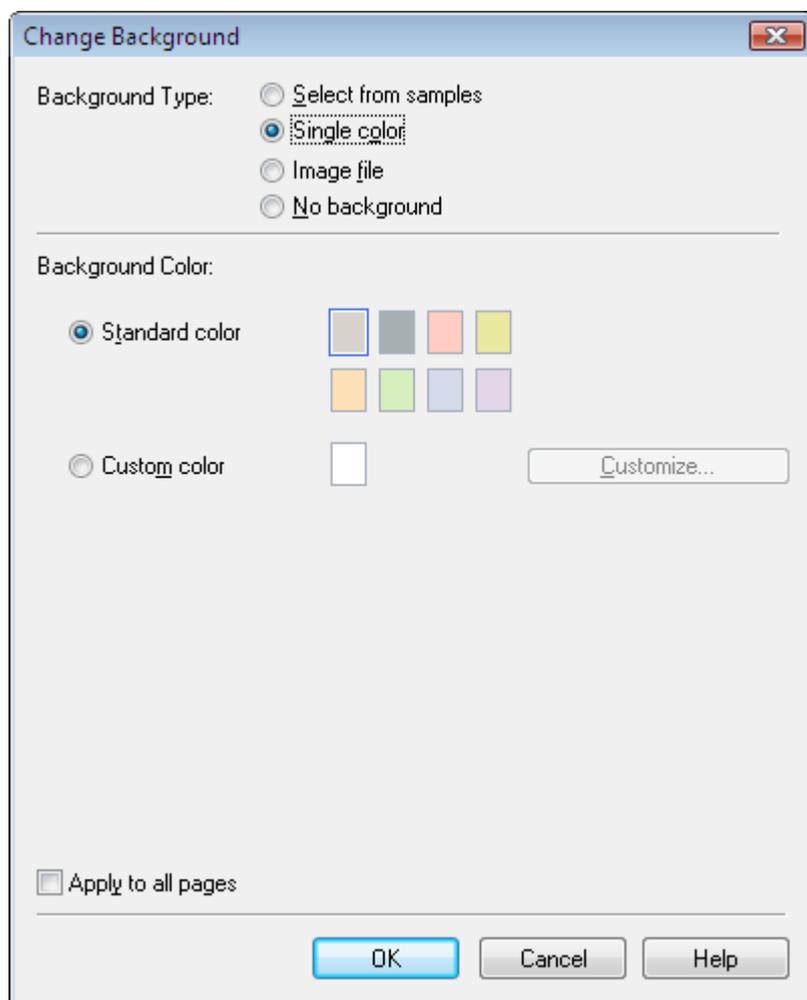
Select the image you want to use from Samples and click OK.

Note

- Select from samples will be displayed only if Album has been selected.

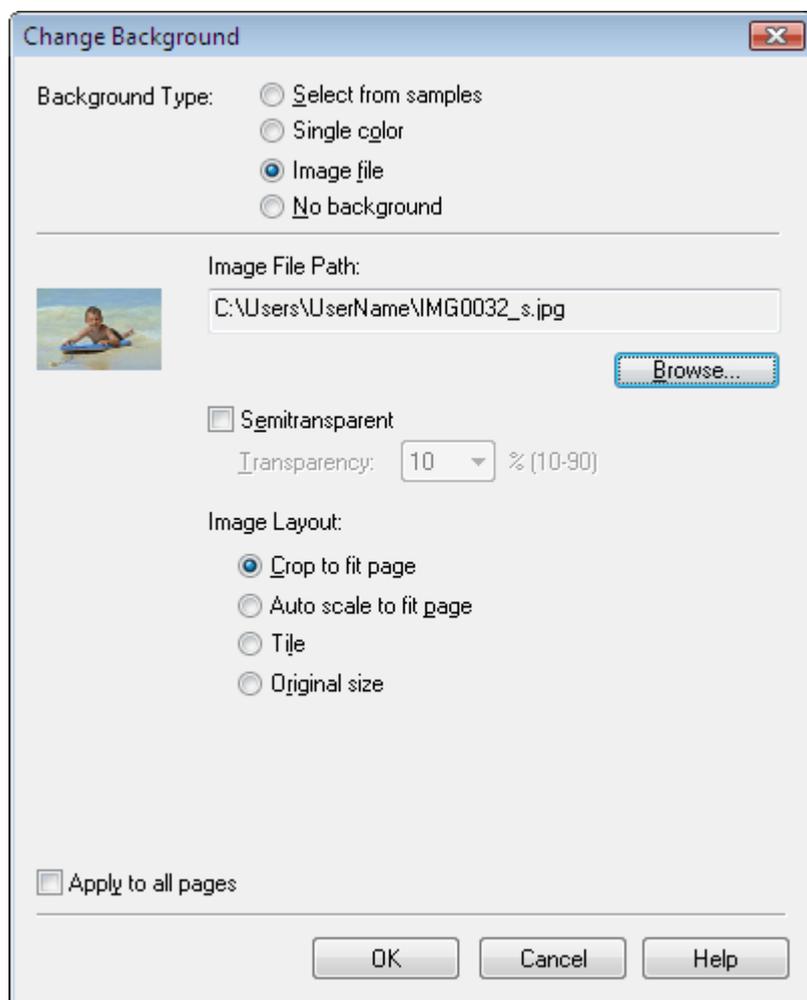
When **Single color** is Selected

Select the color you want to use from Standard color or Custom color and click OK.



When Image file is Selected

Set Image File Path and Image Layout, then click OK.

**Note**

- See Help for details on how to set the background in the Change Background dialog box.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Adding Photos

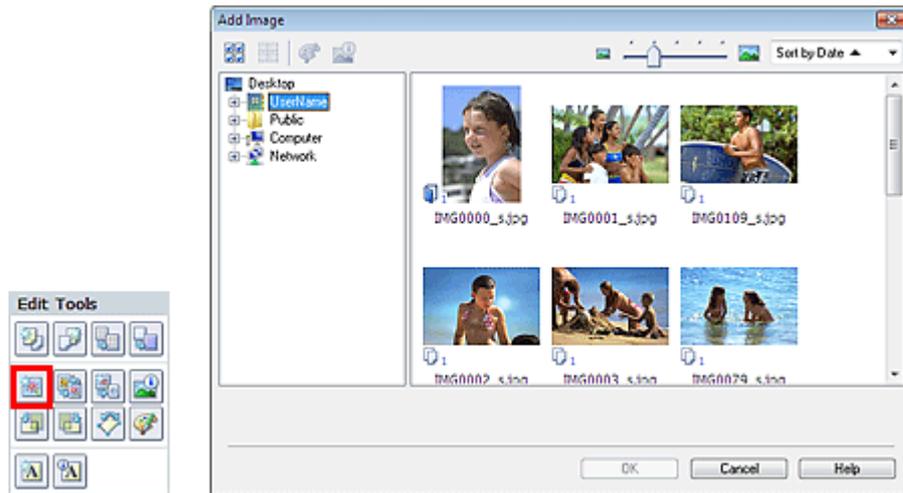
Adding Photos

You can add images to pages.

Select the page you want to add photos in the Edit screen, then click  (Add Image).

Note

- The screens for Album printing are used as examples in the following descriptions. The screens may vary depending on what you create.



Select the folder containing the image you want to add from the folder tree area on the left of the Add Image dialog box, and select the image you want to add from the thumbnail window on the right.

Note

- Click an image to select it (background turns blue) or deselect it (background turns white). You can also select multiple images.

Select an option for Add to and click OK.

Important

- You can add up to 20 images at one time to a single page.
- Up to 99 of the same images can be added to all pages combined.
- You cannot add two or more of the same image at one time. In that case, add it one at a time.
- If you increase the number of pages to add images, you cannot add images beyond page 400.

Note

- In the Add Image dialog box, you can select all images at one time or change the display size and order of the thumbnails. See Help for details.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Swapping Positions of Photos

Swapping Positions of Photos

You can swap the positions of images.

Click  (Swap Image Positions) in the Edit screen.

Note

- The screens for Album printing are used as examples in the following descriptions. The screens may vary depending on what you create.



Select the target and source images you want to swap, then click Swap.
When you finish swapping all images you want to swap, click Back to Edit.

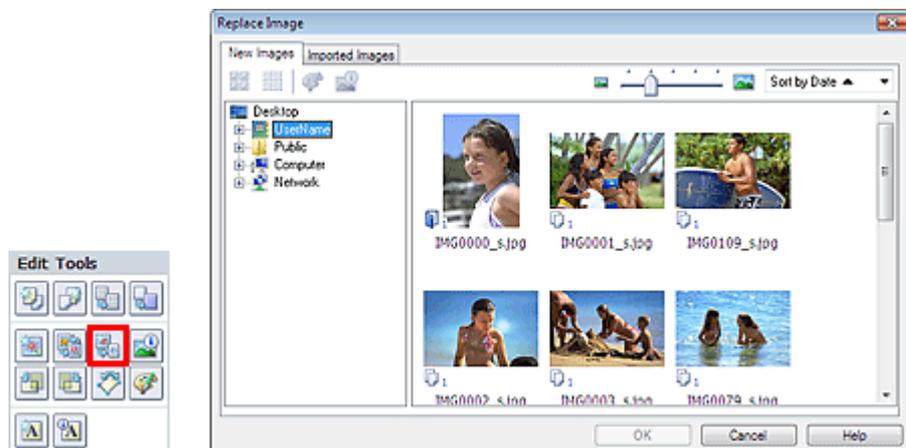
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Replacing Photos

Replacing Photos

You can replace an image with another image.

Select the image you want to replace in the Edit screen, then click  (Replace Selected Image).



Select the folder containing the image you want to replace with from the folder tree area on the left of the Replace Image dialog box.

Select the image you want to replace with from the thumbnail window on the right of the screen and click OK.

If you want to select from the images already imported, click the Imported Images tab and select the image you want to replace with from the thumbnail window and click OK.

Important

- You cannot select multiple images in the Replace Image dialog box.

Note

- If you select multiple images in the Edit screen and use the replacement function, all the images selected in the Edit screen will be replaced with the image selected in the Replace Image dialog box.
- When images are replaced, the following settings of the old image are inherited to the new image.
 - Position
 - Size
 - Frame
 - Position and size of the date
 The cropping information and image orientation are not inherited.
- In the Replace Image dialog box, you can change the display size and order of the thumbnails. See Help for details.

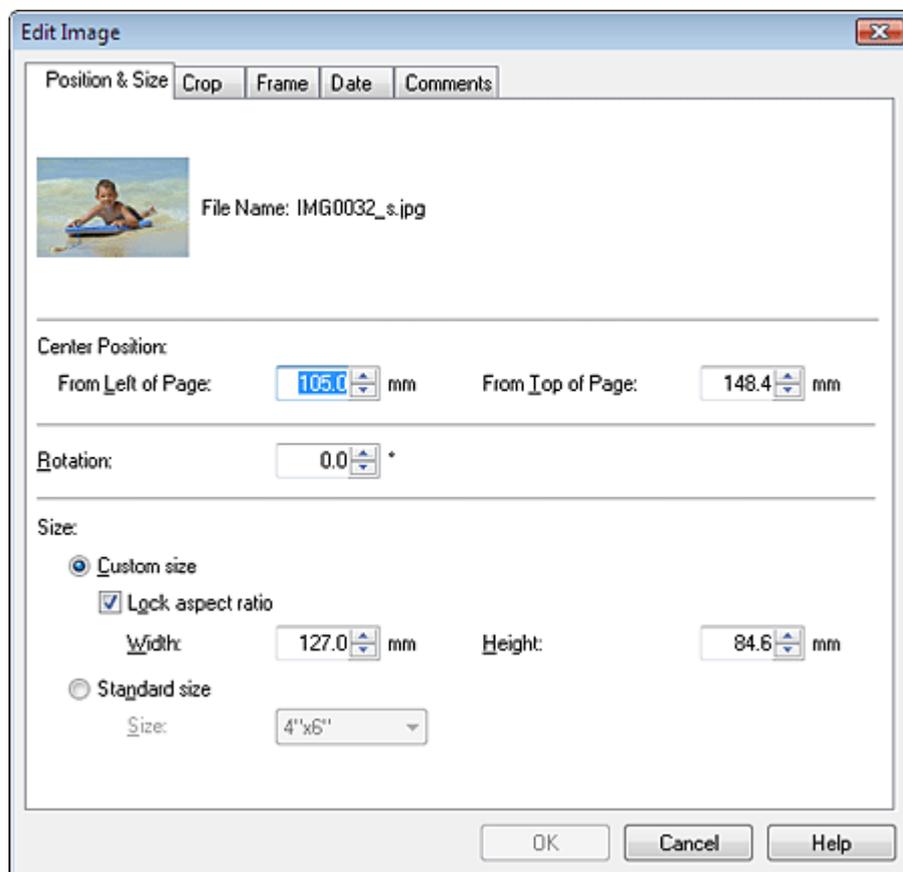
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos

Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos

You can adjust the position, angle and size of images.

Select the image of which you want to change the position or size in the Edit screen and click  (Edit Image) or double-click the image.



Set the Center Position, Rotation and Size, then click OK.

Note

- You can also change the position and size of an image by dragging it in the Edit screen.
- Select an image in the Edit screen, then click  (Free Rotate) and drag a corner of the image to rotate it.
- See Help for details on the position and size of images.

Advanced Guide

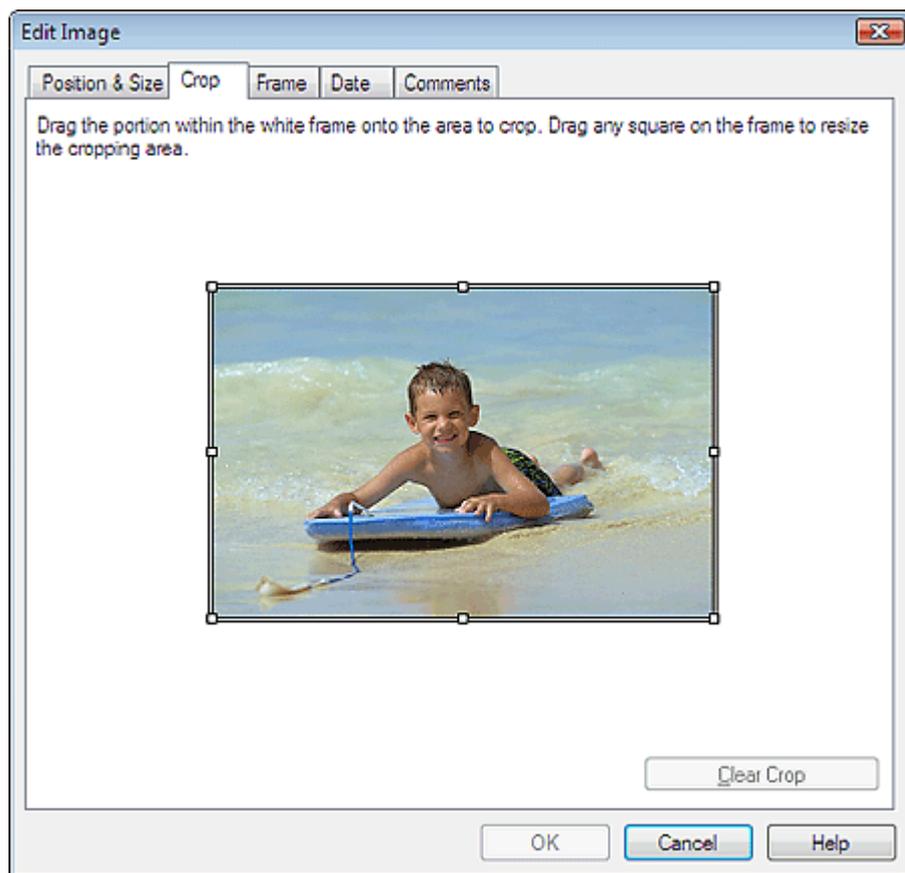
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Cropping Photos

Cropping Photos

Cropping an image is the act of removing the unnecessary portions of the image by selecting the necessary portions.

Select the image you want to crop in the Edit screen and click  (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Crop tab in the Edit Image dialog box.



Drag the white squares on the image to change the area to be cropped and click OK.

Note

- See Help for details on cropping.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Framing Photos

Framing Photos

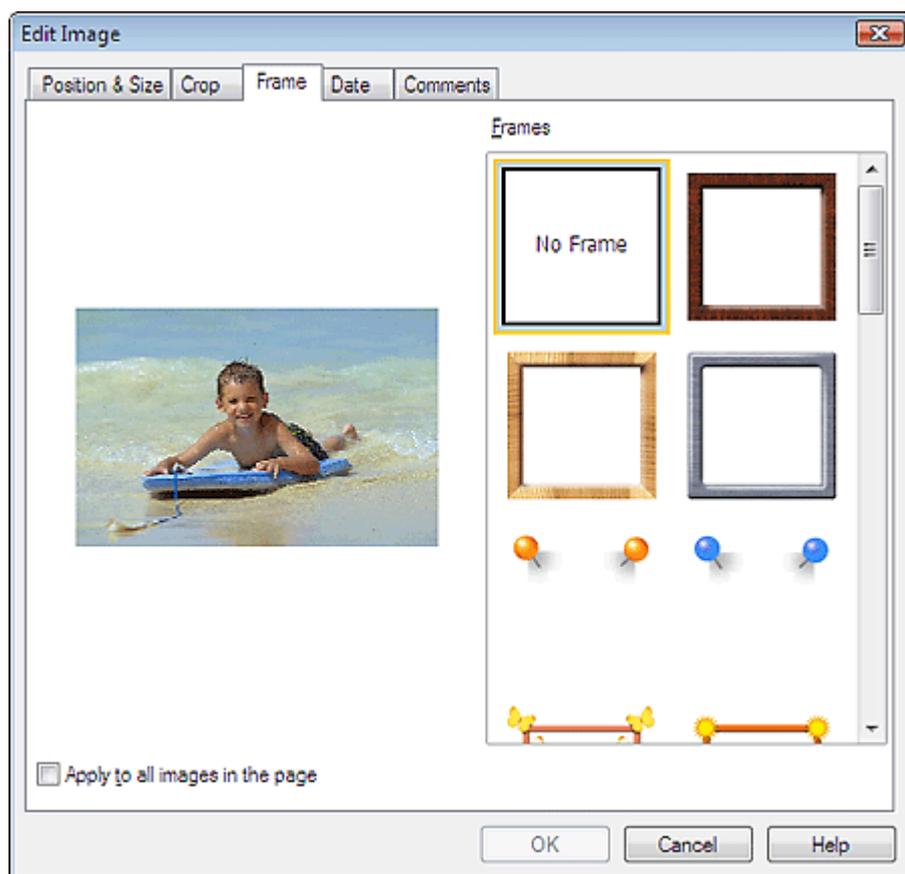
You can add frames to images.

Important

- You cannot add frames to images in Photo Print, Stickers, and Layout Print.

Select the image you want to frame in the Edit screen and click  (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Frame tab in the Edit Image dialog box.



Select the frame you want to use from Frames and click OK.

Important

- You cannot print dates on framed photos.

Note

- Select the Apply to all images in the page checkbox to add the same frame to all the images on a selected page at one time.
- See Help for details on frames.

Advanced Guide

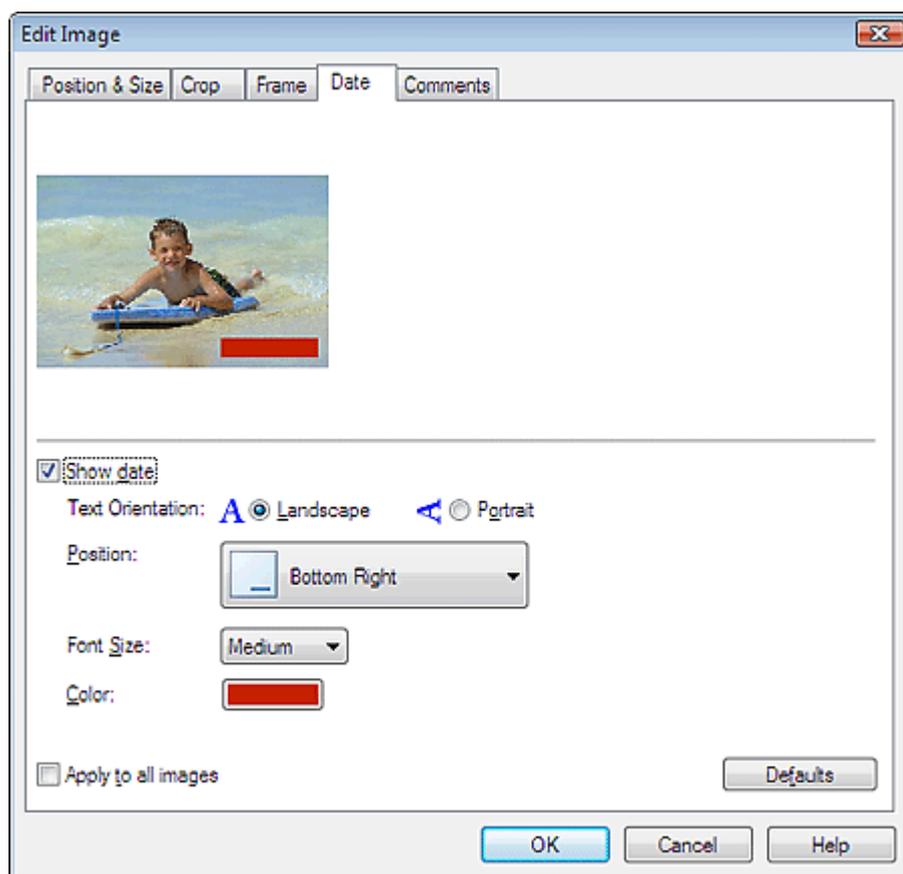
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Printing Dates on Photos

Printing Dates on Photos

You can print dates on images.

Select the image you want to print the date in the Edit screen and click  (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Date tab in the Edit Image dialog box.



Select the Show date checkbox.

Set the Text Orientation, Position, Font Size and Color, then click OK.

Important

- You cannot print dates on framed images.

Note

- The date is displayed in the short date format (mm/dd/yyyy, etc.) specified in your operating system.
- See Help for details on setting dates.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Attaching Comments to Photos

Attaching Comments to Photos

You can attach comments to images and display them in your album. The photo name, shooting date and comments are displayed (from top to bottom) in a comment box.



Important

- You cannot attach comments to Photo Print, Calendar, Stickers, and Layout Print.

Select the image you want to attach comments to in the Edit screen and click  (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Comments tab in the Edit Image dialog box.

Select the Show comment box checkbox.

Select the checkboxes of the items you want to display, and enter comments.

Set the size and color of font, and position, etc. of the comments, then click OK.

Note

- See Help for details on comments.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Adding Text to Photos

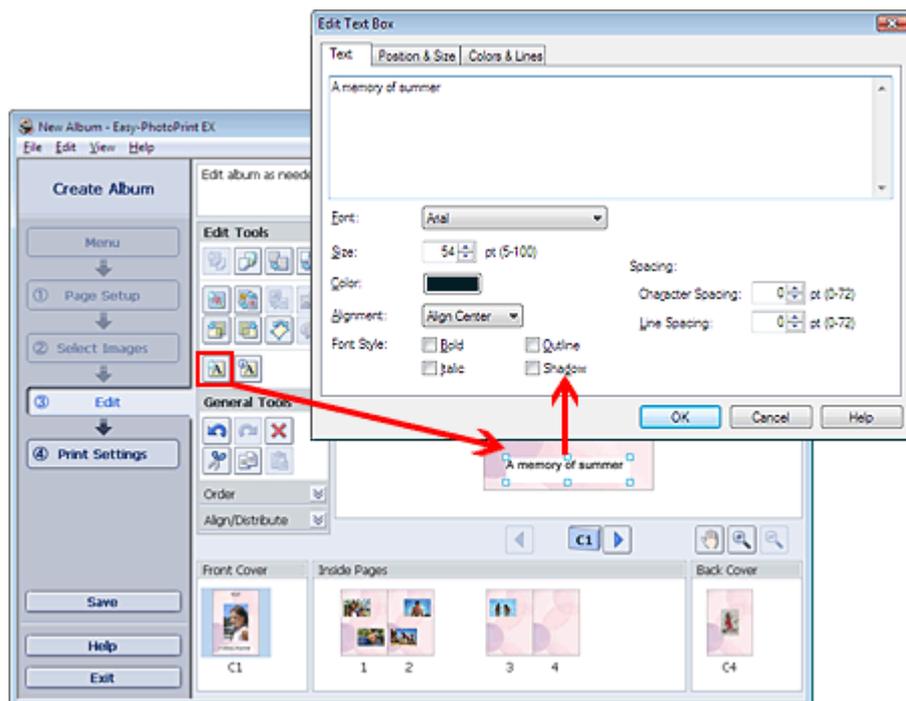
Adding Text to Photos

You can add text to photos.

Click  (Add Text) in the Edit screen and drag the mouse over the area in which you want to add text.

Note

- The screens for Album printing are used as examples in the following descriptions. The screens may vary depending on what you create.



Select the Text tab in the Edit Text Box dialog box and enter text.

Note

- In the Edit Text Box dialog box, you can change the position, angle and size of the text. You can also set the color and line of the text box. See Help for details.
- To change the entered text, select it and click  (Edit Text Box). The Edit Text Box dialog box appears. You can change the text.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Saving

Saving

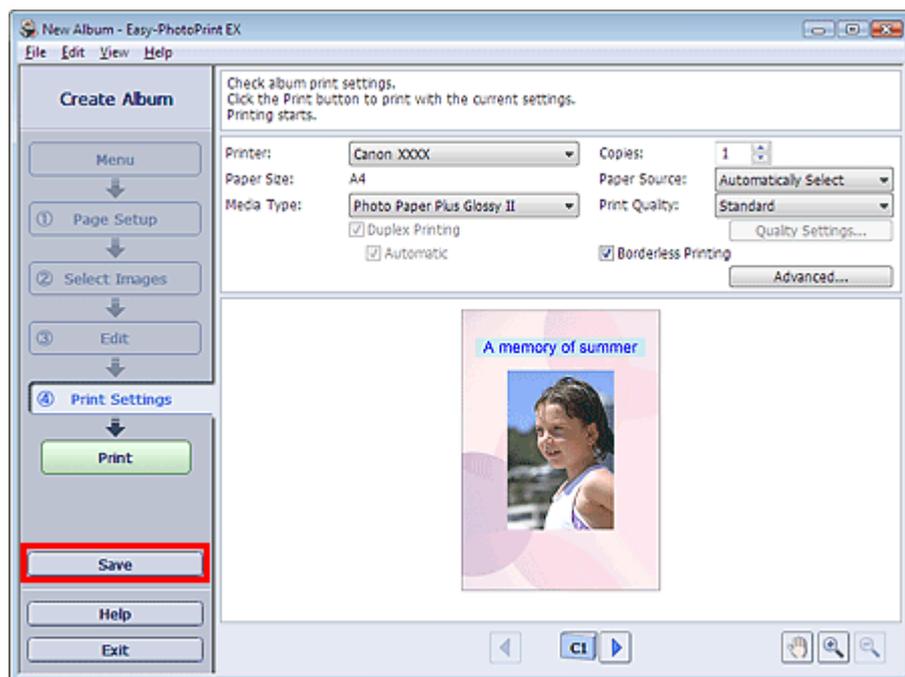
You can save edited items.

Click Save in the Edit or Print Settings screen.



Note

- The screens for Album printing are used as examples in the following descriptions. The screens may vary depending on what you create.



When the Save As dialog box appears, specify the save location and file name, then click Save.



Important

- If you edit a saved file and save it again, the file will be overwritten.
To save a file again with a new name or to a different location, select Save As... from the File menu and save.



Note

- Save will not be displayed in the Page Setup or Select Images screen.

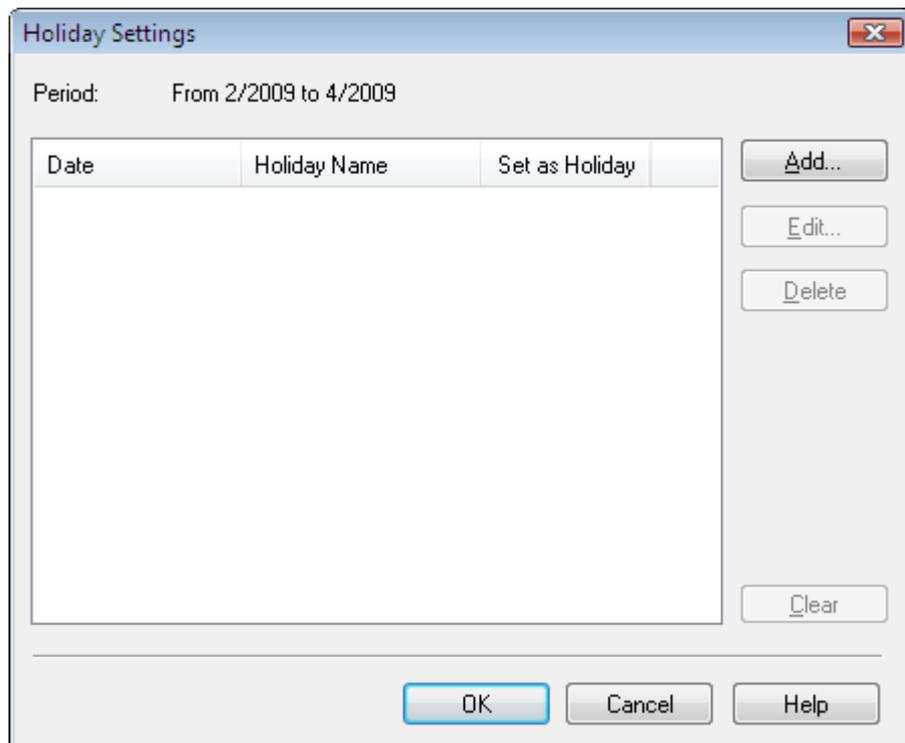
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Setting Holidays

Setting Holidays

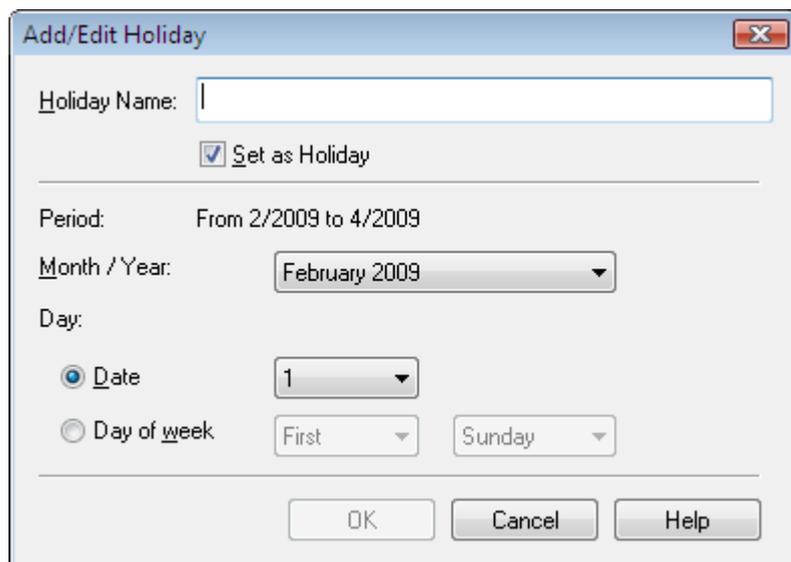
You can add holidays to your calendar.

Click Set Holidays... in the Page Setup screen of Calendar, or click  (Setup Period/Holiday) in the Edit screen and click Set Holidays... in the Calendar General Settings dialog box to display the Holiday Settings dialog box.



To add a holiday, click Add.... The Add/Edit Holiday dialog box appears. To edit a saved holiday, select it and click Edit....

To delete a holiday, select it and click Delete. To delete all the saved holidays within your calendar period, click Clear.



Enter the name in Holiday Name and specify the date.

Select the Set as Holiday checkbox to display that day as a holiday in your calendar.

- See Help for details on each dialog box.
-

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix 1: Easy-PhotoPrint EX Settings > Setting Calendar Display

Setting Calendar Display

You can customize the calendar display (fonts, lines, colors, position, size, etc.).

Click Settings... in the Page Setup screen of Calendar, or select a calendar in the Edit screen and click



(Setup Calendar) to display the Calendar Settings dialog box.

Important

- The Position & Size tab is displayed only when the Calendar Settings dialog box is displayed from the Edit screen.

Calendar Settings

Style Options Color Position & Size

Style for Year and Month

Font: Arial

Format: 3/2009

Style for Days of Week

Font: Arial

Week Starts on: Sunday

Style for Days

Font: Arial

Defaults

OK Cancel Help

Note

- See Help for details on the Calendar Settings dialog box.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#)

Printing with Other Application Software

- ➔ [Various Printing Methods](#)
- ➔ [Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data](#)
- ➔ [Overview of the Printer Driver](#)

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods

Various Printing Methods

- ➔ [Printing with Easy Setup](#)
- ➔ [Setting a Page Size and Orientation](#)
- ➔ [Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order](#)
- ➔ [Setting the Stapling Margin](#)
- ➔ [Borderless Printing](#)
- ➔ [Fit-to-Page Printing](#)
- ➔ [Scaled Printing](#)
- ➔ [Page Layout Printing](#)
- ➔ [Poster Printing](#)
- ➔ [Booklet Printing](#)
- ➔ [Duplex Printing](#)
- ➔ [Stamp/Background Printing](#)
- ➔ [Saving a Stamp Setting](#)
- ➔ [Saving Image Data to be Used as a Background](#)
- ➔ [Printing an Envelope](#)
- ➔ [Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose](#)
- ➔ [Displaying the Print Results before Printing](#)
- ➔ [Setting Paper Dimensions \(Custom Size\)](#)

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Printing with Easy Setup

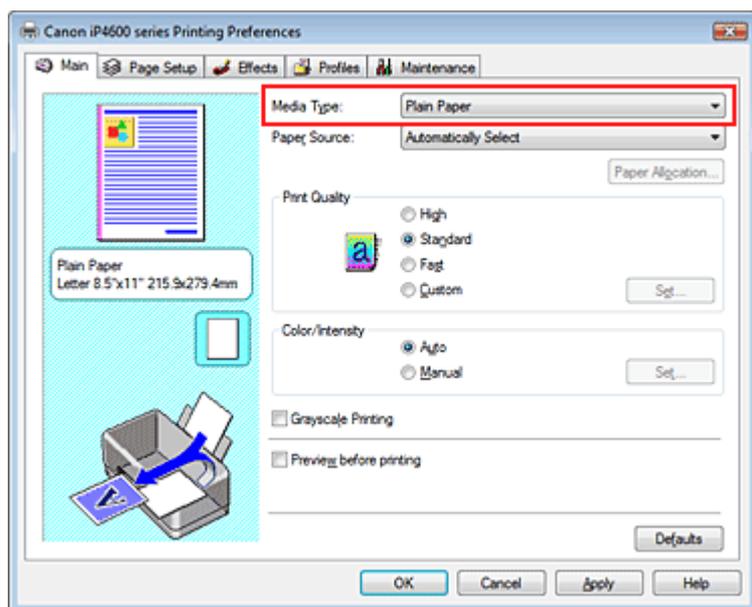
Printing with Easy Setup

The procedure for setting the basic print setup, which is necessary to print data properly with this printer, is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the media type

Select the type of paper loaded in the printer from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



3. Select the paper source

Select Automatically Select, Rear Tray, Cassette, Continuous Autofeed, or Paper Allocation from Paper Source.

Important

- The Paper Source settings that can be selected may differ depending on the paper type and size.

4. Select the print quality

Select High, Standard, or Fast for Print Quality.

5. Select color/intensity

Select Auto for Color/Intensity.

6. Check the settings

Check the specified settings such as paper type and paper source displayed in the Settings Preview on the left side of the window.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the document will be printed in accordance with the type and size of the media.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Setting a Page Size and Orientation

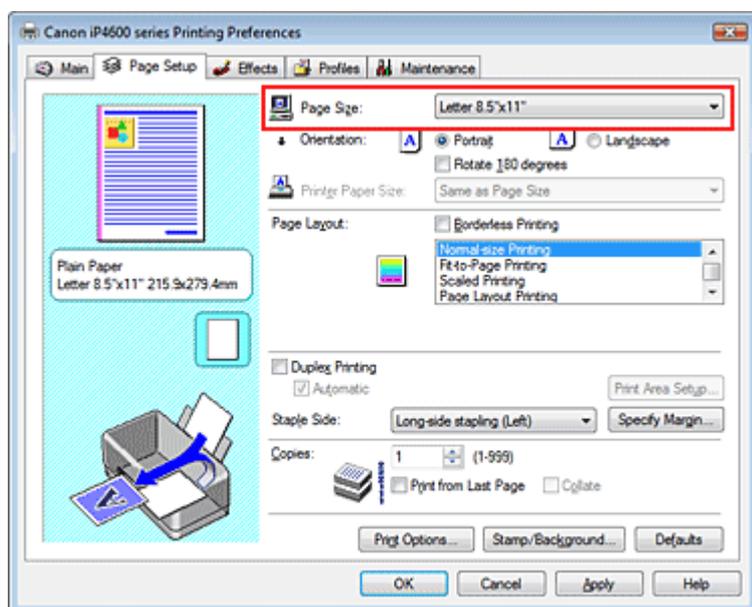
Setting a Page Size and Orientation

The paper size and orientation are essentially determined by the application. If the page size and orientation set for Page Size and Orientation on the Page Setup tab are same as those set with the application, you do not need to select them on the Page Setup tab.

If you are not able to specify them with the application, the procedure for selecting a page size and orientation is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Select the paper size

Select a page size from the Page Size list on the Page Setup tab.



3. Select Orientation

Select Portrait or Landscape for Orientation. Check Rotate 180 degrees check box if you want to perform printing with the original being rotated 180 degrees.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK.

The document will be printed with the selected page size and the orientation.

Advanced Guide

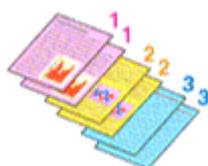
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order

Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order

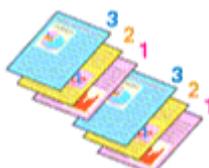
Default Setting



Print from Last Page



Collate



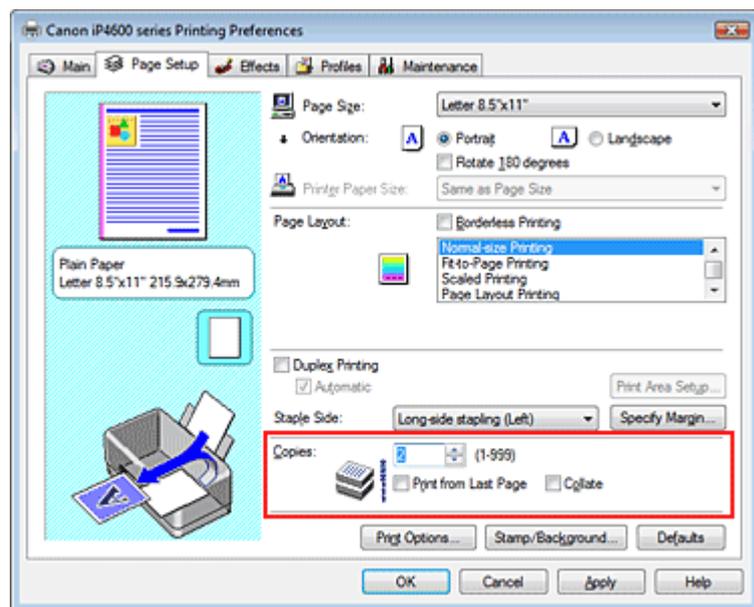
Print from Last Page + Collate



The procedure for specifying the number of copies and printing order is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Specify the number of copies to be printed

For Copies on the Page Setup tab, specify the number of copies to be printed.



3. Specify the print sequence

Check the Print from Last Page check box if you want to print from the last page in order. If you do this, you do not need to sort pages into their correct order after printing.

4. Set up collated printing when you specify multiple copies in the Copies box

Check the Collate check box if you are specifying multiple copy together.
Uncheck this check box to print all pages with the same page number together.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK.

The specified number of copies will be printed with the specified printing order.



Important

- If your application has the same function, make the settings with the application. If you specify the number of copies and the printing order with both the application and this printer driver, the number of copies may be multiplied numbers of the two settings or the specified printing order may not be enabled.
- Print from Last Page and Collate appear grayed out and are unavailable if Booklet Printing is selected for Page Layout.
- Print from Last Page appears grayed out and is unavailable if Poster Printing is selected for Page Layout.

 **Note**

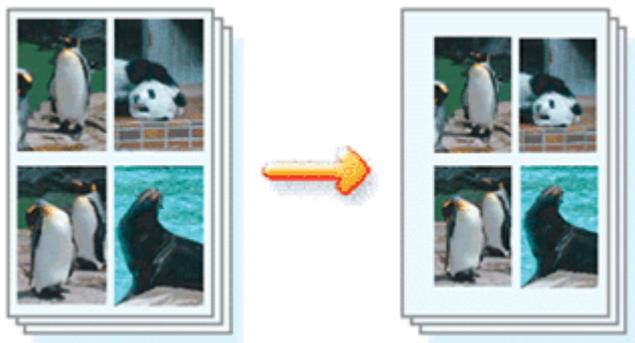
- By setting both Print from Last Page and Collate, you can perform printing so that papers are collated one by one starting from the last page.
These settings can be used in combination with Borderless Printing, Normal-size Printing, Fit-to-Page Printing, Scaled Printing, Page Layout Printing, and Duplex Printing.
-

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Setting the Stapling Margin

Setting the Stapling Margin

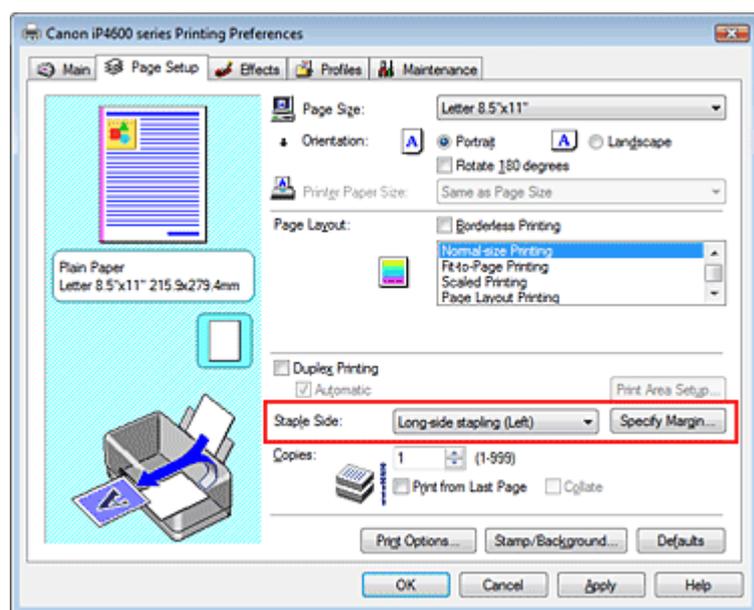


The procedure for setting the stapling direction and the width of the stapling margin is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window
2. Specify the side to be stapled

Check the position of the stapling margin from Staple Side on the Page Setup tab.

The printer analyzes the Orientation and Page Layout settings, and automatically selects the best staple position. If you want to change the setting, select from the list.



3. Set the margin width

If necessary, click Specify Margin... and set the width of the stapling margin, and then click OK.



4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified staple side and margin.

Important

- Staple Side and Specify Margin... appear grayed out and are unavailable when:

- Poster Printing or Booklet Printing is selected for Page Layout.
- Scaled Printing is selected for Page Layout (If Duplex Printing is also selected, only Staple Side is selectable).
- Borderless Printing check box is checked (If Duplex Printing is also selected, only Staple Side is selectable).

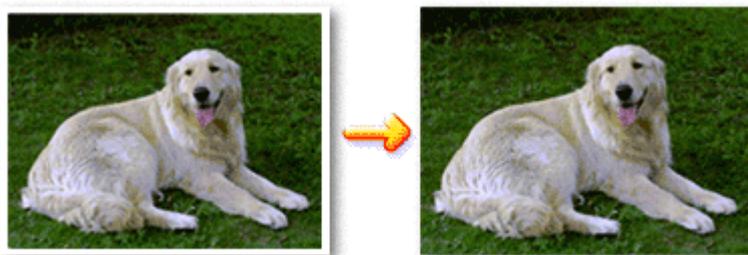
[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Borderless Printing

Borderless Printing

The borderless printing function allows you to print data without any margin by enlarging the data so that it extends slightly off the paper. Without the borderless printing function, a margin is provided around the printed data. If you want to print data such as a photo without providing any margin around it, select Borderless Printing.



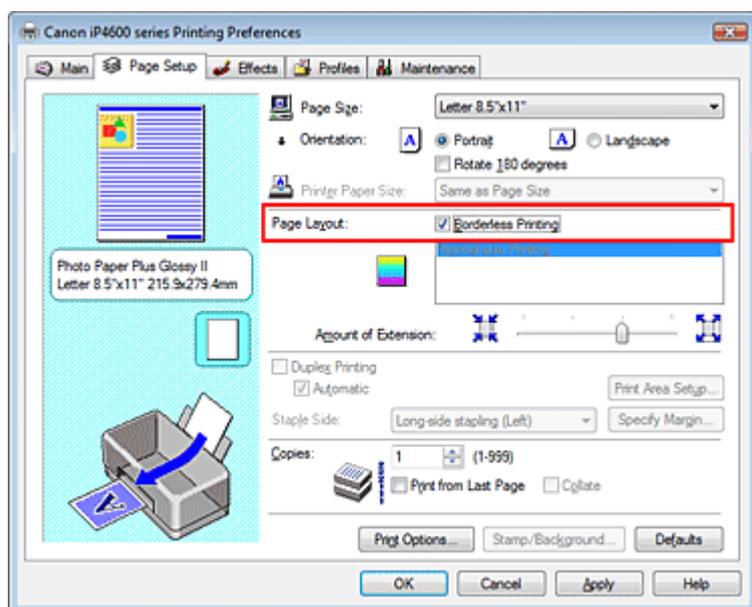
The procedure for performing borderless printing is as follows:

Setting Borderless Printing

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set borderless printing

Check the Borderless Printing check box on the Page Setup tab.



Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

When a message prompting you to change the media type appears, select a media type from the list and click OK.

3. Check the paper size

Check the Page Size list. If you want to change, select another page size from the list. The list displays only sizes that can be used for borderless printing.

4. Adjust the amount of extension from the paper

Adjust the amount of extension using the Amount of Extension slider as necessary.

Moving the slider to the right makes the amount larger and moving the slider to the left makes the amount smaller.

It is recommended to set the slider at the second position from the right for most cases.



Important

- If you set the slider at the rightmost position, the back side of the paper may become smudged.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK.

The data will be printed without any margins on the paper.

Important

- If a page size that cannot be used for borderless printing is selected, the size is automatically changed to the valid page sizes for borderless printing.
- When High Resolution Paper, T-Shirt Transfers, or Envelope is selected from the Media Type list on the Main tab, you cannot perform borderless printing.
- When Borderless Printing is checked, the Printer Paper Size, Page Layout, Staple Side (when Duplex Printing is not selected) settings, and the Stamp/Background... button on the Page Setup tab appear grayed out and are unavailable.
- Print quality may deteriorate or the sheet may be stained at the top and bottom depending on the type of the media used.
- When the ratio of the height to the width differs greatly from the image data, a portion of the image may not be printed depending on the size of the media used.
In this case, crop the image data with an application software according to the paper size.

Note

- When Plain Paper is selected for Media Type on the Main tab, borderless printing is not recommended, and therefore the dialog box for media selection appears.
If you are using plain paper for test printing, select Plain Paper, and click OK.

Expanding the range of the document to print

Specifying a large amount of extension allows you to perform borderless printing with no problems. However, the portion of the document that extends off the paper range will not be printed. Subjects around the perimeter of a photo may not be printed.

Try borderless printing once. If you are not satisfied with the result of borderless printing, reduce the amount of extension. The extension amount becomes shorter as the Amount of Extension slider is moved to the left.

Important

- If the Amount of Extension is shortened, an unexpected margin may be produced on the print, depending on the size of the paper.

Note

- If Preview before printing is checked on the Main tab, you can confirm before printing whether there will be no border.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Fit-to-Page Printing

Fit-to-Page Printing

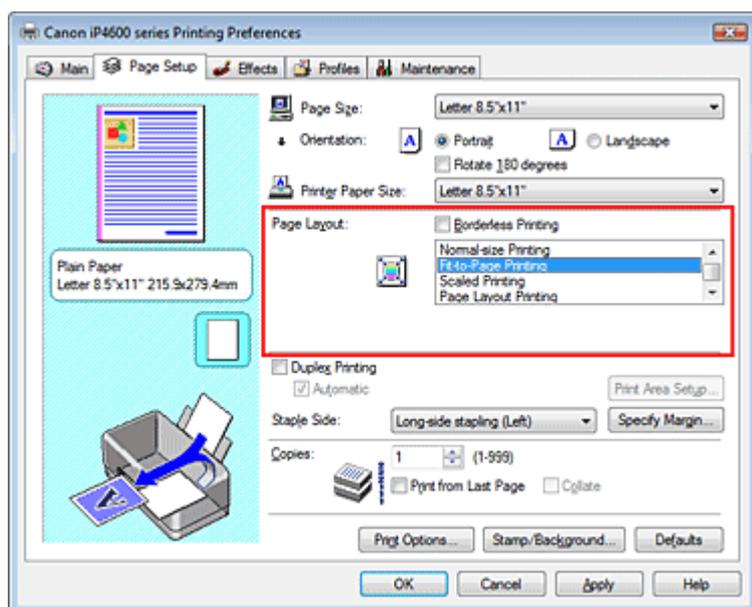


The procedure for printing document, which is enlarged or reduced to fit to the page size, is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set fit-to-page printing

Select Fit-to-Page Printing from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.



3. Select the paper size for the data

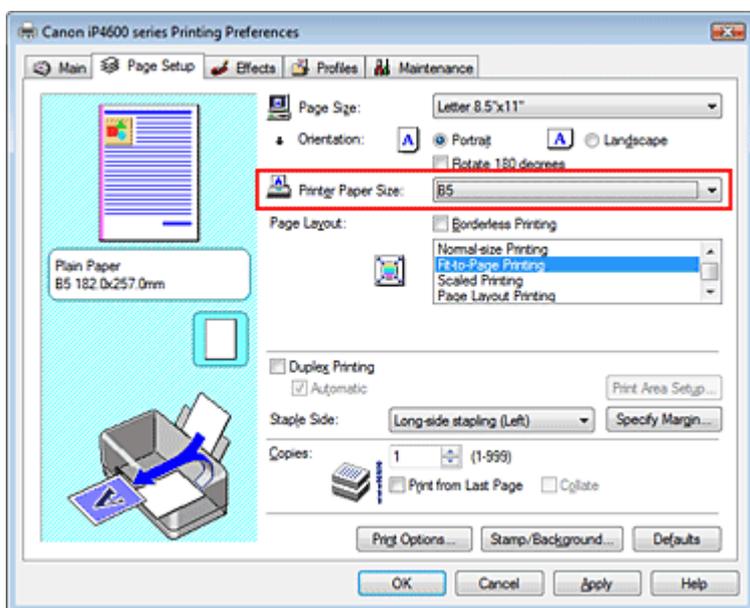
Using Page Size, select the page size that was set with your application.

4. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the printer from the Printer Paper Size list.

If the printer paper size is smaller than the Page Size, the page image will be reduced. If the printer paper size is larger than the page size, the page image will be enlarged.

The current settings are displayed in the Settings Preview on the left side of the printer driver.



5. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the document will be enlarged or reduced to fit to the page size.

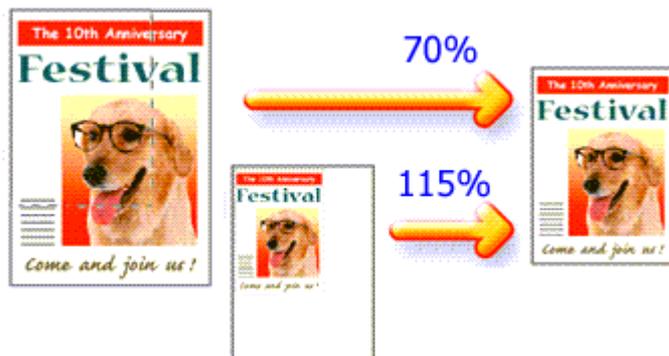
Important

- When Borderless Printing check box is checked, Fit-to-Page Printing cannot be selected.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Scaled Printing

Scaled Printing

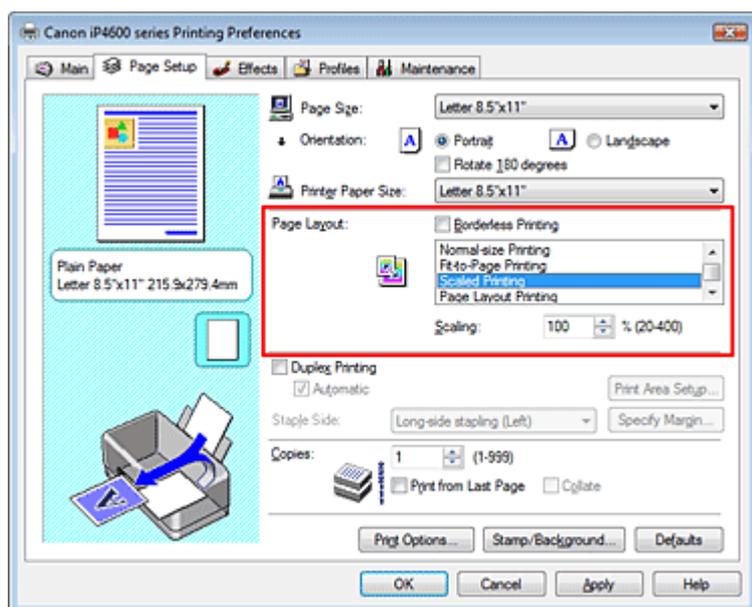


The procedure for printing a document with pages enlarged or reduced is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set scaled printing

Select Scaled Printing from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.



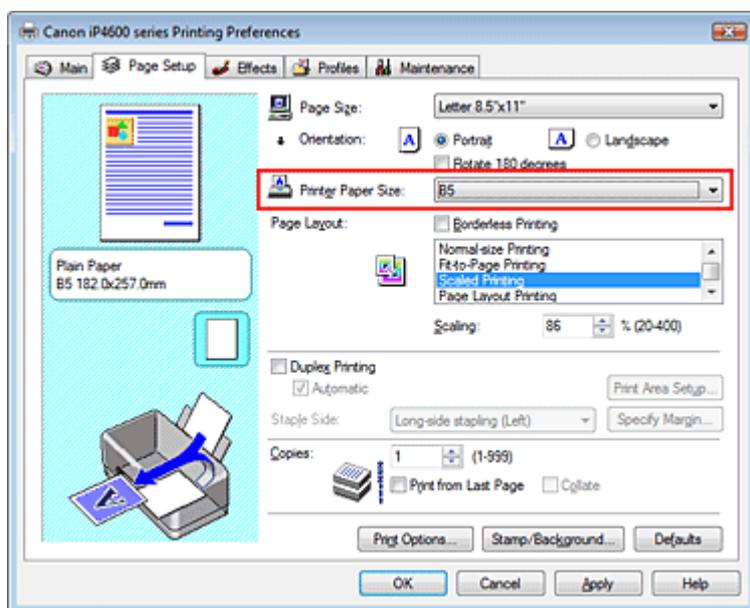
3. Select the paper size for the data

Using Page Size, select the page size that was set with your application.

4. Set the scaling rate by using one of the following methods:

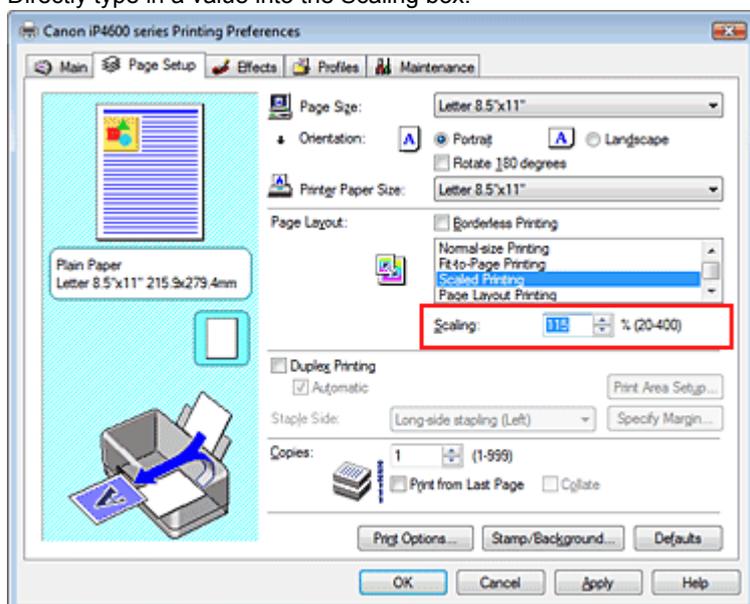
- **Select a Printer Paper Size**

Select a printer paper size, which is different from the Page Size, from the Printer Paper Size list. If the printer paper size is smaller than the Page Size, the page image will be reduced. If the printer paper size is larger than the page size, the page image will be enlarged.



- **Specify a scaling factor**

Directly type in a value into the Scaling box.



The current settings are displayed in the Settings Preview on the left side of the printer driver.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the document will be printed with the specified scale.

Important

- If the application software with which you created the original has the scaled printing function, configure the settings on your application software. You do not need to also configure the same setting in the printer driver.
- When Scaled Printing is selected, the Staple Side list box appears grayed out and is unavailable (when Duplex Printing is not selected).
- When Borderless Printing check box is checked, Scaled Printing cannot be selected.

Note

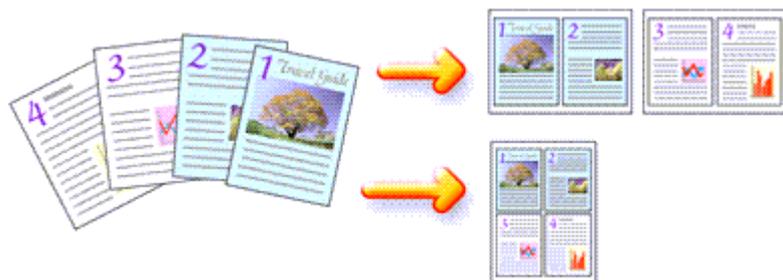
- Selecting Scaled Printing changes the printable area.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Page Layout Printing

Page Layout Printing

The page layout printing function allows you to print more than one page image on a single sheet of paper.

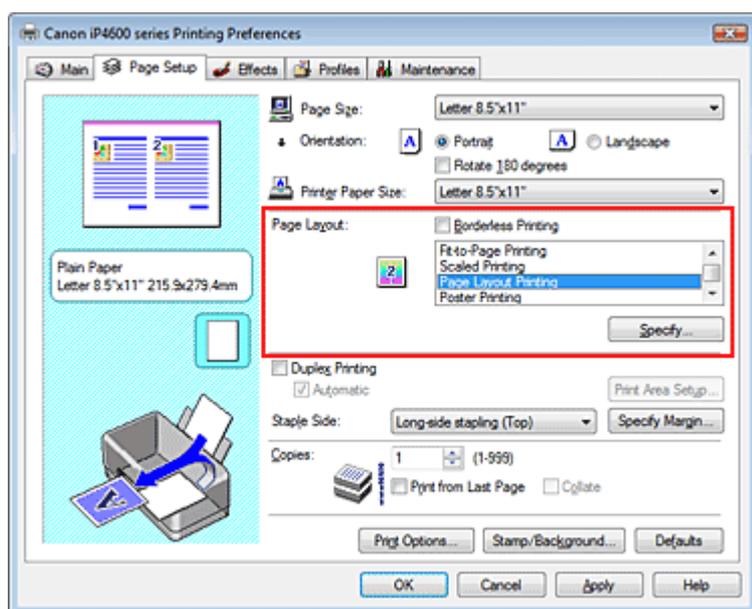


The procedure for performing page layout printing is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set page layout printing

Select Page Layout Printing from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.

The current settings are displayed in the Settings Preview on the left side of the printer driver.



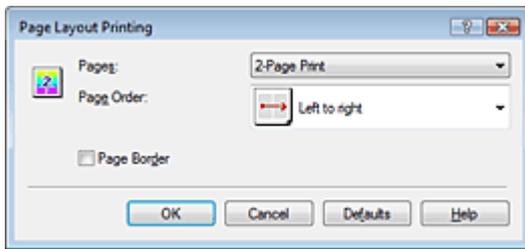
3. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the printer from the Printer Paper Size list.

Now you have finished setting the layout of the document from left to right.

4. Set the number of pages to be printed on one sheet and the page sequence

If necessary, click Specify..., specify the following settings in the Page Layout Printing dialog box, and click OK.

**Pages**

To increase the number of pages to be included on a single sheet of paper, select a desired number of pages from the list.

Page Order

To change the page arrangement order, select an icon from the list to change the page placement order.

Page Border

To print a page border around each document page, check this check box.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the specified number of pages will be arranged on each sheet of paper in the specified order.

Important

- When Borderless Printing check box is checked, Page Layout Printing cannot be selected.

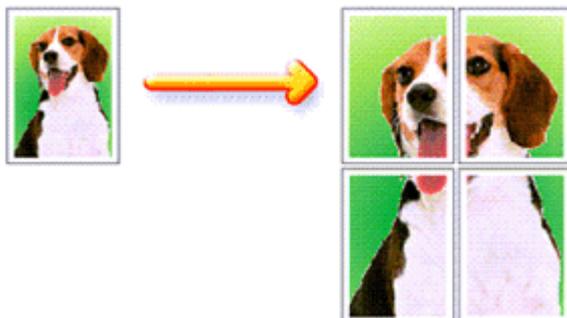
[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Poster Printing

Poster Printing

The poster printing function allows you to enlarge image data, divide it into several pages, and print these pages on separate sheets of paper. When the pages are pasted together, they form a large print like a poster.



The procedure for performing poster printing is as follows:

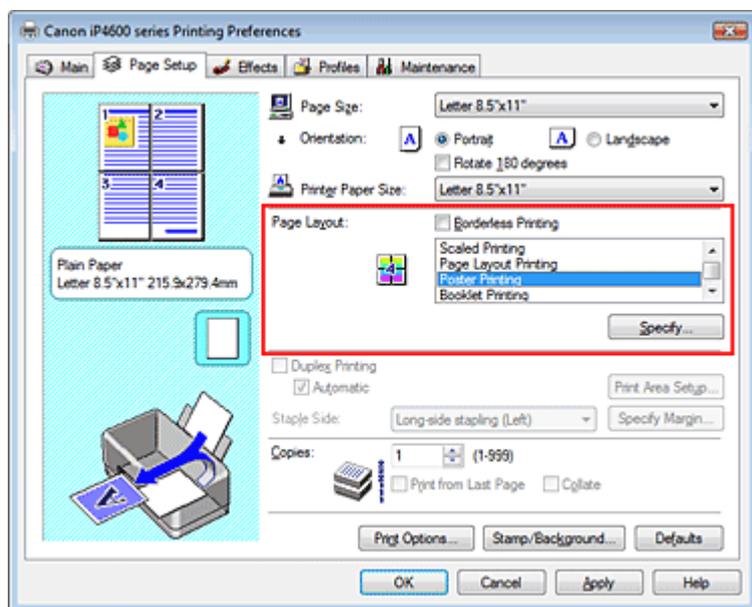
Setting Poster Printing

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set poster printing

Select Poster Printing from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.

The current settings are displayed in the Settings Preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the printer from the Printer Paper Size list. Now you have finished setting 2 by 2-page poster printing.

4. Set the number of image divisions and the pages to be printed.

If necessary, click Specify..., specify the following settings in the Poster Printing dialog box, and then click OK.

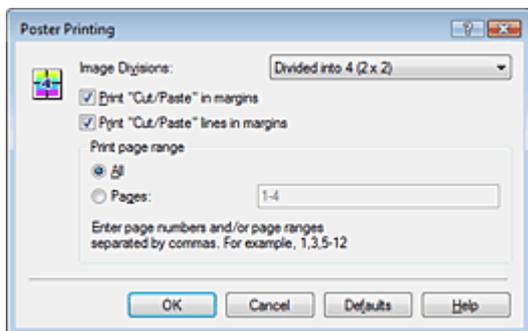


Image Divisions

Select the number of divisions (vertical x horizontal) from the Image Divisions list. As the number of divisions increases, the number of sheets used for printing increases, allowing you to create a larger poster.

Print "Cut/Paste" in margins

To leave out words "Cut" and "Paste", uncheck this check box.



Important

- This feature is unavailable when the 64-bit printer driver is used.

Print "Cut/Paste" lines in margins

To leave out cut lines, uncheck this check box.

Pages

To reprint only specific pages, enter the page number you want to print. To print multiple pages, specify by separating the pages with commas or entering a hyphen between the page numbers.



Note

- You can also specify the print range by clicking the pages in the setup preview.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the document will be divided into several pages during printing.

After all poster pages have been printed, paste the pages together to create a poster.

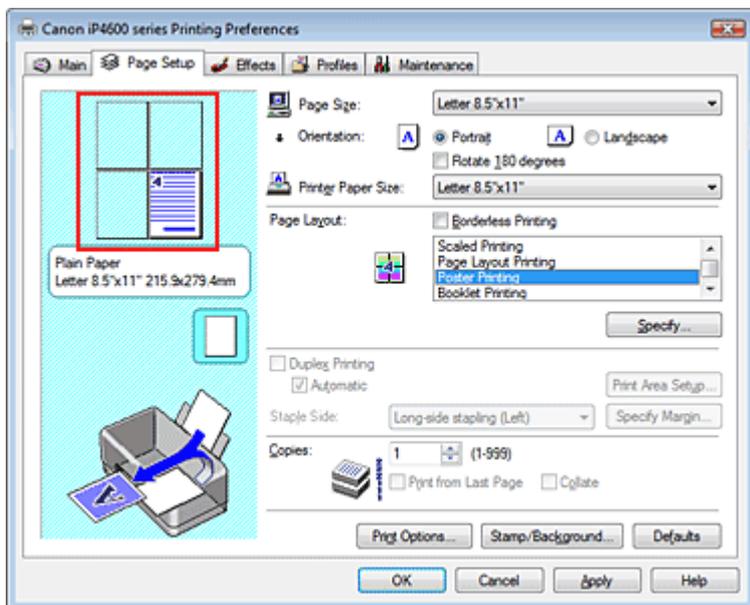
Printing Only Specific Pages

If ink becomes faint or runs out during printing, you can print the pages you still need, by following the procedure below:

1. Set the print range

In the Settings Preview on the left of the Page Setup tab, click the pages that do not need to be printed.

The pages that were clicked are deleted, and only the pages to be printed are displayed.



Note

- Click the deleted pages to display them again.
- Right-click the Settings Preview to select Print all pages or Delete all pages.

2. Complete the setup

After completing the page selection, click OK.

When you execute print, only specified pages will be printed.

Important

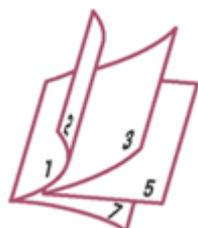
- When Poster Printing is selected, the Duplex Printing and Print from Last Page check boxes and the Staple Side list box appear grayed out and are unavailable.
- When Borderless Printing check box is checked, Poster Printing cannot be selected.
- Since poster printing enlarges the document when printing it, the print results may become coarse.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Booklet Printing

Booklet Printing

The booklet printing function allows you to print data for a booklet. Data is printed on both sides of the paper. This type of printing ensures that pages can be collated properly, in page number order, when the printed sheets are folded and stapled at the center.

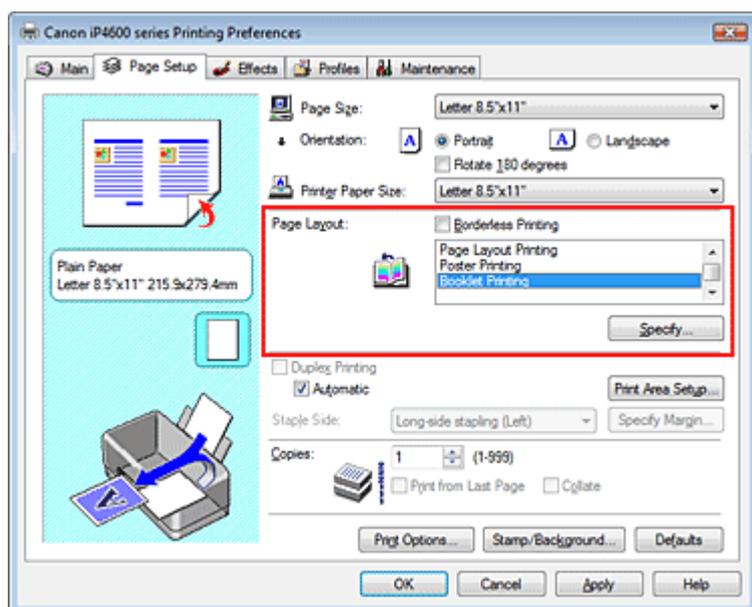


The procedure for performing booklet printing is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window
2. Set booklet printing

Select Booklet Printing from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.

The current settings are displayed in the Settings Preview on the left side of the window.

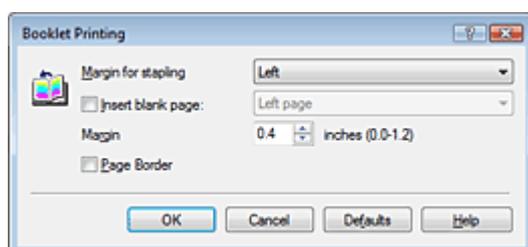


3. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the printer from the Printer Paper Size list.

4. Set the margin for stapling and the margin width

Click Specify..., specify the following settings in the Booklet Printing dialog box, and then click OK.



Margin for stapling

Select which side the stapling margin should be on when the booklet is completed.

Insert blank page

To leave one side of a sheet blank, check Insert blank page check box, and select the page to be left blank.

Margin

Enter the margin width. The specified width from the center of the sheet becomes the margin for one page.

Page Border

To print a page border around each document page, check the Page Border check box.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the document is automatically printed first on one side of a sheet of paper and then on the opposite side.

When the printing is complete, fold the paper at the center of the margin and make a booklet.

 **Important**

- Booklet Printing is unavailable when:
 - A media type other than Plain Paper or Hagaki is selected from the Media Type list.
 - Borderless Printing check box is checked.
- When Booklet Printing is selected, Duplex Printing, Staple Side, Print from Last Page, and Collate appear grayed out and are unavailable.

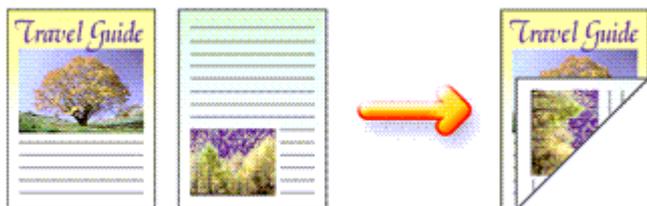
 **Note**

- The stamp and background are not printed on blank sheets inserted with the Insert blank page function of Booklet Printing.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Duplex Printing

Duplex Printing



The procedure for printing data on both sides of a sheet of paper is as follows:

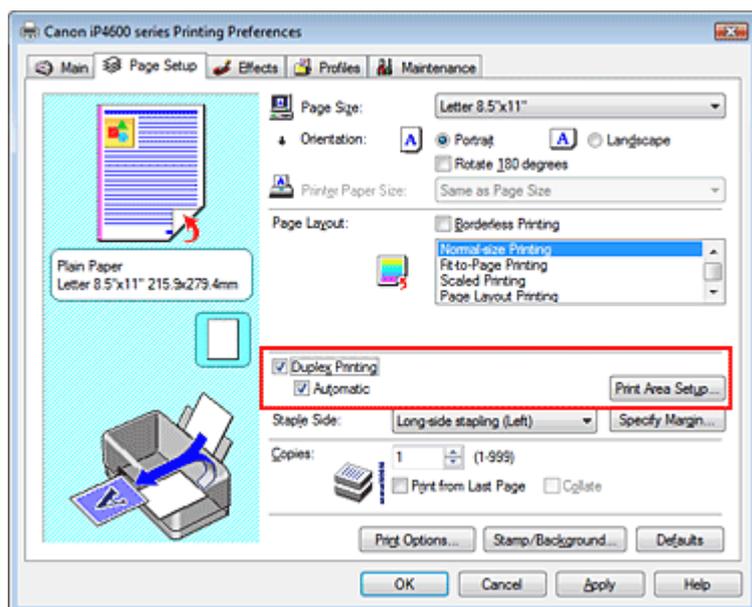
Performing automatic duplex printing

You can perform the duplex printing without having to turn over the paper.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set automatic duplex printing

Check the Duplex Printing check box and confirm that Automatic is checked on the Page Setup tab.



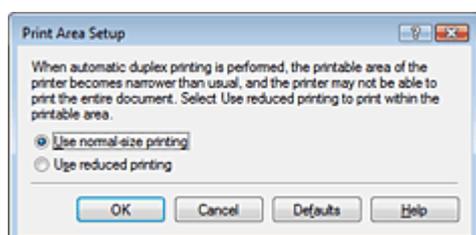
3. Select the layout

Select Normal-size Printing (or Fit-to-Page Printing, Scaled Printing or Page Layout Printing) from the Page Layout list.

4. Set the print area

When you perform duplex printing, the print area of the document becomes slightly narrower than usual and the document may not fit on one page.

Click Print Area Setup..., and select one of the following processing methods.



Use normal-size printing

Print without reducing the page.

Use reduced printing

Reduce the page slightly during printing.

5. Specify the side to be stapled

The printer analyzes the Orientation and Page Layout settings, and automatically selects the best Staple Side. If you want to change the setting, select another value from the list.

6. Set the margin width

If necessary, click Specify Margin... and set the width of the stapling margin, and then click OK.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

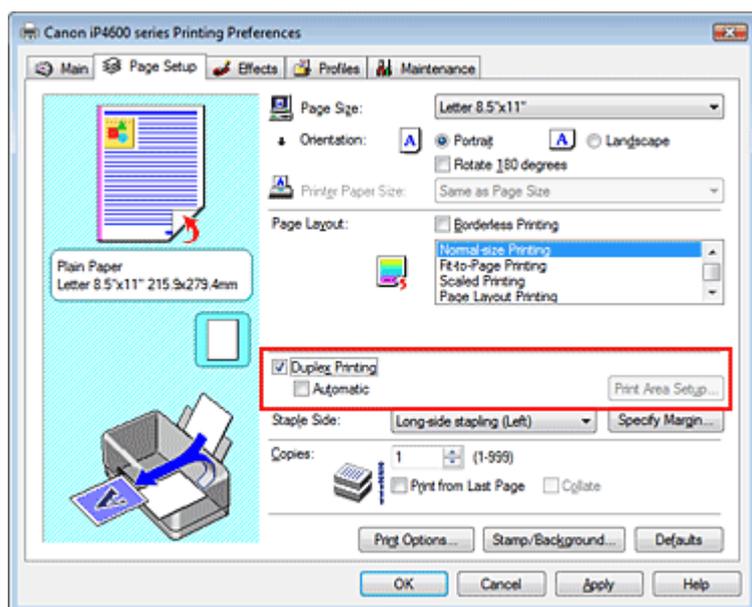
Duplex printing will be started.

Performing duplex printing manually

You can perform the duplex printing manually.

1. Open the printer driver setup window**2. Set duplex printing**

Check the Duplex Printing check box and uncheck the Automatic check box on the Page Setup tab.

**3. Select the layout**

Select Normal-size Printing (or Fit-to-Page Printing, Scaled Printing or Page Layout Printing) from the Page Layout list.

4. Specify the side to be stapled

The printer analyzes the Orientation and Page Layout settings, and automatically selects the best Staple Side. If you want to change the setting, select another value from the list.

5. Set the margin width

If necessary, click Specify Margin... and set the width of the stapling margin, and then click OK.

6. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the document will be printed on one side of a sheet of paper. When the

printing of one side is complete, set the paper correctly by following the message and click OK. The document will be printed on the opposite side.

Important

- Duplex Printing is unavailable when:
 - A media type other than Plain Paper or Hagaki is selected from the Media Type list.
 - Poster Printing is selected from the Page Layout list.
- When Booklet Printing is selected from the Page Layout list, Duplex Printing and Staple Side appear grayed out and are unavailable.
- After printing the front page, there is an ink drying wait time before starting to print the back page (Operation stops temporarily). Do not touch the paper during the time. You can change the ink drying wait time at Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab.
- When you perform the automatic duplex printing for Hagaki, print an address first and then print your message.

Note

- If the Media Type dialog box appears when performing borderless printing during duplex printing, select Plain Paper.
- When performing the automatic duplex printing, do not use any plain paper smaller than A5. Also, do not select any type of paper other than Plain Paper or Hagaki at Media Type.
- If the back side of the paper becomes smudged during duplex printing, perform Bottom Plate Cleaning in the Maintenance tab.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Stamp/Background Printing

Stamp/Background Printing

This feature is unavailable when the 64-bit printer driver is used.

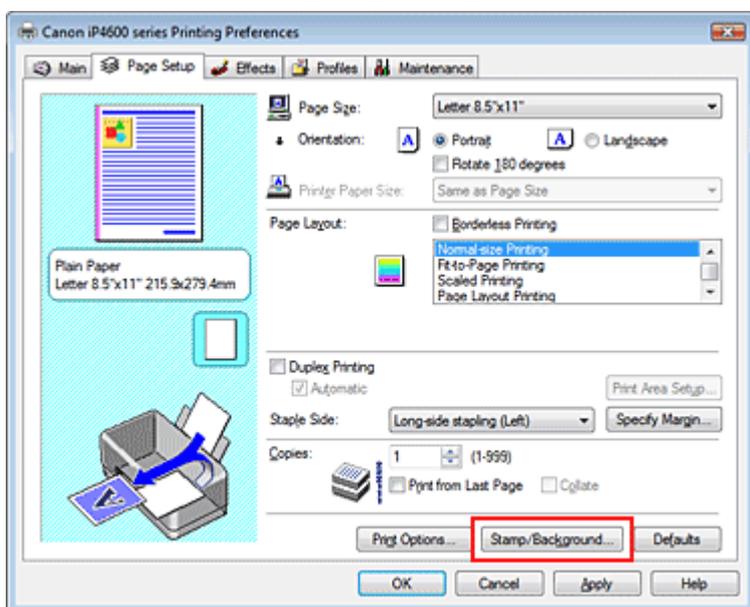
The Stamp function allows you to print a stamp text or a bitmap over or behind document data. The Background function allows you to print a light illustration behind the document data.

The procedure for performing stamp/background printing is as follows:

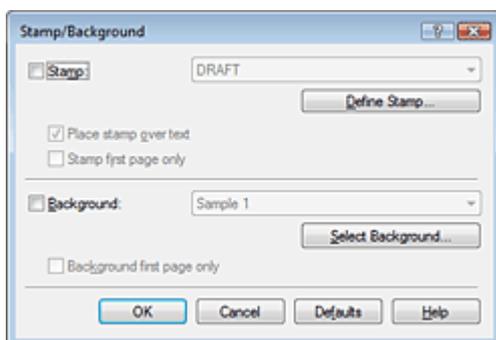
Printing a stamp

"CONFIDENTIAL," "IMPORTANT," and other stamps that are used often in companies are pre-registered.

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Click Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab



The Stamp/Background dialog box opens.



3. Select a stamp

Check the Stamp check box, and select a desired stamp from the list.

The current settings are displayed in the Settings Preview on the left side of the Page Setup tab.

4. Set the stamp details

If necessary, complete the following settings, and then click OK.

Place stamp over text

To print the stamp on the front of the document, check this check box.

**Note**

- The stamp is given priority because the stamp is printed over the document data in the sections where the stamp and the document data overlap. If the Place stamp over text check box is unchecked, the stamp is printed behind the document data and may be hidden in the overlapping sections depending on the application used.

Stamp first page only

To print the stamp only on the first page, check this check box.

Define Stamp... button

To change the stamp text, bitmap, or position, click this (refer to Saving a Stamp Setting).

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified stamp.

Printing a background**1. Select the background for which the settings are to be changed**

Two bitmap files are pre-registered as samples.

2. Click Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab

The Stamp/Background dialog box opens.

3. Select the background

Check the Background check box, and select a desired background from the list.

The current settings are displayed in the Settings Preview on the left side of the Page Setup tab.

4. Set the background details

If necessary, complete the following settings, and then click OK.

Background first page only

To print the background only on the first page, check this check box.

Select Background... button

To use another bitmap file or change the layout or density of a background, click this (refer to [Saving Image Data to be Used as a Background](#)).

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified background.

**Important**

- When the Borderless Printing check box is checked, the Stamp/Background... button appears grayed out and is unavailable.

**Note**

- The stamp and background are not printed on blank sheets inserted with the Insert blank page function of Booklet Printing.

Related Topics

➔ [Saving a Stamp Setting](#)

➔ [Saving Image Data to be Used as a Background](#)



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Stamp/Background Printing > Saving a Stamp Setting

Saving a Stamp Setting

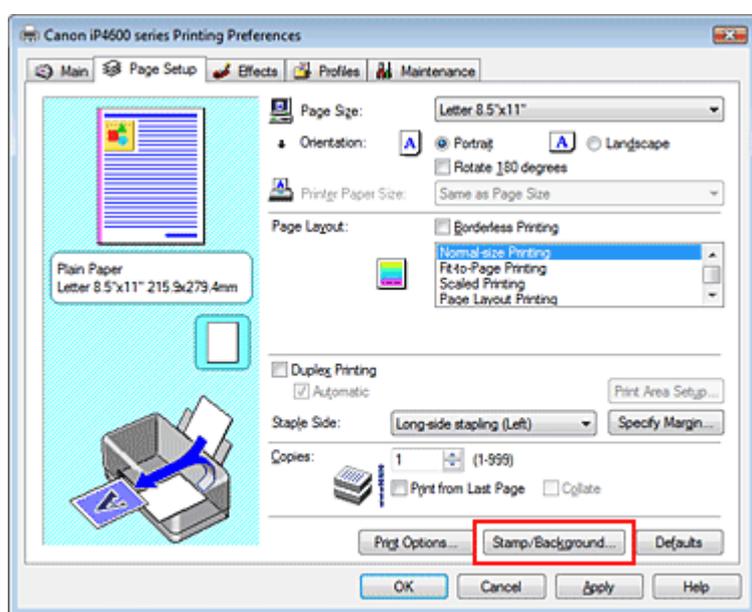
This feature is unavailable when the 64-bit printer driver is used.

You can create and save a new stamp. You can also change and register some of the settings of an existing stamp. Unnecessary stamps can be deleted at any time.

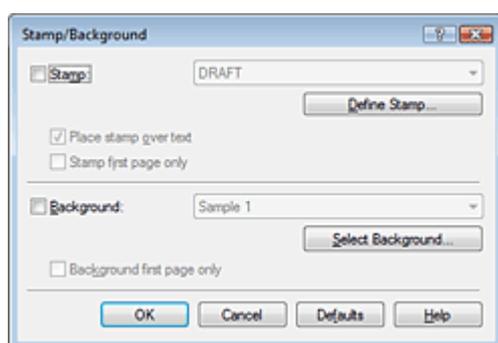
The procedure for registering a new stamp is as follows:

Registering a new stamp

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Click Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab

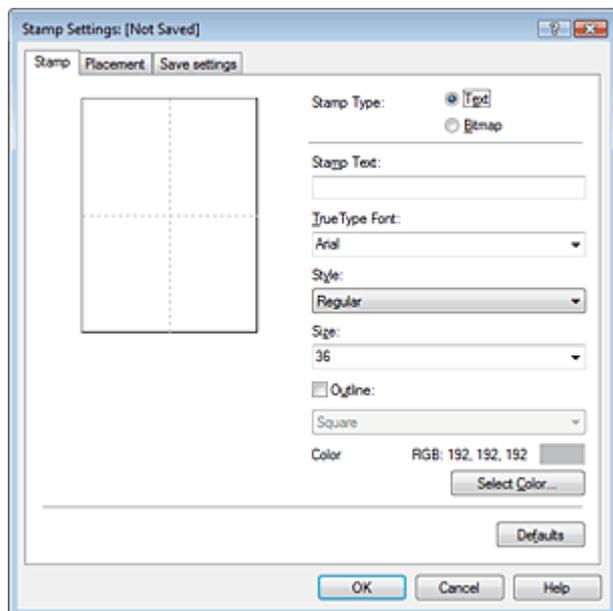


The Stamp/Background dialog box opens.



3. Click Define Stamp...

The Stamp Settings dialog box opens.



4. Configure the stamp while viewing the preview window

- **Stamp tab**

Select Text or Bitmap with Stamp Type.

When registering a text, the characters must already be entered in Stamp Text. Change the True Type Font, Style, Size, and Outline settings, as necessary. You can select the color of the stamp by clicking Select Color...

For Bitmap, click Select File... and select the bitmap file (.bmp) to be used. Change the settings of the Size and Transparent white area if necessary.

- **Placement tab**

Select the stamp position from the Position list. You can also select Custom from the Position list and specify coordinates for X-Position and Y-Position.

You can also change the stamp position by dragging the stamp in the preview window.

To change the stamp position angle, type a value in the Orientation box directly.

5. Save the stamp

Click the Save settings tab and enter a new stamp title in the Title box, and then click Save.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

6. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.

The registered title appears in the Stamp list.

Changing and registering some of stamp settings

1. Select the stamp for which the settings are to be changed

Check the Stamp check box in the Stamp/Background dialog box, and then select the title of the stamp to be changed from the Stamp list.

2. Click Define Stamp...

The Stamp Settings dialog box opens.

3. Configure the stamp while viewing the preview window

4. Save the stamp

Click Save overwrite on the Save settings tab.

If you want to save the stamp with a different title, type a new title in the Title box and click Save.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.
The registered title appears in the Stamp list.

Deleting an unnecessary stamp

1. Click Define Stamp... in the Stamp/Background dialog box

The Stamp Settings dialog box opens.

2. Select the stamp to be deleted

Select the title of the stamp you want to delete from the Stamps list on the Save settings tab. Then click Delete.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.



[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Stamp/Background Printing > Saving Image Data to be Used as a Background

Saving Image Data to be Used as a Background

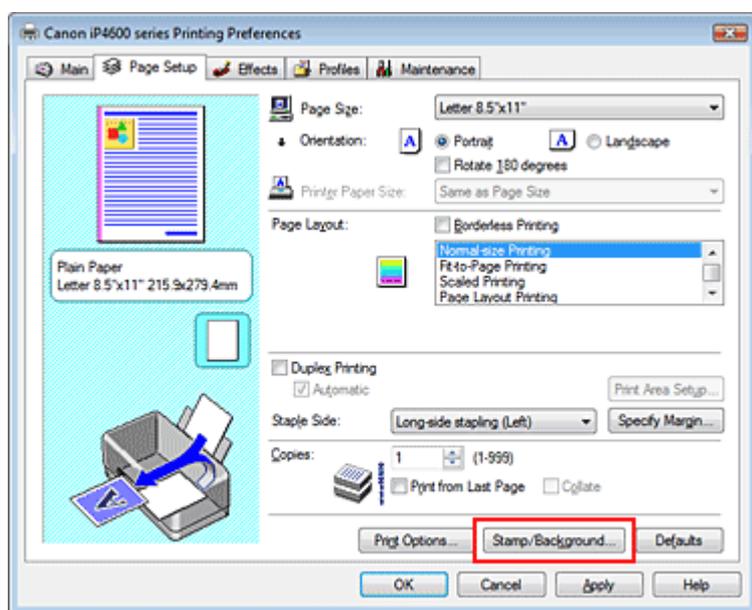
This feature is unavailable when the 64-bit printer driver is used.

You can select a bitmap file and save it as a new background. You can also change and register some of the settings of an existing background. An unnecessary background can be deleted at any time.

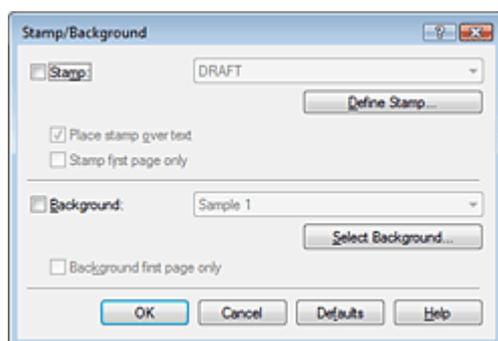
The procedure for registering image data to be used as a background is as follows:

Registering image data to be used as a background

1. Open the printer driver setup window
2. Click Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab

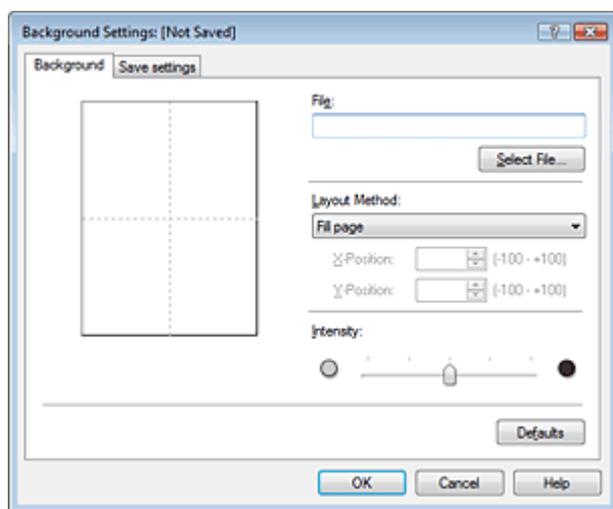


The Stamp/Background dialog box opens.



3. Click Select Background...

The Background Settings dialog box opens.



4. Select the image data to be registered to the background

Click Select File.... Select the target image data (bitmap file), and then click Open.

5. Specify the following settings while viewing the preview window

Layout Method

Select how the background image data is to be placed.

When Custom is selected, you can set coordinates for X-Position and Y-Position.

You can also change the background position by dragging the image in the preview window.

Intensity

Set the intensity of the background image data with the Intensity slider. To lighten the background, move the slider to the left. To darken the background, move the slider to the right. To print the background at the original bitmap intensity, move the slider to the rightmost position.

6. Save the background

Click the Save settings tab and enter a new stamp title in the Title box, and then click Save.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.

The registered title appears in the Background list.

Changing and saving some background settings

1. Select the background for which the settings are to be changed

Check the Background check box in the Stamp/Background dialog box, and then select the title of the background you want to change from the Background list.

2. Click Select Background...

The Background Settings dialog box opens.

3. While viewing the preview, set the items on the Background tab

4. Save the background

Click Save overwrite on the Save settings tab. If you want to save the background with a different title, type a new title in the Title box and click Save.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.

The registered title appears in the Background list.

Deleting an unnecessary background

1. Click Select Background... in the Stamp/Background dialog box

The Background Settings dialog box opens.

2. Select the background to be deleted

Select the title of the background you want to delete from the Backgrounds list on the Save settings tab, and then click Delete.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.



[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Printing an Envelope

Printing an Envelope

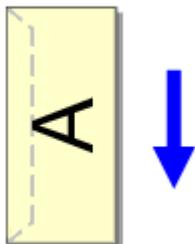
For details on how to load an envelope into the machine, refer to the "Loading Envelopes" in the manual: Basic Guide.

The procedure for performing envelope printing is as follows:

1. Load an envelop into the printer

Fold down the envelope flap.

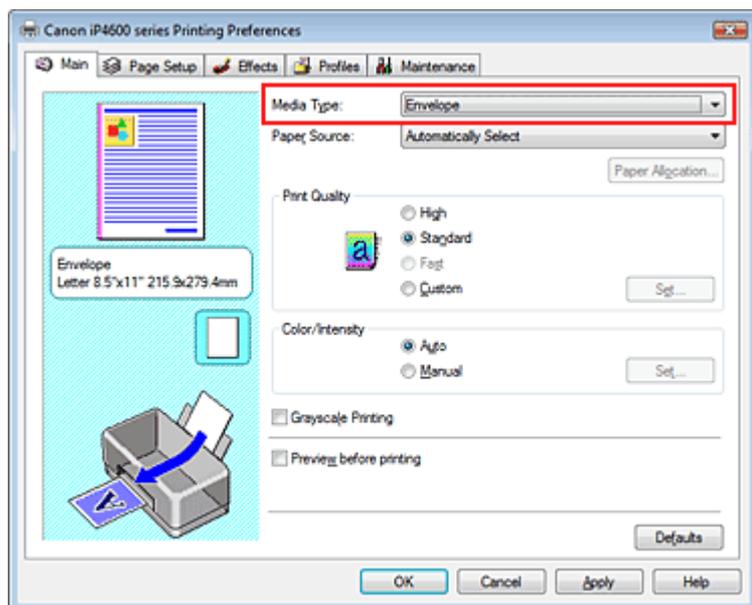
Orient the envelope so that the flap is on the left and the folded surface is facing down.



2. Open the printer driver setup window

3. Select the media type

Select Envelope from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



4. Select the paper size

Click the Page Setup tab, and select Youkei 4, Youkei 6, Comm.Env. #10, or DL Env. for Page Size.

5. Select the landscape for orientation

To print the addressee horizontally, select Landscape for Orientation.

6. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the information is printed on the envelope.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose

Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose

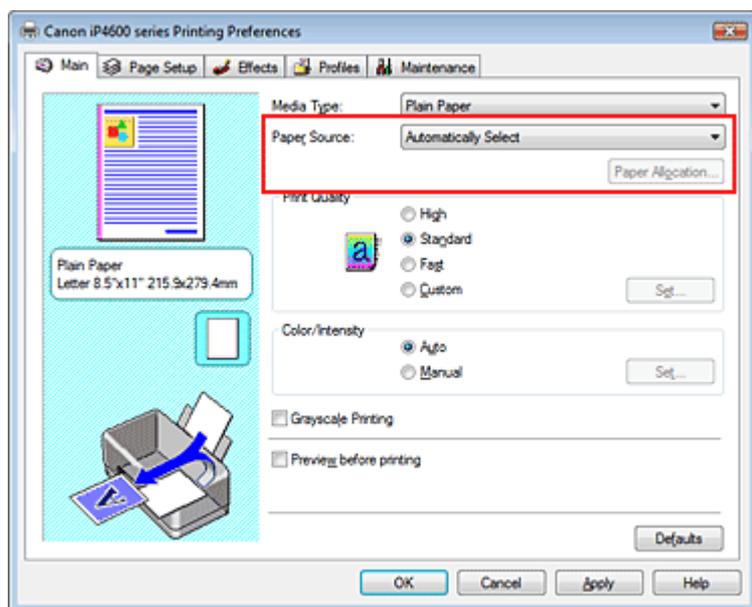
In this printer, there are two paper sources, a rear tray and a cassette.

You can facilitate printing by selecting a paper source setting that matches your print conditions or purpose.

The procedure for setting paper source is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Select the paper source

From the Paper Source list on the Main tab, select the paper source that matches your purpose.



Automatically Select

Plain paper whose Page Size is Letter 8.5"x11", A5, A4, or B5 is fed from the cassette. Other sizes of plain paper and paper types other than plain paper are fed from the rear tray.

Rear Tray

Paper is always fed from the rear tray.

Cassette

Paper is always fed from the cassette.

Important

- Plain paper that is not Letter 8.5"x11", A5, A4, or B5 and paper types other than plain paper cannot be fed from the cassette.

Continuous Autofeed

If plain paper runs out in the specified paper source, the printer automatically switches the paper source.

When printing a large volume of data, load plain paper of the same size in both paper sources. You can therefore reduce the trouble of having to load paper because the printer automatically switches the paper source when paper runs out in one paper source.

Important

- Continuous Autofeed is unavailable when paper other than Plain Paper is selected for Media Type.
- Since the printer feeds paper from the paper source that was being used the last time Continuous Autofeed was selected and printing ended, load the same paper in both the rear tray and the cassette.

Paper Allocation

If the media type for the print data is plain paper and the paper size matches the paper allocation setting, the printer automatically feeds paper from the cassette. If not, the printer feeds paper from the rear tray.

To change the paper allocation settings, click Paper Allocation..., specify the Paper Size to be loaded in the cassette, and then click OK.

If you load frequently used plain paper in the cassette, the printer feeds paper from the rear tray when the print data uses a different type of paper. You can therefore reduce the trouble of having to load different paper.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the printer uses the specified paper source to print the data.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Displaying the Print Results before Printing

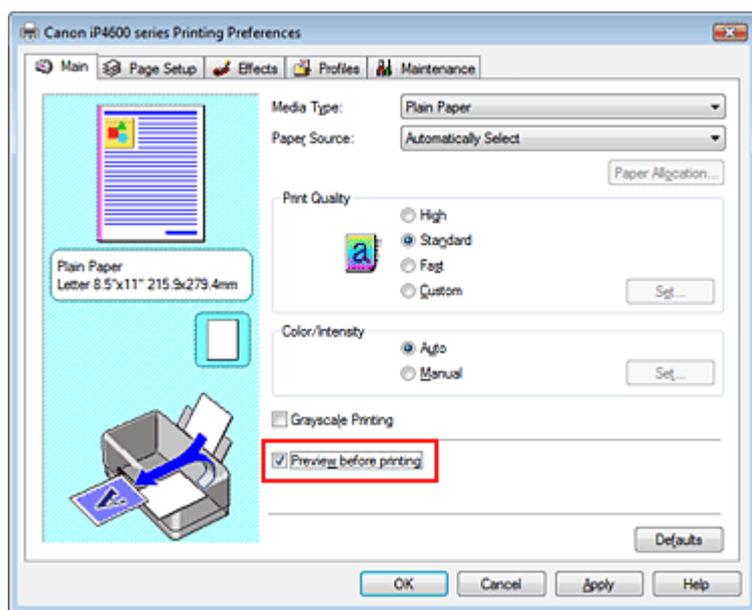
Displaying the Print Results before Printing

You can display and check the print result before printing.

The procedure for displaying the print result before printing is as follows:

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Set the preview

Check the Preview before printing check box on the Main tab.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

The Canon IJ Preview will start and the print result will be displayed before printing.

Related Topic

➔ [Canon IJ Preview](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)

Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)

You can specify the height and width of paper if its size cannot be selected in Page Size. Such a paper size is called a custom size.

The procedure for specifying a custom size is as follows:

1. Set the custom size in the application software

On your application's paper size feature, specify your custom size.

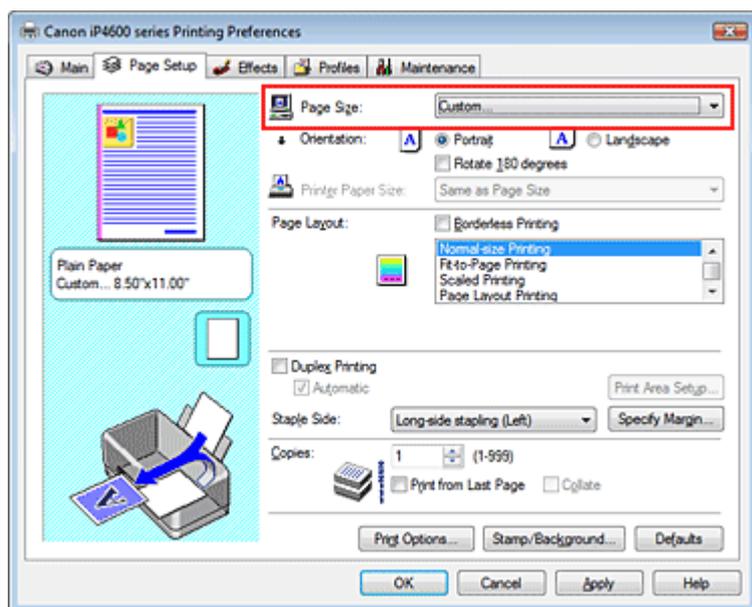
Important

- If the application software that created the document has a function for specifying the height and width values, use the application software to set the values. If the application software does not have such a function or if the document does not print correctly, use the printer driver to set the values.

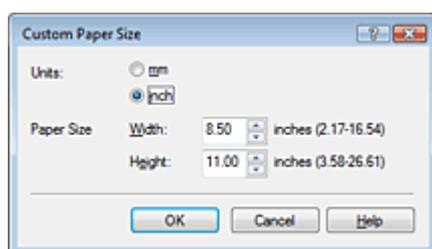
2. Open the printer driver setup window

3. Select the paper size

Select Custom... for Page Size on the Page Setup tab.



The Custom Paper Size dialog box opens.



4. Set the custom size in the application software

Specify Units, and enter the Width and Height of the paper to be used. Then click OK.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified paper size.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data

Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data

- ➔ Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- ➔ Printing a Color Document in Monochrome
- ➔ Specifying Color Correction
- ➔ Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data
- ➔ Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver
- ➔ Printing with ICC Profiles
- ➔ Adjusting Color Balance
- ➔ Adjusting Brightness
- ➔ Adjusting Intensity
- ➔ Adjusting Contrast
- ➔ Simulating an Illustration
- ➔ Representing Image Data with a Single Color
- ➔ Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors
- ➔ Smoothing Jagged Outlines
- ➔ Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration
- ➔ Reducing Photo Noise

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method

Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method

You can set the print quality level and the halftoning method.

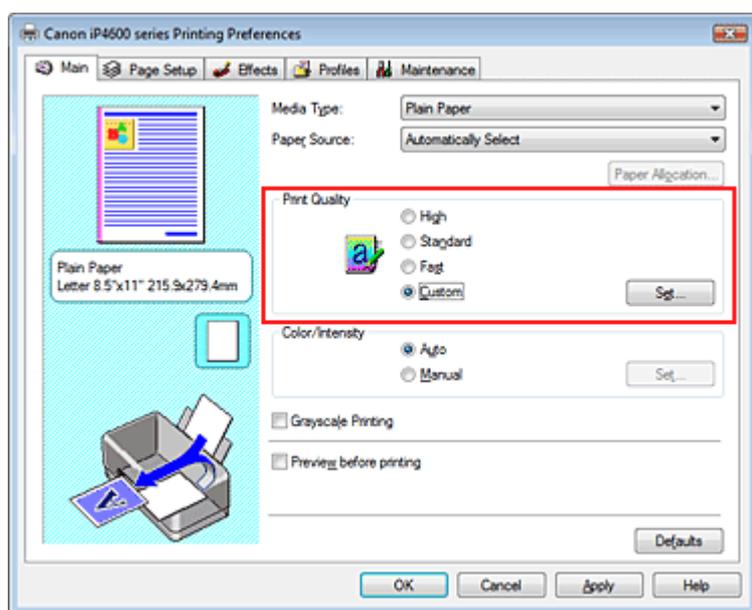


The procedure for setting the print quality level and the halftoning method is as follows:

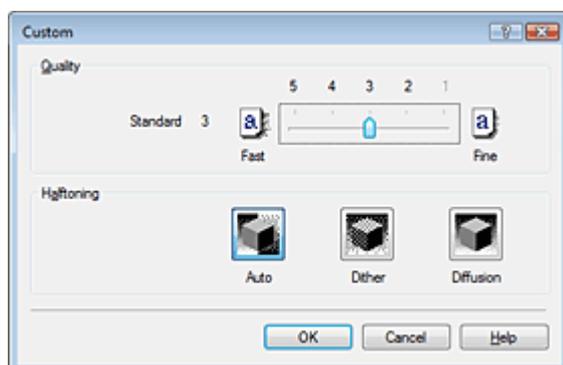
1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the print quality

Select Custom for Print Quality on the Main tab, and click Set...



The Custom dialog box opens.



3. Setting the print quality and halftone expression method

Move the Quality slider to select the quality level.
Select Halftoning and click OK.

- Halftones refer to color shades between the darkest color and the brightest color. The printer replaces the color shades with a collection of small dots to express the halftones. Dither arranges the dots according to fixed rules to express the halftones. Diffusion places the dots randomly to express the halftones. When you select Auto, the data is printed with the optimal halftoning method for the selected print quality.
-

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified quality level and halftoning method.

Important

- Certain print quality levels and halftoning methods cannot be selected depending on the settings of Media Type.

Note

- When the part of the object is not printed, selecting Diffusion for Halftoning may solve the problem.
-

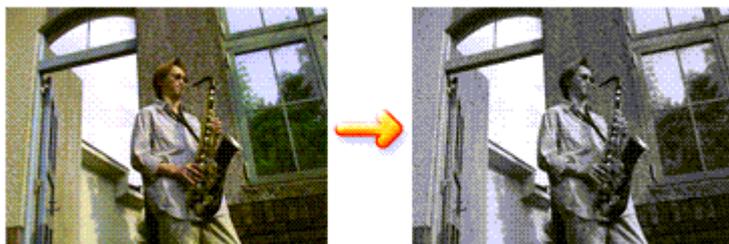
Related Topics

- ➔ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Intensity](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Printing a Color Document in Monochrome

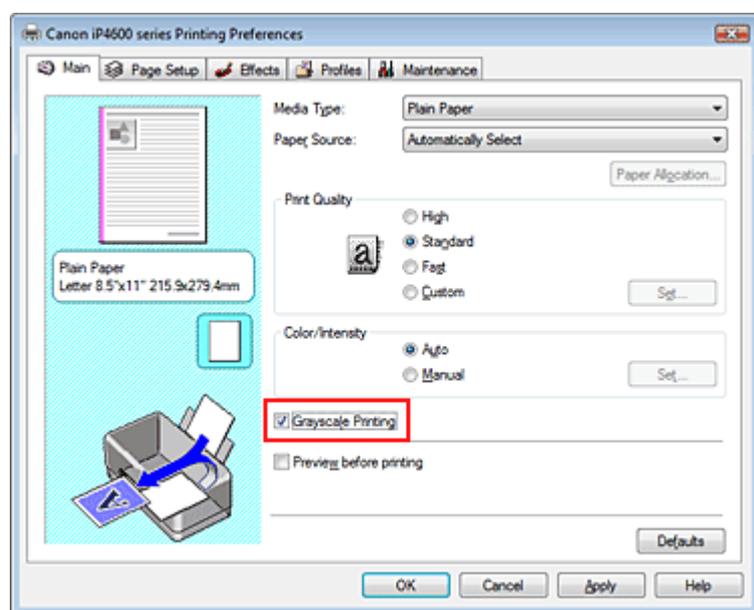
Printing a Color Document in Monochrome



The procedure for printing a color document in monochrome is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set grayscale printing

Check the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the document is converted to grayscale data. It allows you to print the color document in monochrome.

Important

- When the Grayscale Printing check box is checked, the printer driver processes image data as sRGB data. In this case, actual colors printed may differ from those in the original image data. When using the grayscale printing function to print Adobe RGB data, convert the data to sRGB data using an application software.

Note

- During Grayscale Printing, color inks may be used as well as black ink.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Specifying Color Correction

Specifying Color Correction

You can specify the color correction method suited to the type of document to be printed.

Normally, the printer driver adjusts the colors by using Canon Digital Photo Color so that data is printed with color tints that most people prefer. This method is suitable for printing sRGB data.

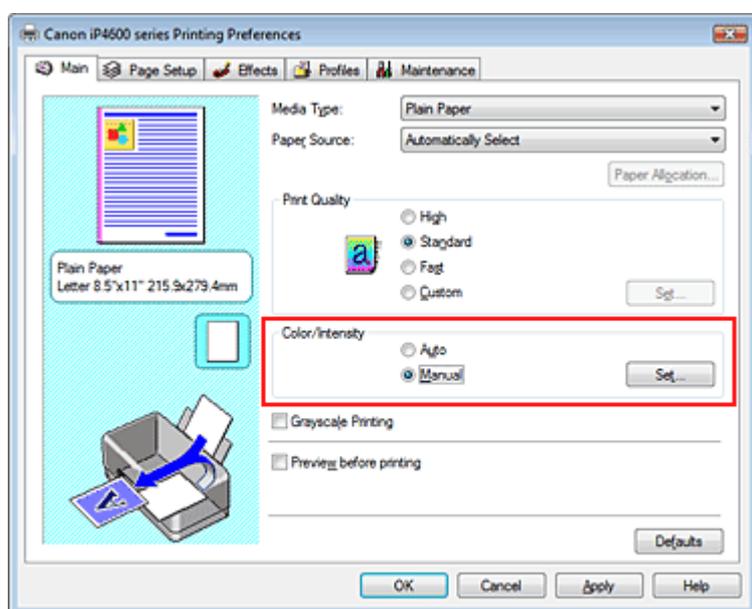
If you want to print by using the color space of sRGB or Adobe RGB data effectively, select ICM. If you want to use an application software to specify an ICC profile, select None.

The procedure for specifying color correction is as follows:

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Select the manual color adjustment

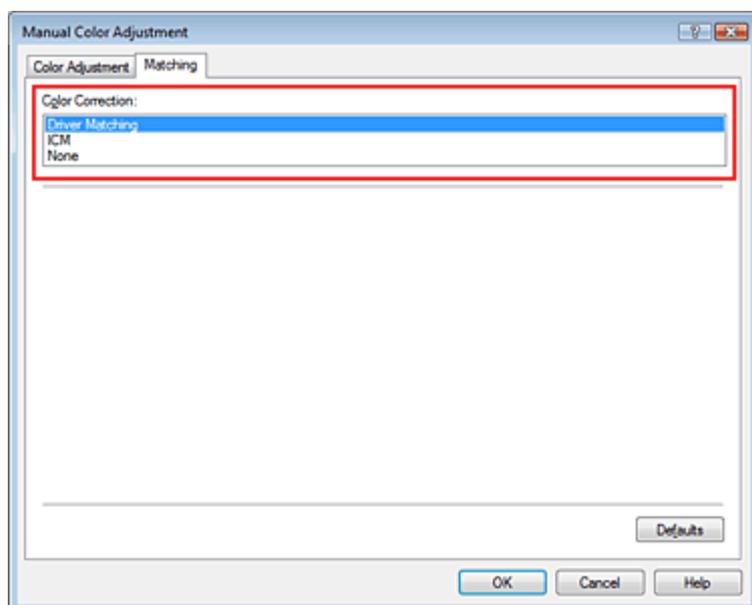
On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....



The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, select Color Correction setting suited to your purpose from the following, and click OK.



Driver Matching

By using Canon Digital Photo Color, you can print sRGB data with color tints that most people prefer. Driver Matching is the default setting for Color Correction.

ICM

You can print by using the color space of sRGB or Adobe RGB data effectively.

None

The printer driver does not perform color adjustment. Select this value if you are specifying an individually created profile or a profile for special Canon paper in an application software to print data.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified color adjustment method.

Important

- If ICM is disabled in the application software, ICM is unavailable for Color Correction and the printer may not be able to print the image data properly.
- When the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab is checked, Color Correction appears grayed out and is unavailable.

Related Topics

- ➔ [Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver](#)
- ➔ [Printing with ICC Profiles](#)



Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#) > [Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data](#) > [Specifying Color Correction](#) > [Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data](#)

Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data

When people print images taken with digital cameras, they sometimes feel that the printed color tones differ from those of actual image or those displayed on the monitor.

To get the print results as close as possible to the desired color tones, you must select a printing method that is best suited to the application software used or to your purpose.

Color Management

Devices such as digital cameras, scanners, monitors, and printers handle color differently. Color management (color matching) is a method that manages device-dependent "colors" as a common color space. For Windows, a color management system called "ICM" is built into the operating system. sRGB and Adobe RGB are popularly used as common color spaces. Adobe RGB has a wider color space than sRGB.

ICC profiles convert device-dependent "colors" into a common color space.

By using an ICC profile and carrying out color management, you can draw out the color space of the image data within the color reproduction area that the printer can express.

Selecting a printing method suited to the image data

The recommended printing method depends on the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the image data or the application software to be used. There are two typical printing methods. Check the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the image data and the application software to be used, and then select the printing method suited to your purpose.

- **To print using Canon Digital Photo Color**

Target data: sRGB data

Printing method: [Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver](#)

- **To print using the color space of the data effectively**

Target data: Adobe RGB data or sRGB data

Application software: An ICC profile can or cannot be specified.

Printing method: [Printing with ICC Profiles](#)



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Specifying Color Correction > Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver

Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver

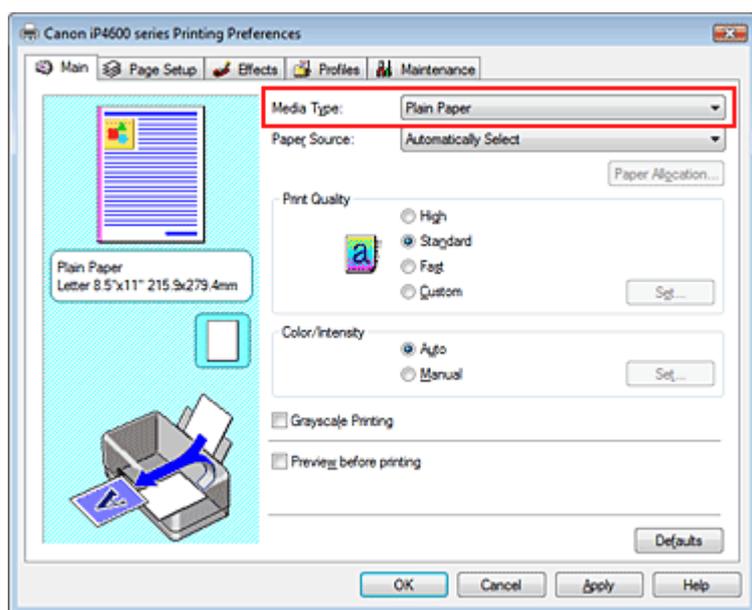
You can specify the color correction function of the printer driver to print sRGB data with color tints that most people prefer (through the use of Canon Digital Photo Color).

The procedure for adjusting colors with the printer driver is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the media type

Select the type of paper loaded in the printer from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



3. Select the print quality

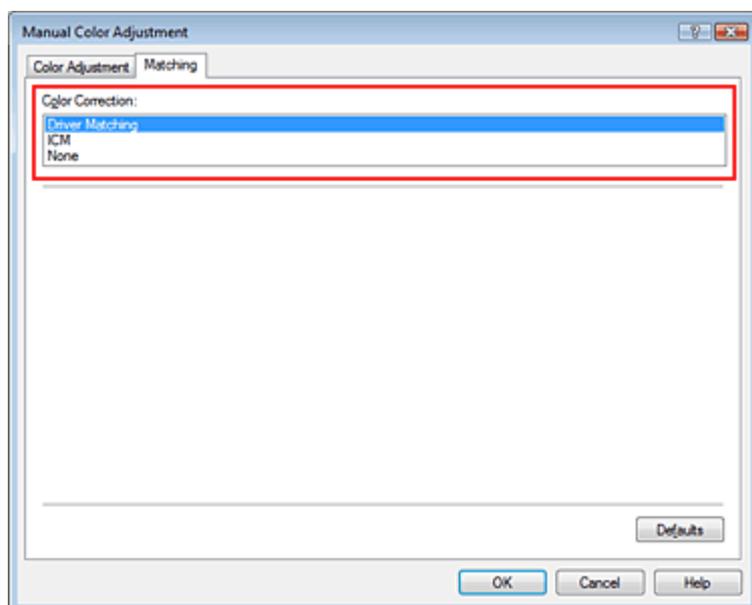
Select High, Standard, or Fast for Print Quality.

4. Select the manual color adjustment

Select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....
The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

5. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, and select Driver Matching for Color Correction.



6. Set the other items

If necessary, click Color Adjustment tab, and adjust the color balance of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and adjust Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast settings, and then click OK.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the printer driver adjusts the colors when printing the data.

Related Topics

- ➔ [Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method](#)
- ➔ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Intensity](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Contrast](#)



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Specifying Color Correction > Printing with ICC Profiles

Printing with ICC Profiles

If the image data has a specified ICC profile, you can effectively use the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the data when printing.

The printer driver setting procedure varies depending on the application software used to print.

Printing image data from the application software that can specify an ICC profile

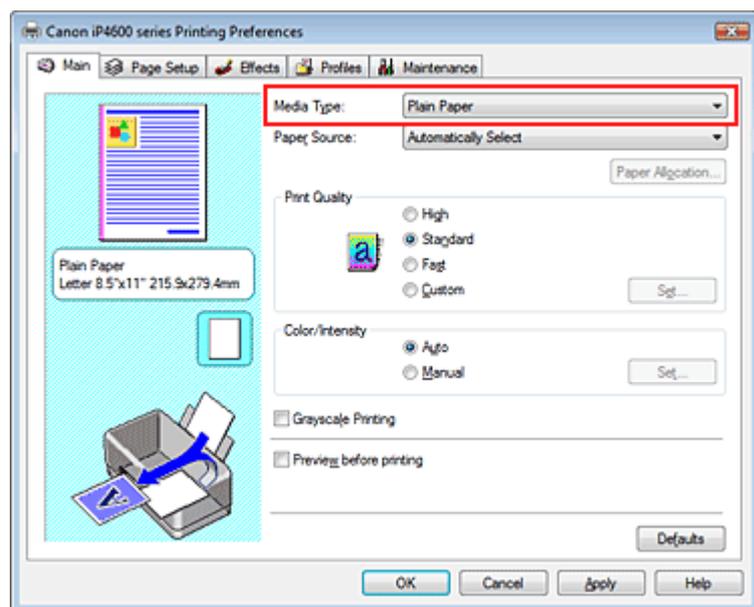
When using Adobe Photoshop, Canon Digital Photo Professional, or any other application software that allows you to specify an ICC profile, you can use the color management system (ICM) found in Windows when printing the data. You can print the editing and touch-up results of an application software by effectively using the color space of the ICC profile specified in the image data.

To use this printing method, you must first use an application software to specify an ICC profile in the image data. For instructions on specifying an ICC profile with an application software program, refer to the manual of the application software you are using.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the media type

Select the type of paper loaded in the printer from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



3. Select the print quality

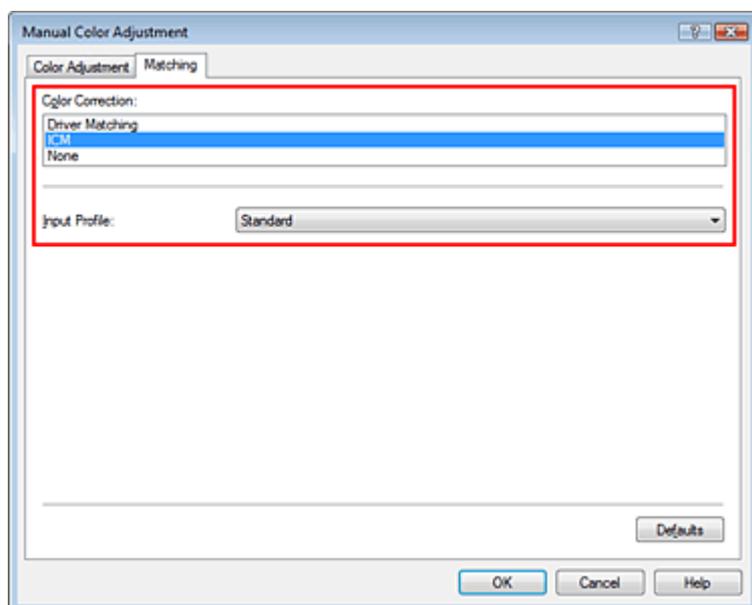
Select High, Standard, or Fast for Print Quality.

4. Select the manual color adjustment

Select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set...
The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

5. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, and select ICM for Color Correction.



6. Set the other items

If necessary, click Color Adjustment tab, and adjust the color balance of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and adjust Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast settings, and then click OK.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the printer uses the color space of the image data.

Important

- If you print an image by specifying an individually created profile or a profile for special Canon paper in an application software, select None from the Color Correction menu of the printer driver.

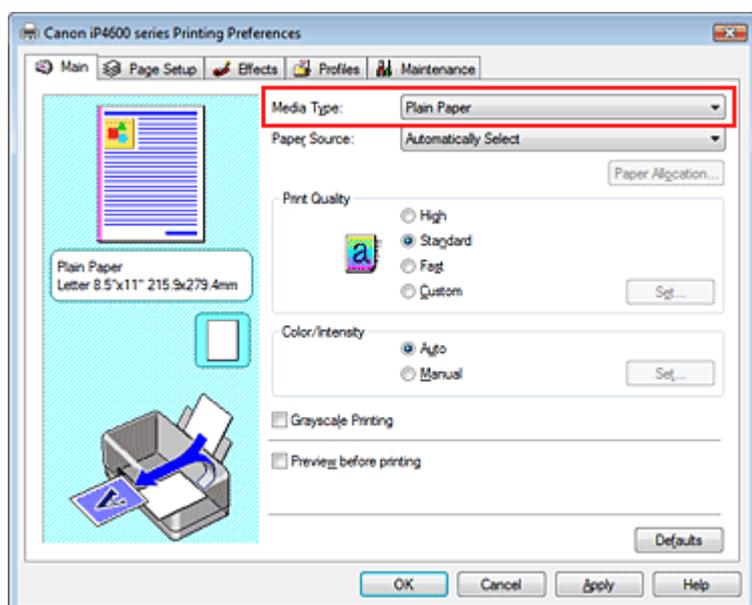
Printing image data from the application software that cannot specify an ICC profile

When printing from an application software that does not allow you to specify an ICC profile, specify the ICC profile in the print settings of the printer driver and print the data. When printing Adobe RGB data, you can print the data with the Adobe RGB color space even if the application software does not support Adobe RGB.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the media type

Select the type of paper loaded in the printer from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



3. Select the print quality

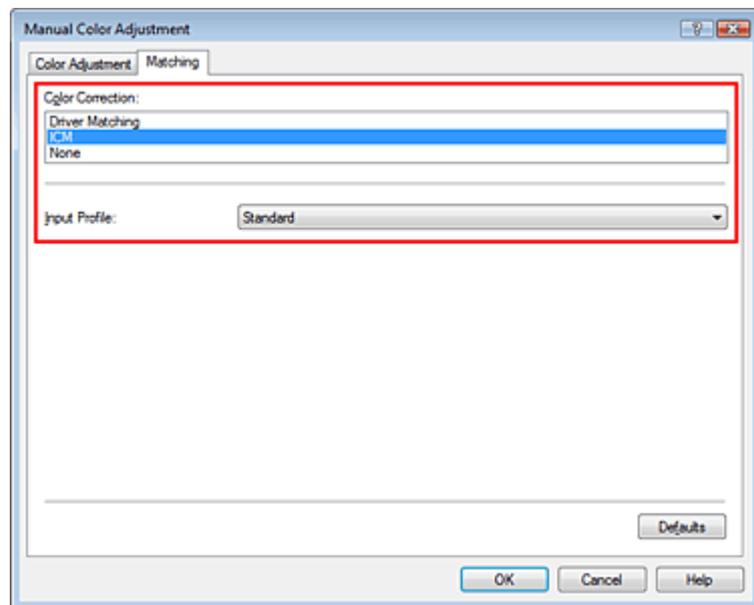
Select High, Standard, or Fast for Print Quality.

4. Select the manual color adjustment

Select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set...
Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

5. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, and select ICM for Color Correction.



6. Select the input profile

Select an Input Profile that matches the color space of the image data.

- **For sRGB data or data without an ICC profile:**

Select Standard.

- **For Adobe RGB data:**

Select Adobe RGB (1998).

Important

- If the application software specifies an input profile, the input profile setting of the printer driver becomes invalid.
- If no ICC profiles are installed on your computer, Adobe RGB (1998) is not displayed. You can install ICC profiles from the Setup CD-ROM that accompanies the printer.

7. Set the other items

If necessary, click Color Adjustment tab, and adjust the color balance of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and adjust Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast settings, and then click OK.

8. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the data is printed with the color space of the selected image data.

Related Topics

- ➔ [Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method](#)
- ➔ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Intensity](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Contrast](#)



[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Adjusting Color Balance

Adjusting Color Balance

You can adjust the color tints during printing.

Since this function adjusts color balance of the output by changing the ink ratios of each color, it changes the total color balance of the document. Use the application software if you want to change the color balance significantly. Use the printer driver only if you want to adjust the color balance slightly.

The following sample shows the case when Color Balance is used to intensify cyan and to diminish yellow so that the overall colors are more uniform.



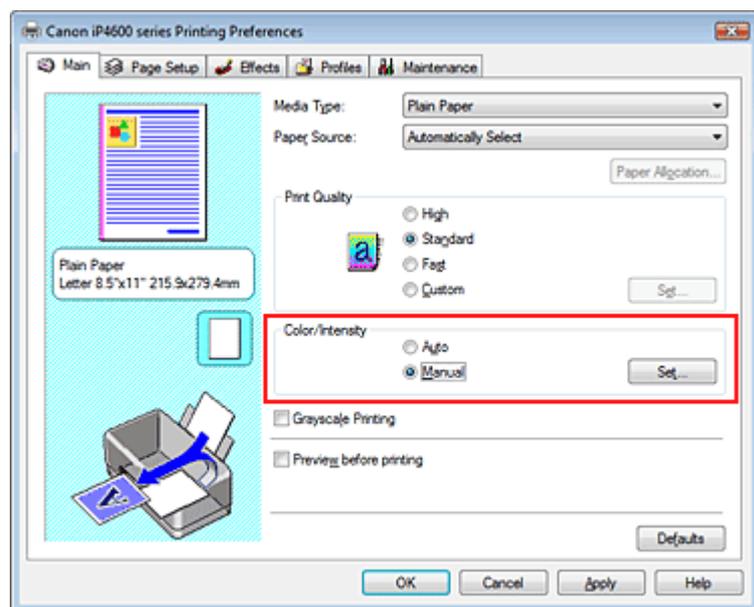
No adjustment

Adjusted in Color Balance

The procedure for adjusting color balance is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....



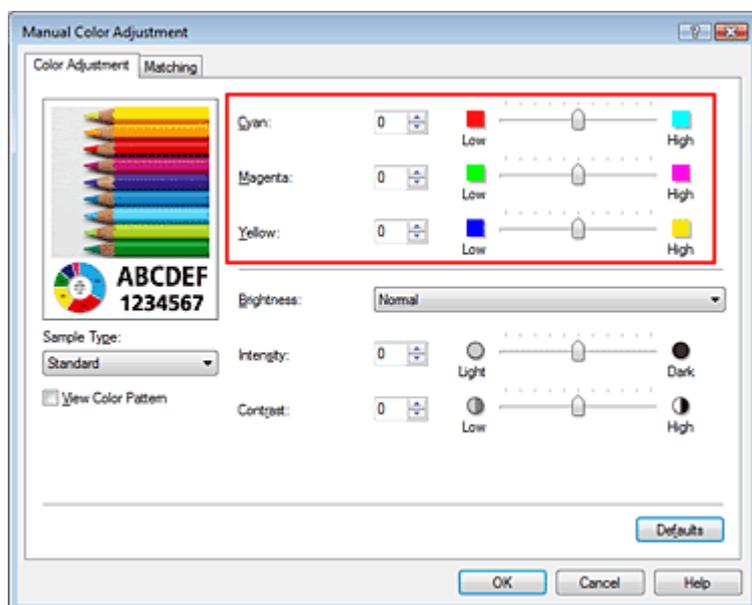
The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Adjust color balance

There are individual sliders for Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow. Each color becomes stronger when the corresponding slider is moved to the right, and becomes weaker when the corresponding slider is moved to the left. For example, if cyan becomes weaker, the color red becomes stronger.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

After adjusting each color, click OK.



4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the document is printed with the adjusted color balance.

Important

- When the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab is checked, Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow appear grayed out and are unavailable.

Related Topics

- ➔ [Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method](#)
- ➔ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Intensity](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Adjusting Brightness

Adjusting Brightness

You can change the brightness of the overall image data during printing. This function does not change pure white or pure black but it changes the brightness of the intermediate colors.

The following sample shows the print result when the Brightness specification is changed.



Light is selected

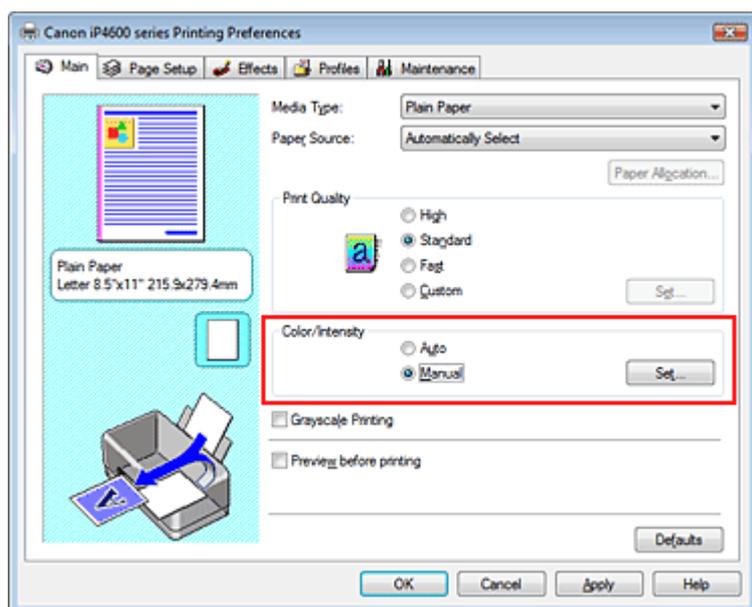
Normal is selected

Dark is selected

The procedure for adjusting brightness is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Select the manual color adjustment

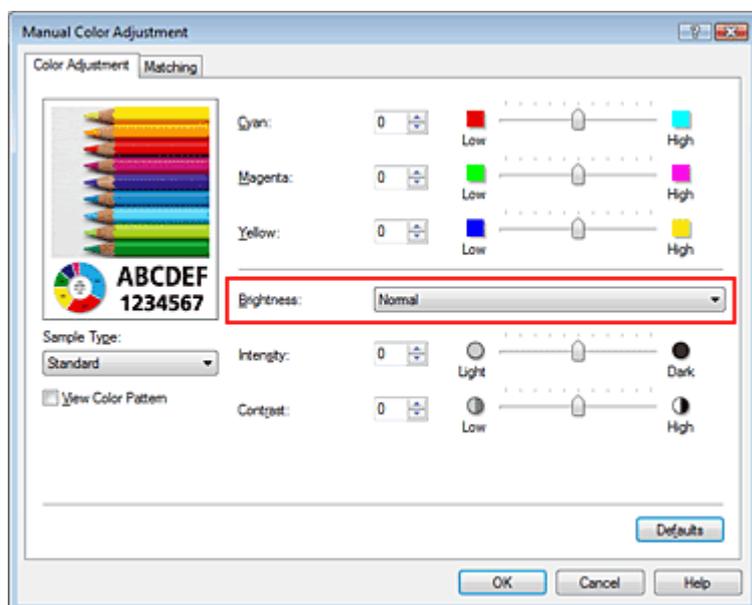
On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....



The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Specify the brightness

Select Light, Normal, or Dark for Brightness, and click OK.



4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the data is printed at the specified brightness.

Related Topics

- ➔ Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- ➔ Specifying Color Correction
- ➔ Adjusting Color Balance
- ➔ Adjusting Intensity
- ➔ Adjusting Contrast

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Adjusting Intensity

Adjusting Intensity

You can dilute (brighten) or intensify (darken) the colors of the overall image data during printing.

If you want to sharpen the print results, you should intensify the colors.

The following sample shows the case when the intensity is increased so that all colors become more intense when the image data is printed.



No adjustment

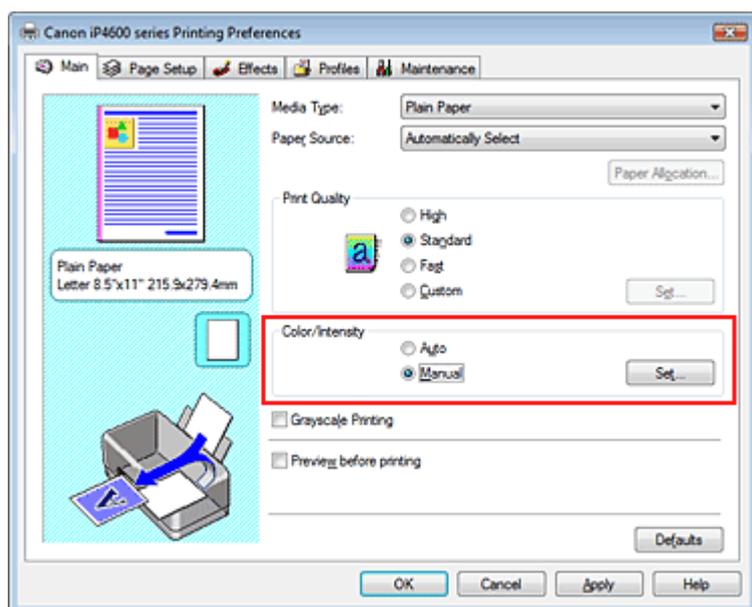
Higher Intensity

The procedure for adjusting intensity is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**

2. Select the manual color adjustment

Select Manual for Color/Intensity on the Main tab, and click Set....



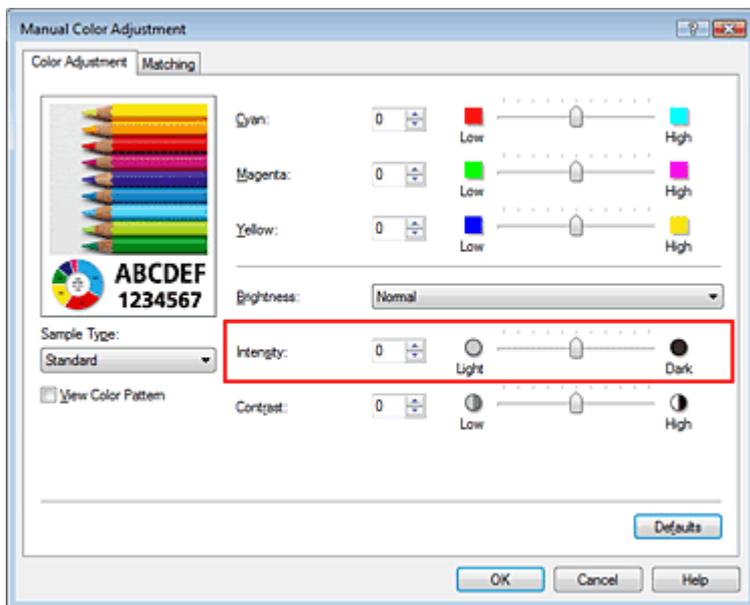
The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Adjust intensity

Moving the Intensity slider to the right intensifies (darkens) the colors. Moving the slider to the left dilutes (brightens) the colors.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

After adjusting each color, click OK.



Important

- Adjust the slider gradually.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the image data is printed with the adjusted intensity.

Related Topics

- ➔ [Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method](#)
- ➔ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➔ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Adjusting Contrast

Adjusting Contrast

You can adjust the image contrast during printing.

To make the differences between the light and dark portions of images greater and more distinct, increase the contrast. On the other hand, to make the differences between the light and dark portions of images smaller and less distinct, reduce the contrast.



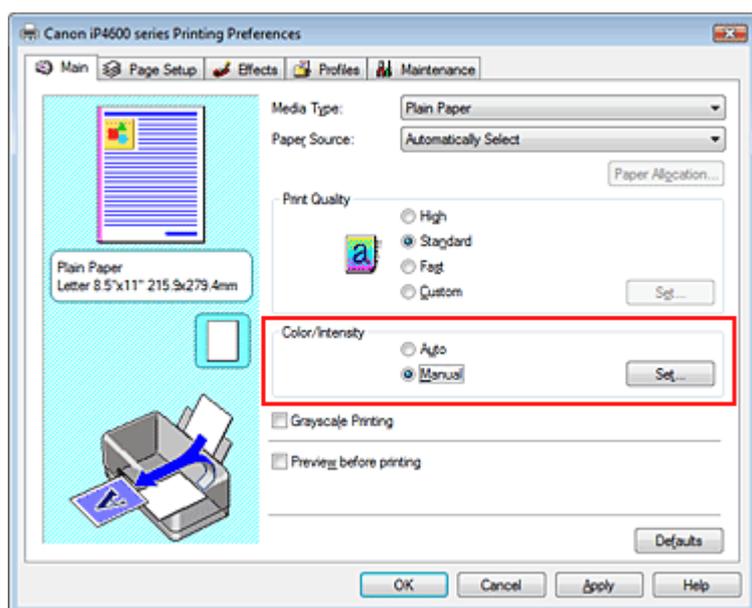
No adjustment

Adjust the contrast

The procedure for adjusting contrast is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....



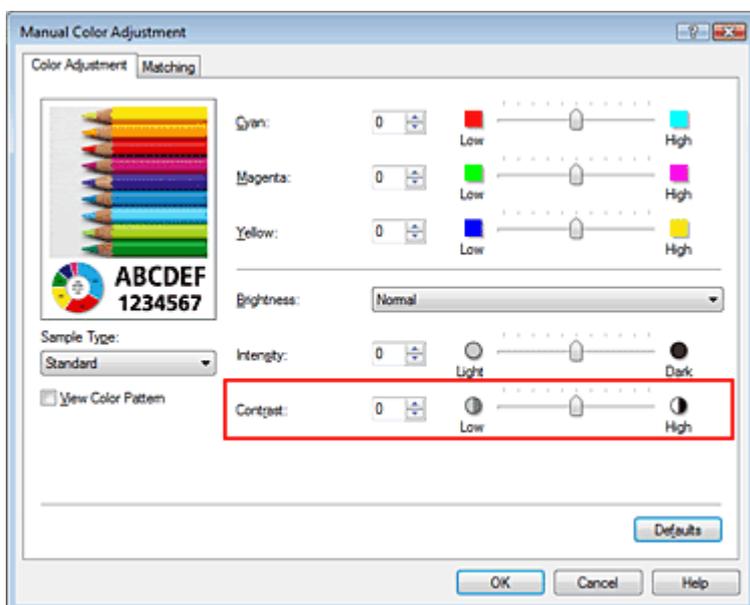
The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Adjust the contrast

Moving the Contrast slider to the right increases the contrast, and moving it to the left decreases the contrast.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

After adjusting each color, click OK.



4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the image is printed with the adjusted contrast.

Related Topics

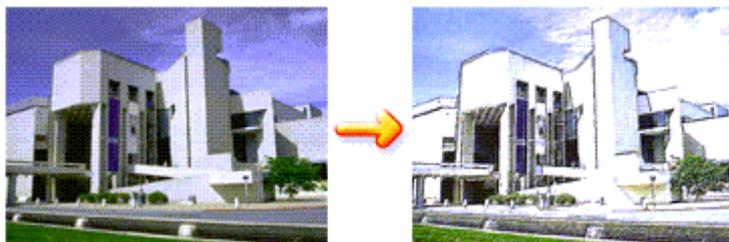
- ➔ Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- ➔ Specifying Color Correction
- ➔ Adjusting Color Balance
- ➔ Adjusting Brightness
- ➔ Adjusting Intensity

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Simulating an Illustration

Simulating an Illustration

With the Simulate Illustration function, you can print full-color or 256-color image data so that it looks like a hand-drawn illustration. You can add different effects to the original profile and colors.

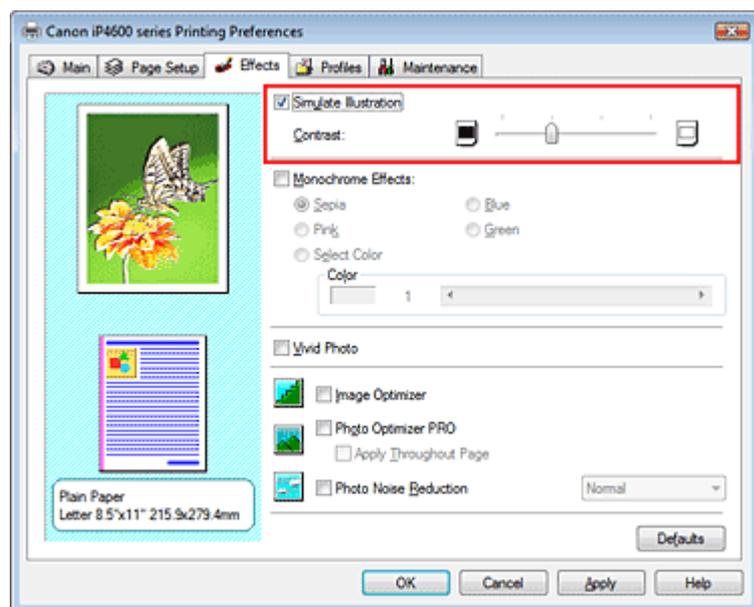


The procedure for performing Simulate Illustration is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set the Simulate Illustration

Check the Simulate Illustration check box on the Effects tab, and adjust the Contrast as necessary. Moving the slider to the right lightens the image data and moving the slider to the left darkens the image data.

The current settings are displayed in the Settings Preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

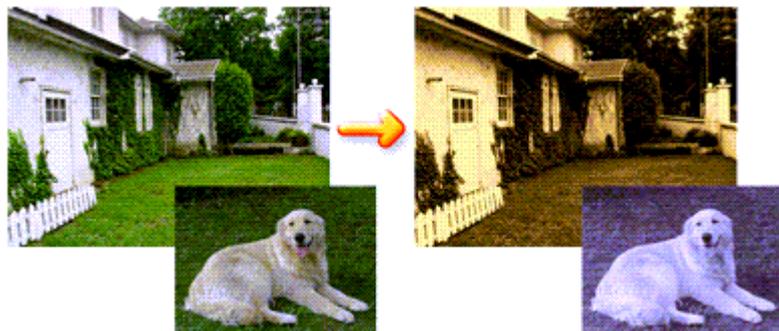
When you execute print, the image will be printed so that it looks hand-drawn.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Representing Image Data with a Single Color

Representing Image Data with a Single Color

With the Monochrome Effects function, you can benefit from coloring effects such as changing a photograph to a sepia tone image.



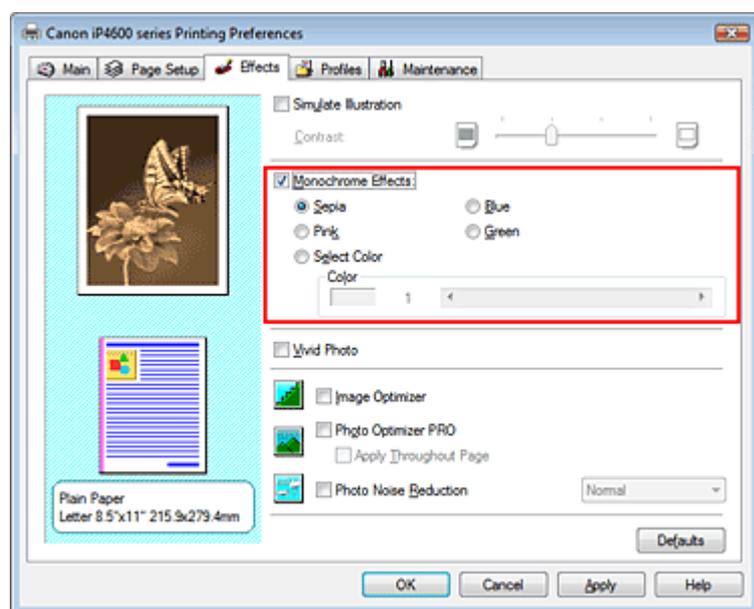
The procedure for performing Monochrome Effects is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set Monochrome Effects

Check the Monochrome Effects check box on the Effects tab and select your desired color.

If you use Select Color, move the Color slider to specify the color you want.

The current settings are displayed in the Settings Preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the image will be printed with a single color.

Important

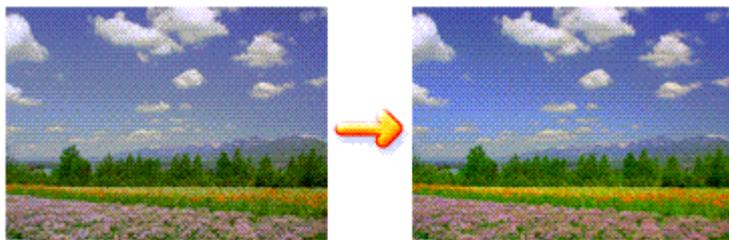
- When the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab is checked, Monochrome Effects appears grayed out and is unavailable.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors

Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors

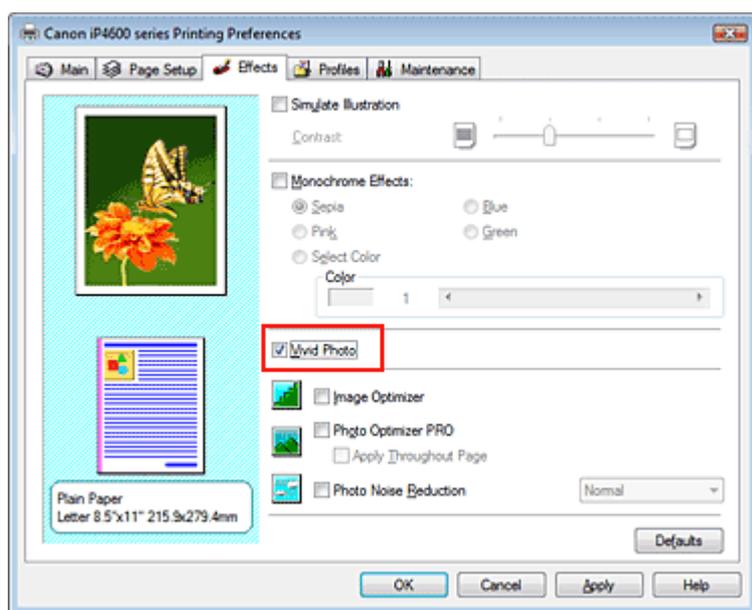
The Vivid Photo function allows you to print image data with vivid colors. The notable feature of Vivid Photo is that it emphasizes the colors in background sceneries while maintaining the human skin color natural. By using this function, you can make vivid hues appear even more vivid.



The procedure for performing Vivid Photo is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set Vivid Photo

Check the Vivid Photo check box on the Effects tab.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

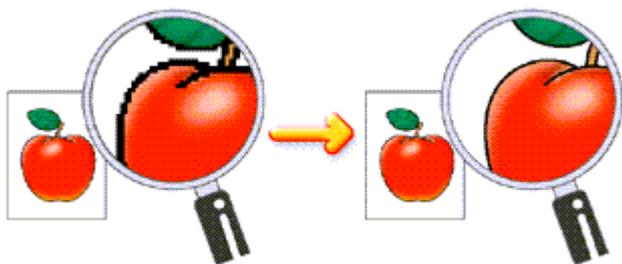
When you execute print, the image will be printed with vivid colors.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Smoothing Jagged Outlines

Smoothing Jagged Outlines

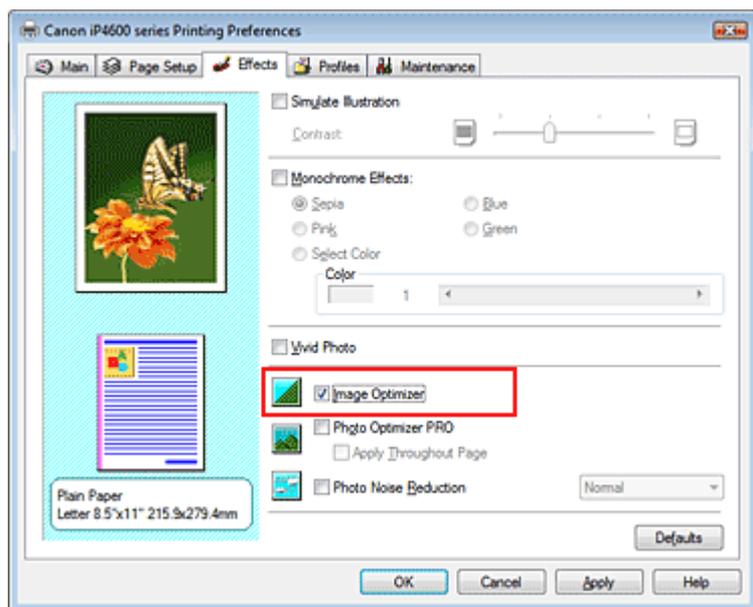
The Image Optimizer function allows you to smooth jagged outlines in photos and graphics that have been enlarged with your application. This feature is especially useful when printing low-resolution images from Web pages.



The procedure for performing Image Optimizer is as follows:

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Perform Image Optimizer

Check the Image Optimizer check box on the Effects tab.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

The photos and graphics will be printed with jagged outlines smoothed.

Note

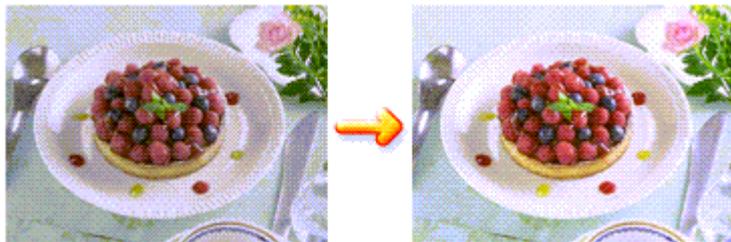
- Depending on application software or resolution of image data, the Image Optimizer may have no discernible effects.
- It may take longer to complete printing if the Image Optimizer is used.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration

Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration

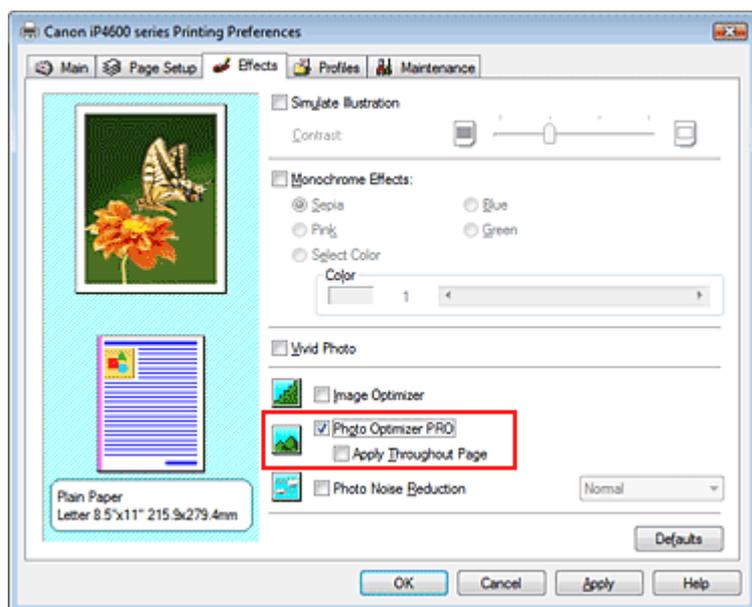
The Photo Optimizer PRO function corrects colors of digital camera images or scanned images. It is specially designed to compensate for color shift, overexposure, and underexposure.



The procedure for performing Photo Optimizer PRO is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window
2. Set the Auto Photo mode

Check the Photo Optimizer PRO check box on the Effects tab.



Normally there is no need to check the Apply Throughout Page check box. Images within each page are optimized on an image-by-image basis.

Note

- Check the Apply Throughout Page check box when printing image data that has been processed, such as being cropped or rotated. In this case the entire page will be treated as a single image to be optimized.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the images will be printed with color compensation.

Important

- Photo Optimizer PRO does not function when:
 - Background is set in the Stamp/Background dialog box on the Page Setup tab.
 - Define Stamp... is selected in the Stamp/Background dialog box on the Page Setup tab, and the bitmapped stamp is configured.

 **Note**

- Depending on images, the Photo Optimizer PRO may have no discernible effect.
-

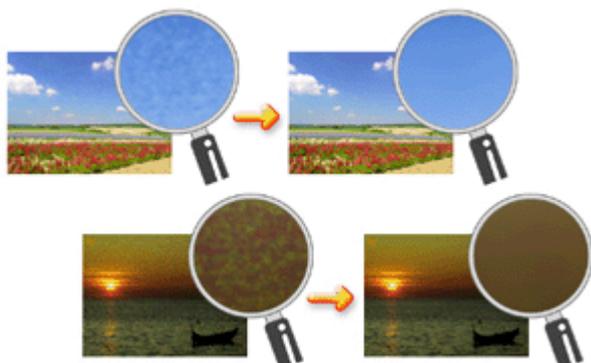
[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Reducing Photo Noise

Reducing Photo Noise

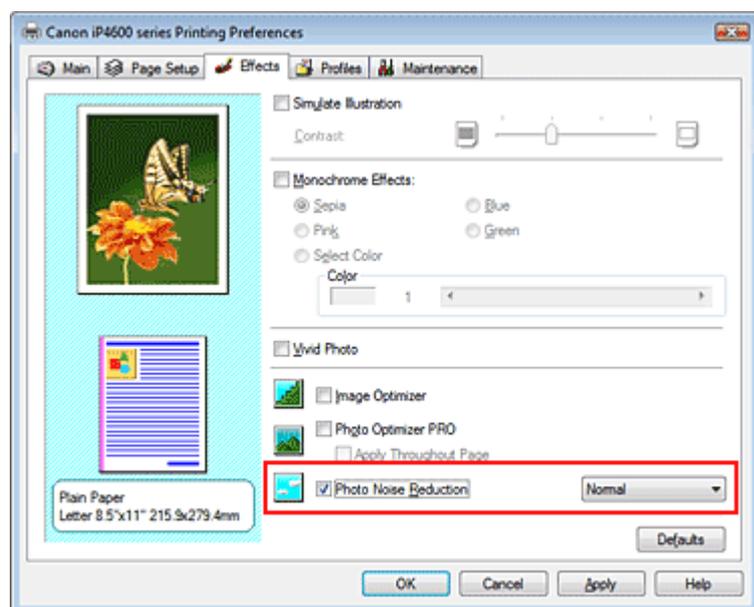
With the Photo Noise Reduction function, you can reduce the digital camera noise and improve the image quality of the digital print.



The procedure for performing Photo Noise Reduction is as follows:

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Set Photo Noise Reduction

Check the Photo Noise Reduction check box on the Effects tab and select Normal or Strong for the level.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the image will be printed with the digital camera noise being reduced.

Note

- It is recommended to select Normal for most cases. Select Strong if you have selected Normal and the noise still bothers you.
- Depending on application software or resolution of image data, effects of digital camera noise reduction may not be obvious.
- When this function is used for other than photos taken by digital cameras, image may be distorted.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#) > [Overview of the Printer Driver](#)
> [Overview of the Printer Driver](#)

Overview of the Printer Driver

- ➔ [Canon IJ Printer Driver](#)
- ➔ [How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window](#)
- ➔ [Maintenance Tab](#)
- ➔ [Canon IJ Status Monitor](#)
- ➔ [The Canon IJ Preview](#)

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#) > [Overview of the Printer Driver](#)
> [Canon IJ Printer Driver](#)

Canon IJ Printer Driver

The Canon IJ printer driver is software that is installed on your computer for printing data on this printer.

The Canon IJ printer driver converts the print data created by your Windows application into data that your printer can understand and sends the converted data to the printer.

Because the format of print data varies depending on the your model, you need to have a Canon IJ printer driver for the specific model you are using.

How to Use Help

You can display the Help describing the driver setting items through the Printing Preferences screen of the Canon IJ printer driver.

- **To view all descriptions of a tab...**

Click the Help button on each tab.

A description for each item on the tab appears.

You can also display a description for a dialog box by clicking the link that appears on the corresponding tab.

- **To see a description for each item...**

Right-click the item you want to learn about and then click Help.

Alternatively, if the  [Help] button is found at the right end of the title bar, click that button, and then click the item you want to learn about.

A description of the item is displayed.

Related Topic

[➡ How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window](#)



[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Overview of the Printer Driver > Canon IJ Printer Driver > How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window

How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window

The printer driver setup window can be displayed through the application software in use or the Start menu of the Windows.



Note

- This guide mainly describes operations on the Windows Vista. Operations may differ depending on versions of the Windows.

Open the Printer Driver Setup Window through the Application Software

Follow the procedure below to configure print settings when printing.

1. Select the command you perform printing on the application software in use

In general, select Print on the File menu to open the Print dialog box.

2. Select your model name and click Preferences (or Properties)

The printer driver setup window appears.



Note

- Depending on application software you use, command names or menu names may vary and there may be more steps. For details, refer to the user's manual of your application software.

Open the Printer Driver Setup Window through the Start Menu

Follow the procedure below to perform maintenance operations such as print head cleaning, or to configure print settings that are common for all application software.

1. Select items from the Start menu as shown below:

- In Windows Vista, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Hardware and Sound -> Printers.
- In Windows XP, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Printers and Other Hardware -> Printers and Faxes.
- In Windows 2000, select the Start menu -> Settings -> Printers.

2. Right-click your model name icon, and then select Printing Preferences from the displayed menu.

The printer driver setup window appears.



Important

- Opening the printer driver setup window through Properties displays such tabs regarding the Windows functions as the Ports (or Advanced) tab. Those tabs do not appear when opening through Printing Preferences or application software. About tabs regarding Windows functions, refer to the user's manual for the Windows.

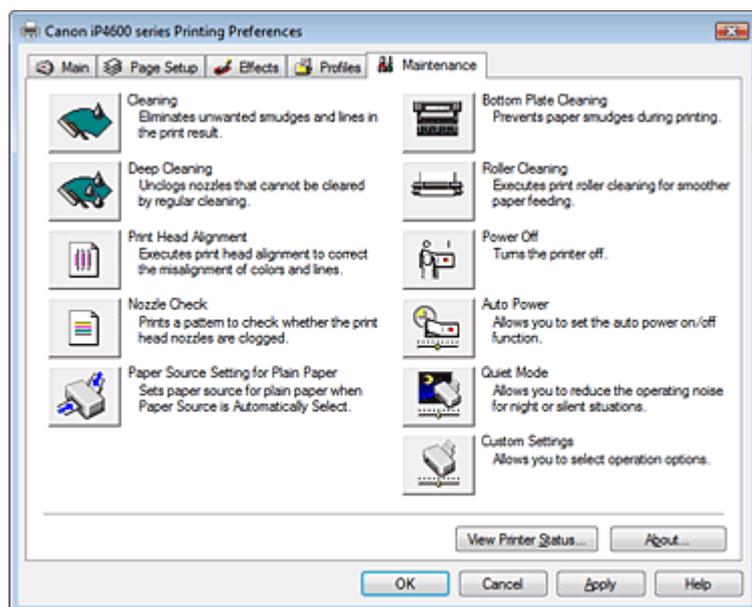


Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Overview of the Printer Driver > Canon IJ Printer Driver > Maintenance Tab

Maintenance Tab

The Maintenance tab allows you to perform printer maintenance or change the settings of the printer.



Features

- ➔ Cleaning the Print Heads
- ➔ Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers
- ➔ Aligning the Print Head Position
- ➔ Checking the Print Head Nozzles
- ➔ Setting the Paper Source for Plain Paper
- ➔ Cleaning Inside the Printer
- ➔ Managing the Printer Power

Related features

- ➔ Reducing the Printer Noise/Quiet Mode
- ➔ Changing the Printer Operation Mode



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Overview of the Printer Driver > Canon IJ Status Monitor

Canon IJ Status Monitor

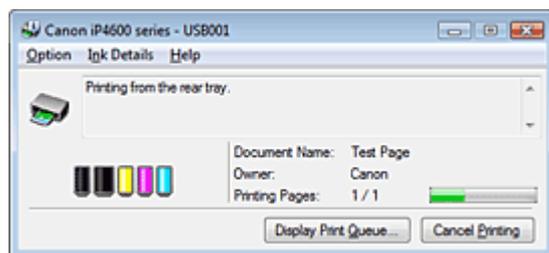
The Canon IJ Status Monitor is an application software that shows the status of the printer and the progress of printing on the Windows screen. You will know the status of the printer with graphics, icons, and messages.

Launching the Canon IJ Status Monitor

The Canon IJ Status Monitor launches automatically when data is sent to the printer. When launched, the Canon IJ Status Monitor appears as a button on the Task Bar.



Click the Status Monitor button displayed on the Task Bar. The Canon IJ Status Monitor appears.

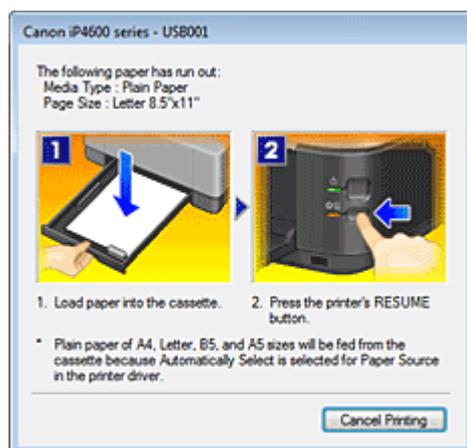


Note

- To open the Canon IJ Status Monitor when the printer is not printing, open the [printer driver setup window](#) and click View Printer Status... on the Maintenance tab.

When Errors Occur

The Canon IJ Status Monitor is automatically displayed when an error occurs (e.g., if the printer runs out of paper or if the ink is low).



In such cases, take the appropriate action as described.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#) > [Overview of the Printer Driver](#)
> [The Canon IJ Preview](#)

The Canon IJ Preview

The Canon IJ Preview is an application software that displays what the print result will look like before a document is actually printed.

The preview reflects the information that is set within the printer driver and allows you to check the document layout, print sequence, and number of pages. You can also change the media type and paper source settings.

If you want to display a preview before printing, open the [printer driver setup window](#), click the Main tab, and check the Preview before printing check box.

If you do not want to display a preview before printing, uncheck the check box.

Related Topic

[▶ Displaying the Print Results before Printing](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing on DVD/CDs

Printing on DVD/CDs

- ➔ [Printing on the Label Side of DVD/CDs](#)
- ➔ [Troubleshooting](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing on DVD/CDs > Printing on the Label Side of DVD/CDs

Printing on the Label Side of DVD/CDs

- ➔ [Items to Prepare](#)
- ➔ [Cautions When Printing on DVD/CDs](#)
- ➔ [Attaching/Removing the CD-R Tray](#)
- ➔ [Printing on the Label Side of DVD/CDs](#)
- ➔ [Printing with CD-LabelPrint from the Computer](#)
- ➔ [Printing from a PictBridge Compliant Device](#)
- ➔ [Printing Area](#)

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing on DVD/CDs > Printing on the Label Side of DVD/CDs > Items to Prepare

Items to Prepare

The following items are needed to print on DVD/CDs:

- **CD-R Tray**



"G" is on the upper side.

- **8 cm CD-R Adapter**



Needed only when printing on 8 cm DVD/CDs.

Attached to the CD-R Tray when shipped.



Important

- You cannot print on 8 cm DVD/CDs from a PictBridge compliant device. You need to print from the computer to print on 8 cm DVD/CDs.

- **Printable DVD/CDs**

Obtain a 12 cm or 8 cm DVD/CD with a label surface compatible with inkjet printing.

A "printable disc" differs from regular DVD/CDs in that its label surface has been specially processed to be printed on by an inkjet printer.

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing on DVD/CDs](#) > [Printing on the Label Side of DVD/CDs](#) > [Cautions When Printing on DVD/CDs](#)

Cautions When Printing on DVD/CDs

- Be sure to use the CD-R Tray supplied with this printer. It has an "G" on the upper side.
- Do not print on DVD/CDs that are not compatible with ink-jet printing. The ink will not dry and may cause problems with the disc itself or devices which the disc is loaded onto.
- Do not print on the DVD/CDs' recording surface. Doing so will make data recorded on DVD/CDs unreadable.
- Hold DVD/CDs by their edges. Do not touch either the label surface (printing surface) or recording surface.
- Remove any dirt from the CD-R Tray before placing DVD/CDs on the CD-R Tray. Loading discs in a dirty CD-R Tray may scratch the recording surface of the discs.
- After printing, allow the printing surface of the disc to dry naturally. Do not use hairdryers or expose the disc to direct sunlight to dry the ink. Do not touch the printing surface until the ink has dried.
- Do not attach the CD-R Tray while the printer is in operation.
- Do not remove the CD-R Tray while printing on DVD/CDs. Doing so may damage the printer, the CD-R Tray, or the disc.
- Do not get dirt or scratches on the reflectors of the CD-R Tray. The printer may not be able to recognize loading of the DVD/CD, or printing may become misaligned. If the reflectors on the CD-R Tray become dirty, wipe the reflector clean with a soft, dry cloth, taking care not to scratch the plate.
- The CD-R Tray may become dirty if software other than CD-LabelPrint or Easy-PhotoPrint EX is used.
- Always use the supplied 8 cm CD-R Adapter when printing on 8 cm DVD/CDs.
- Always close the Inner Cover after printing on DVD/CDs.

[Page top](#) ↕

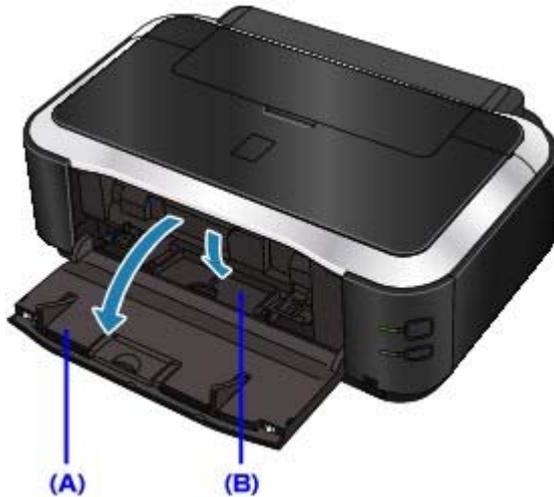
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing on DVD/CDs > Printing on the Label Side of DVD/CDs > Attaching/Removing the CD-R Tray

Attaching/Removing the CD-R Tray

Attaching the CD-R Tray

1. Open the Paper Output Tray (A), then open the Inner Cover (B).



2. Place the DVD/CD.

Important

- Make sure that there is no dirt on the CD-R Tray before placing the DVD/CD on the CD-R Tray.
- When placing the DVD/CD on the CD-R Tray, do not touch the printing surface of the disc or the reflectors (C) on the CD-R Tray.
- When printing on an 8 cm DVD/CD, attach the supplied 8 cm CD-R Adapter. If you do not, printing quality will be reduced and the DVD/CD may become damaged.

• 12 cm DVD/CD:

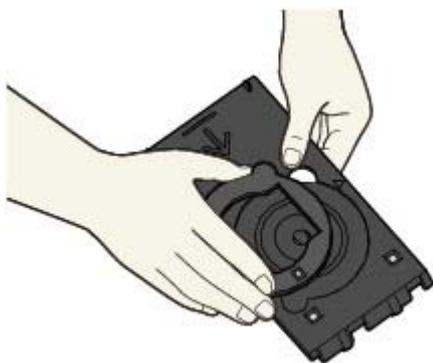
1. Place the disc on the CD-R Tray with the printable surface facing up.



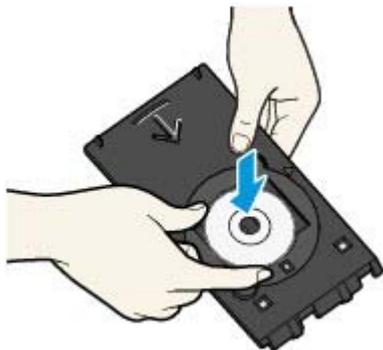
Do not touch the reflectors (C).

• 8 cm DVD/CD:

1. Align the protrusions on both edge of the 8 cm CD-R Adapter with indentations on the CD-R Tray.



2. Place the 8 cm disc on the CD-R Tray with the printing surface facing up.



3. Place the CD-R Tray.

Important

- Do not attach the CD-R Tray until the message asking you to load the DVD/CD is displayed. Doing so can damage the printer.

Note

- The CD-R Tray may be ejected after a specified period of time has elapsed. In this case, follow the on-screen instructions to place the CD-R Tray.

4. Insert the CD-R Tray straightly until the arrow () on the Inner Cover is almost aligned with the arrow () on the CD-R Tray.



(D) Keep the CD-R Tray level when inserting it.

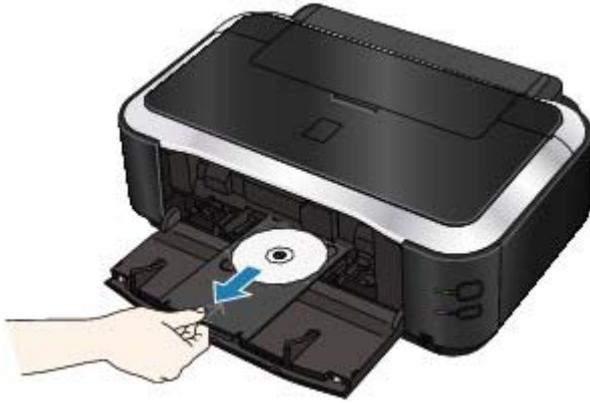
(E) Align the arrow () on the CD-R Tray with the arrow () on the Inner Cover.

Important

- Do not insert the CD-R Tray beyond the arrow () on the Inner Cover.

Removing the CD-R Tray

1. Pull out the CD-R Tray.



2. Close the Inner Cover.



Important

- If the Inner Cover is opened, you cannot print on paper as it will not feed properly. Make sure that the Inner Cover is closed.

3. Remove the DVD/CD.

Caution

- Do not touch the printable surface when removing the disc from the CD-R Tray.

Note

- Dry the printing surface sufficiently before removing the disc. If you see printing on the CD-R Tray or the transparent parts on inner or outer diameter of DVD/CD, wipe them off after the printing surface is dry.

• 12 cm DVD/CD:

1. Remove the disc from the CD-R Tray.



• 8 cm DVD/CD:

1. Remove the 8 cm CD-R Adapter from the CD-R Tray.



2. Remove the 8 cm disc from the CD-R Tray.



Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing on DVD/CDs](#) > [Printing on the Label Side of DVD/CDs](#) > [Printing on the Label Side of DVD/CDs](#)

Printing on the Label Side of DVD/CDs

The CD-R Tray (supplied) allows the printing of images on printable DVD/CDs.

CD-LabelPrint is bundled application software that allows you to edit and modify data before printing.

Install it on your computer to use it.

➔ [Printing with CD-LabelPrint from the Computer](#)



Note

- We recommend that you test print on an unneeded printable DVD/CD first.
-

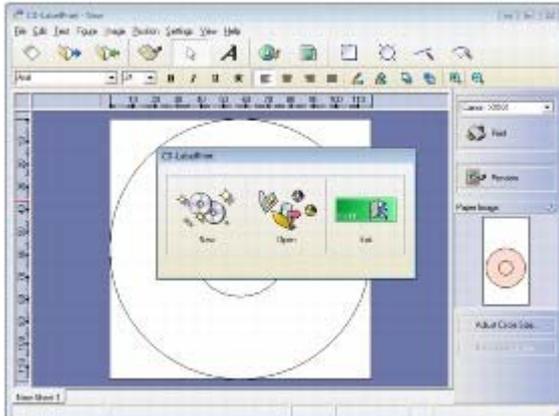
[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing on DVD/CDs > Printing on the Label Side of DVD/CDs > Printing with CD-LabelPrint from the Computer

Printing with CD-LabelPrint from the Computer

- CD-LabelPrint is bundled application software that allows you to edit and modify data before printing. Install it on your computer to use it. For information on how to install this software, refer to your setup manual.
- For details on how to print with CD-LabelPrint, refer to its manual.
If you are using Windows, click Start > All Programs (or Programs in Windows 2000) > CD-LabelPrint > Help.
If you are using a Macintosh, open Application folder in the location where the MP Drivers were installed > CD-LabelPrint folder > Manual folder > double-click Manual.htm.



Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing on DVD/CDs](#) > [Printing on the Label Side of DVD/CDs](#) > [Printing from a PictBridge Compliant Device](#)

Printing from a PictBridge Compliant Device

This section describes how to print photos on DVD/CDs (printable discs) from a PictBridge compliant device.

Important

- Depending on your PictBridge compliant device, you may not be able to print on the label side of DVD/CDs.
For details, refer to the instruction manual of your PictBridge compliant device.
- You cannot print on 8 cm DVD/CDs.

1. Make sure that the printer is turned on.
2. Connect the PictBridge compliant device to the printer using a USB cable recommended by the manufacturer of the device.
For details, refer to [Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device](#).
3. Specify the print settings as follows
 - Paper size: 12cmDVD/CD
 - Paper type: Default
 - Layout: Bordered or DefaultYou can make image optimize settings using the menu on the LCD of your PictBridge compliant device. For details, refer to [About PictBridge Print Settings](#).
4. Set the printable DVD/CD.
➔ [Attaching/Removing the CD-R Tray](#)
5. Start printing from your PictBridge compliant device.

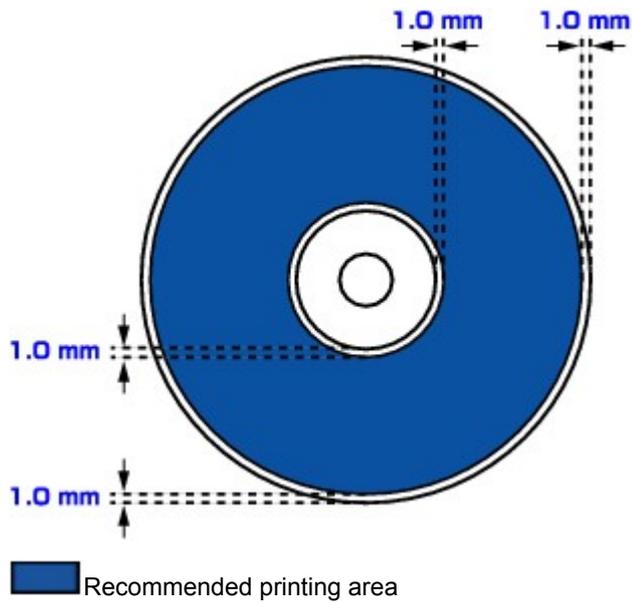
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing on DVD/CDs > Printing on the Label Side of DVD/CDs > Printing Area

Printing Area

Printable DVD/CDs

The printing area of both printable DVDs and CDs is the area excluding the 1 mm area from the internal and external diameters of the label.



[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing on DVD/CDs](#) > [Troubleshooting](#)

Troubleshooting

- ➔ [Message Appears on the Computer Screen](#)
- ➔ [Cannot Print on DVD/CDs](#)
- ➔ [Error Message Appears on a PictBridge Compliant Device](#)

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing on DVD/CDs > Troubleshooting > Message Appears on the Computer Screen

Message Appears on the Computer Screen

→  **Windows** Errors About DVD/CD Printing Are Displayed

→  **Macintosh** Message: 1001 Is Displayed

→  **Macintosh** Error Number: 1002 Is Displayed

→  **Macintosh** Message: 1850 Is Displayed

Windows Errors About DVD/CD Printing Are Displayed

• **Check 1: Is the CD-R Tray placed properly?**

Open the Inner Cover, properly place the CD-R Tray again, then press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button.

Make sure that you are using the CD-R Tray supplied with the printer ("G" is on the upper side).

For details on how to place the CD-R Tray, see [Attaching/Removing the CD-R Tray](#).

• **Check 2: Is the DVD/CD placed on the CD-R Tray?**

Properly place the DVD/CD on the CD-R Tray, attach the CD-R Tray again, then press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button.

Make sure that you are using the CD-R Tray supplied with this printer ("G" is on the upper side).

For details on how to place the CD-R Tray, see [Attaching/Removing the CD-R Tray](#).

• **Check 3: Unrecognizable DVD/CD may be placed.**

Canon recommends that you use DVD/CDs specially processed to be printed on by an inkjet printer.

• **Check 4: Is the DVD/CD on the CD-R Tray already printed?**

If you place the DVD/CDs on which have already been printed on the CD-R Tray, the CD-R Tray is ejected.

In this case, change the settings of the printer driver and try printing again.

- Clear the Detects a printable disc in the CD-R tray check box in Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab, then click Send.
When printing is over, select the Detects a printable disc in the CD-R tray check box and click Send.



Note

- If the Detects a printable disc in the CD-R tray check box is cleared, printing may start without the DVD/CD loaded. Selecting the check box prevents the CD-R Tray from getting dirty.

• **Check 5: Is the Inner Cover opened when starting printing on paper, or while printing is in progress?**

Close Inner Cover, then press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button on the printer.

Do not open or close the Inner Cover while printing is in progress. This may damage the printer.

Macintosh Message: 1001 Is Displayed

• **Check: Place the CD-R Tray properly.**

Place the CD-R Tray properly, then press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button.

Make sure that you are using the CD-R Tray supplied with the printer ("G" is on the upper side).

For details on how to place the CD-R Tray, see [Attaching/Removing the CD-R Tray](#).

Error Number: 1002 Is Displayed

- **Check 1: Place the DVD/CD on the CD-R Tray properly.**

Place the DVD/CD on the CD-R Tray properly, then press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button on the printer.

Make sure that you are using the CD-R Tray supplied with the printer ("G" is on the upper side).

For details on how to place the CD-R Tray, see [Attaching/Removing the CD-R Tray](#).

- **Check 2: Unrecognizable DVD/CD may be placed.**

Canon recommends that you use DVD/CDs specially processed to be printed on by an inkjet printer.

- **Check 3: Is the DVD/CD on the CD-R Tray already printed?**

If you place the DVD/CDs on which have already been printed on the CD-R Tray, the CD-R Tray is ejected.

In this case, change the settings of the printer driver and try printing again.

- Clear the Detects a printable disc in the CD-R tray check box in Custom Settings on the Canon IJ Printer Utility dialog box, then click Send.
When printing is over, select the Detects a printable disc in the CD-R tray check box and click Send.



Note

- If the Detects a printable disc in the CD-R tray check box is cleared, printing may start without the DVD/CD loaded. Selecting the check box prevents the CD-R Tray from getting dirty.

Message: 1850 Is Displayed

- **Check: Open the Inner Cover, then place the CD-R Tray properly.**

Open the Inner Cover, place the CD-R Tray properly, then press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button.

For details on how to place the CD-R Tray, see [Attaching/Removing the CD-R Tray](#).

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing on DVD/CDs > Troubleshooting > Cannot Print on DVD/CDs

Cannot Print on DVD/CDs

- ➔ DVD/CD Printing Does Not Start
- ➔ CD-R Tray Does Not Feed Properly
- ➔ CD-R Tray Jammed

DVD/CD Printing Does Not Start

- **Check 1: Is the CD-R Tray placed properly?**

Open the Inner Cover, properly place the CD-R Tray again, then press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button.

Use the CD-R Tray supplied with this printer ("G" is on the upper side).

For details on how to place the CD-R Tray, see [Attaching/Removing the CD-R Tray](#).

- **Check 2: Is the DVD/CD placed on the CD-R Tray?**

Place the DVD/CD on the CD-R Tray properly, then press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button on the printer.

Make sure that you are using the CD-R Tray supplied with the printer ("G" is on the upper side).

For details on how to place the CD-R Tray, see [Attaching/Removing the CD-R Tray](#).

- **Check 3: If DVD/CD printing stops before it is complete, try the operation again.**

If a certain period of time has elapsed while DVD/CD printing is in progress, the printer stops initializing.

If you press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button, the printer resumes initializing.

Try the operation again following the on-screen instructions.

CD-R Tray Does Not Feed Properly

- **Check 1: Is the CD-R Tray placed properly?**

Properly place the CD-R Tray again, then press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button.

Make sure that you are using the CD-R Tray supplied with the printer ("G" is on the upper side).

For details on how to place the CD-R Tray, see [Attaching/Removing the CD-R Tray](#).

- **Check 2: Unrecognizable DVD/CD may be placed.**

Canon recommends that you use DVD/CDs specially processed to be printed on by an inkjet printer.

- **Check 3: Is the DVD/CD on the CD-R Tray already printed?**

If you place the DVD/CDs on which have already been printed on the CD-R Tray, the CD-R Tray is ejected.

In this case, change the settings of the printer driver and try printing again.



- Clear the Detects a printable disc in the CD-R tray check box in Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab, then click Send.
When printing is over, select the Detects a printable disc in the CD-R tray check box and click Send.



- Clear the Detects a printable disc in the CD-R tray check box in Custom Settings on the Canon IJ Printer Utility dialog box, then click Send.
When printing is over, select the Detects a printable disc in the CD-R tray check box and click Send.

**Note**

- If you left cleared Detects a printable disc in the CD-R tray check box and start printing another DVD/CD, printing may start without the DVD/CD loaded. Selecting the check box prevents the CD-R Tray from getting dirty.

CD-R Tray Jammed

Pull out the CD-R Tray gently.

If the CD-R Tray cannot be pulled out, turn the printer off and then turn the printer back on again. The CD-R Tray will automatically be ejected.

When the CD-R Tray is pulled out, place the CD-R Tray again, with an "G" on the upper side, and retry printing. Place the DVD/CD properly.

➡ [Attaching/Removing the CD-R Tray](#)

If the CD-R Tray is still jammed, check if there is a problem with the DVD/CD.

➡ [CD-R Tray Does Not Feed Properly](#)

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing on DVD/CDs](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > Error Message Appears on a PictBridge Compliant Device

Error Message Appears on a PictBridge Compliant Device

The following are the possible errors that may occur when printing directly from a PictBridge compliant device and the countermeasures to clear them.

Note

- For the errors indicated on the PictBridge compliant device and their solution, also refer to the instruction manual of the device. For other troubles on the device, contact the manufacturer.

Error Message On PictBridge Compliant Device	Action
"No paper"	See Cannot Print on DVD/CDs and take the appropriate action.
"Paper Error"	See Cannot Print on DVD/CDs and take the appropriate action.

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device

Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device

➔ [Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device](#)

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device](#) > [Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device](#)

Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device

➔ [Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device](#)

➔ [About PictBridge Print Settings](#)

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device > Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device > Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device

Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device

You can connect a PictBridge compliant device such as a digital camera, camcorder, or mobile phone using a USB cable recommended by the device's manufacturer, and print recorded images directly without using a computer.

Note

- When printing photos with the PictBridge compliant device connected to the printer, we recommend the use of the AC adapter supplied with the device. If you are using the device battery, be sure to charge it fully.
- Depending on the model or brand of your device, you may have to select a print mode compliant with PictBridge before connecting the device. You may also have to turn on the device or select Play mode manually after connecting the device to the printer.
Perform necessary operations on the PictBridge compliant device before connecting it to this printer according to instructions given in the device's instruction manual.

1. Make sure that the printer is turned on.
2. Load paper.
3. Make sure that the PictBridge compliant device is turned off.
4. Connect the PictBridge compliant device to the printer using a USB cable (A) recommended by the manufacturer of the device.

The PictBridge compliant device turns on automatically.

If your device does not turn on automatically, turn it on manually.

☞ will appear on the LCD of the device when the printer is correctly connected.



5. Specify the print settings such as paper type and layout.

You can perform settings using the menu on the LCD of your PictBridge compliant device. Select the

size and type of paper that you loaded in the printer.

[➔ Settings on a PictBridge Compliant Device](#)

6. Start printing from your PictBridge compliant device.



Important

- Never disconnect the USB cable during printing unless when explicitly allowed to by the PictBridge compliant device. When disconnecting the USB cable between the PictBridge compliant device and printer, follow the instructions given in the device's instruction manual.

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device > Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device > About PictBridge Print Settings

About PictBridge Print Settings

Settings on a PictBridge Compliant Device

This section describes the PictBridge function of the printer. For the print settings on a PictBridge compliant device, refer to the instructions given in the device's instruction manual.



Note

- In the following description, names of setting items are given according to those used in Canon-brand PictBridge compliant devices. Setting item names may be different depending on the brand or model of your device.
- Some setting items explained below may not be available on some devices. When you cannot change print settings on a device, the printer prints images as follows:
 Paper size: 4" x 6"/101.6 x 152.4 mm
 Paper type: Photo
 Layout: 1-up, Borderless
 Date/File No. Print: Not printed
 Image Optimize: The Photo optimizer pro function will be used for optimized printing.

The following sizes and types of printing paper can be used when printing from a PictBridge compliant device.

Paper size	4" x 6"/10 x 15 cm, 5" x 7"*1, 8" x 10"/ 20 x 25 cm, A4, 8.5" x 11"(Letter), 4" x 7.1"/ 10.1 x 18 cm*2 *1 Can be selected only on certain Canon-brand PictBridge compliant devices. (May not be selected depending on the device.) *2 Hi Vision may appear on a non-Canon brand PictBridge compliant device.
Paper type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Default: Photo Paper Plus Glossy II PP-201 ● Photo: Photo Paper Plus Glossy II PP-201*1/Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" GP-501/Photo Paper Glossy GP-502/Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss SG-201/Photo Stickers* * When printing on sticker paper, select 10 x 15 cm/4" x 6" in Paper size. Do not set Layout to Borderless. ● Fast Photo: Photo Paper Pro PR-201 ● Plain: A4/Letter When Paper type is set to Plain, borderless printing will be disabled even when Layout is set to Borderless.
Layout	Default (Borderless), Index, Bordered, Borderless, N-up (2, 4, 9, 16)*1, 20-up*2, 35-up*3 *1 Layout compatible with A4-sized paper and Canon-brand sticker above. A4: 4-up Photo Stickers: 2-up, 4-up, 9-up, 16-up. *2 With a Canon brand PictBridge compliant device, selecting items with "i" mark allows you to print shooting info (Exif Data) in list format (20-up) or on the margins of the specified data (1-up). (May not be available with some Canon-brand PictBridge compliant devices.) *3 Printed in 35 mm Film Style Layout (Contact Printing Layout). Available only with a Canon-brand PictBridge compliant device. (May not be available with some Canon-brand PictBridge compliant devices.)
Print date & file no.	Default (Off: No printing), Date, File No., Both, Off
Image optimize	Default *1*2, On (Exif Print), Off, NR (Noise Reduction)*2, VIVID*2, Face*2, Red-Eye*2 *1 Photos are optimized for printing using the Photo optimizer pro function. *2 Can be selected only on certain Canon-brand PictBridge compliant devices. (May not be selected depending on the device.)
Trimming	Default (Off: No trimming), On (follow camera's setting), Off

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Maintenance

Maintenance

- ➔ [Cleaning Your Printer](#)
- ➔ [Performing Maintenance from a Computer](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Maintenance](#) > [Cleaning Your Printer](#)

Cleaning Your Printer

- ➔ [Cleaning](#)
- ➔ [Cleaning the Exterior of the Printer](#)
- ➔ [Cleaning the Protrusions Inside the Printer](#)

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Maintenance](#) > [Cleaning Your Printer](#) > [Cleaning](#)

Cleaning

This section describes the cleaning procedure that is needed to maintain your printer.

Caution

- Do not use tissue paper, paper towels, rough-textured cloth, or similar materials for cleaning so as not to scratch the surface. Paper tissue powders or fine threads may remain inside the printer and cause problems such as Print Head blockage and poor printing results. Be sure to use a soft cloth.
 - Never use volatile liquids such as thinners, benzene, acetone, or any other chemical cleaner to clean the printer, as this may cause a malfunction or damage the printer's surface.
-

[➔ Cleaning the Exterior of the Printer](#)

[➔ Cleaning the Protrusions Inside the Printer](#)

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Maintenance](#) > [Cleaning Your Printer](#) > [Cleaning the Exterior of the Printer](#)

Cleaning the Exterior of the Printer

Be sure to use a soft cloth such as eyeglasses cleaning cloth and wipe off dirt on the surface gently. Smooth out wrinkles on the cloth if necessary before cleaning.

Caution

- Be sure to turn off the power and disconnect the power plug before cleaning the printer.
 - Do not use tissue paper, paper towels, rough-textured cloth, or similar materials, as this may scratch the surface.
-

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Maintenance > Cleaning Your Printer > Cleaning the Protrusions Inside the Printer

Cleaning the Protrusions Inside the Printer

If protrusions inside the printer are stained, wipe off any ink from the protrusions using a cotton swab or the like.

Caution

- Be sure to turn off the power and disconnect the power plug before cleaning the printer.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Maintenance > Performing Maintenance from a Computer

Performing Maintenance from a Computer

- ➔ [Cleaning the Print Heads](#)
- ➔ [Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers](#)
- ➔ [Aligning the Print Head Position](#)
- ➔ [Manual Print Head Alignment](#)
- ➔ [Checking the Print Head Nozzles](#)
- ➔ [Cleaning Inside the Printer](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Maintenance > Performing Maintenance from a Computer > Cleaning the Print Heads

Cleaning the Print Heads

The print head cleaning function allows you to remove any blockages in the print head nozzles. Perform print head cleaning if printing is faint or a specific color fails to print, even though there is enough ink.

The procedure for cleaning the print heads is as follows:



Cleaning

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Click Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

The Print Head Cleaning dialog box opens. Follow the instruction shown in the dialog box. Click Initial Check Items to display the items you need to check before performing Cleaning.

3. Execute cleaning

Make sure that the printer is on and then click Execute.
Print head cleaning starts.

4. Complete cleaning

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.
Next, the Nozzle Check dialog box opens.

5. Check the results

To check whether the print quality has improved, click Print Check Pattern. To cancel the check process, click Cancel.

If cleaning the head once does not resolve the print head problem, clean it once more.



Deep Cleaning

Deep Cleaning is more thorough than Cleaning. Perform deep cleaning when two cleaning attempts do not resolve the print head problem.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Click Deep Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

The Deep Cleaning dialog box opens. Follow the instruction shown in the dialog box. Click Initial Check Items to display the items you need to check before performing Deep Cleaning.

3. Make sure that the printer is on and then click Execute.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.
Print head deep cleaning starts.

 **Important**

- Cleaning consumes a small amount of ink. Deep Cleaning consumes a larger amount of ink than Cleaning.
Cleaning the print heads frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Consequently, perform cleaning only when necessary.

 **Note**

- If there is no sign of improvement after Deep Cleaning, switch off the printer, wait 24 hours, and then perform Deep Cleaning again. If there is still no sign of improvement, the ink may have run out or the print head may be worn. For details on the remedial action to be taken, see "[Printer Moves But Ink Is Not Ejected](#)."
-

Related Topic

➔ [Checking the Print Head Nozzles](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Maintenance](#) > [Performing Maintenance from a Computer](#) > [Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers](#)

Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers

The feed roller cleaning function allows you to clean the paper feed roller. Perform feed roller cleaning when there are paper particles sticking to the paper feed roller and paper is not fed properly.

The procedure for cleaning the feed rollers is as follows:



Roller cleaning

1. Prepare the printer

Remove all sheets of paper from the paper source from which paper could not be properly fed.

2. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

3. Click Roller Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

The Roller Cleaning dialog box opens.

4. Select Rear Tray or Cassette, and click OK

The confirmation message appears.

5. Execute paper feed roller cleaning

Make sure that the printer is on and click OK.
Paper feed roller cleaning starts.

6. Complete paper feed roller cleaning

After the rollers have stopped, follow the instruction in the message, load three sheets of plain paper into the selected paper source of the printer, and click OK.

Paper will be ejected and feed roller cleaning will be completed.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Maintenance > Performing Maintenance from a Computer > Aligning the Print Head Position

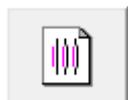
Aligning the Print Head Position

Print head alignment corrects the installation positions of the print head and improves deviated colors and lines.

This printer supports two head alignment methods: automatic head alignment and manual head alignment. Normally, the printer is set for automatic head alignment.

If the printing results are unsatisfactory even after you execute automatic head alignment, see "[Aligning the Print Head Manually](#)," and execute manual head alignment. To change to the manual head alignment, click Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab, and then check the Align heads manually check box.

The procedure for performing print head alignment is as follows:



Print Head Alignment

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Click Print Head Alignment on the Maintenance tab

The Start Print Head Alignment dialog box opens.

3. Load paper in the printer

Load a sheet of A4 size or Letter size Matte Photo Paper (MP-101) into the rear tray.



Note

- The type of media and number of sheets to be used differ if you select the manual head alignment.

4. Execute head alignment

Make sure that the printer is on and click Align Print Head.

Follow the instruction in the message.



Note

- To check the current setting before you adjust the print head position, click Print Alignment Value.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Maintenance > Performing Maintenance from a Computer > Manual Print Head Alignment

Manual Print Head Alignment

This section describes how to align the Print Head manually.

If the results of Automatic Print Head Alignment are not satisfactory, follow the procedure below to perform Manual Print Head Alignment to precisely align the Print Head.

For details on performing Automatic Print Head Alignment, see [Routine Maintenance](#).



Note

- Close the Inner Cover if it is opened.
- The print head alignment pattern is printed in black and blue only.



1. Make sure that the printer is turned on.
2. Load three sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette.
3. Open the Paper Output Tray and extend the Output Tray Extension.
4. Print the pattern.
 1. Open the printer properties dialog box.
→ [Open the Printer Properties Dialog Box through the Start Menu](#)
 2. Click the Maintenance tab, then Custom Settings.
 3. Select the Align heads manually check box, then click Send.
 4. Confirm the displayed message and click OK.
 5. In the Maintenance sheet click Print Head Alignment.
 6. Confirm the displayed message and click Align Print Head.



Important

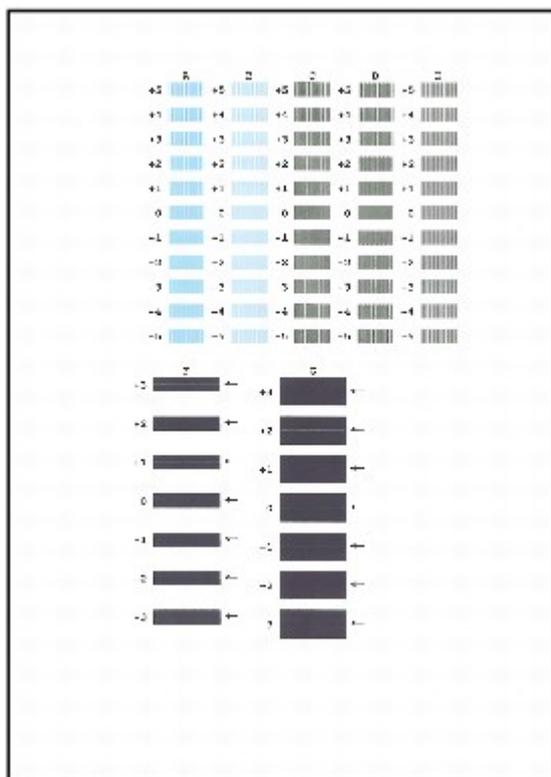
- Do not open the Top Cover while printing is in progress.



Note

- Clicking Print Alignment Value prints the current settings and finishes Print Head Alignment.

7. After the pattern is printed, click Yes.
The dialog for entering a print head alignment value is displayed.
5. Look at the first printout and adjust the print head position.
 1. Check the printed patterns and select the number of the pattern in column A that has the least noticeable vertical streaks.



 **Note**

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable vertical white streaks.



- (A) Less noticeable vertical white streaks
 (B) More noticeable vertical white streaks

2. Repeat the procedure until you finish inputting the pattern number for column G, then click OK. For column F and G, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable horizontal streaks.

 **Note**

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable horizontal white streaks.



- (C) Less noticeable horizontal white streaks
 (D) More noticeable horizontal white streaks

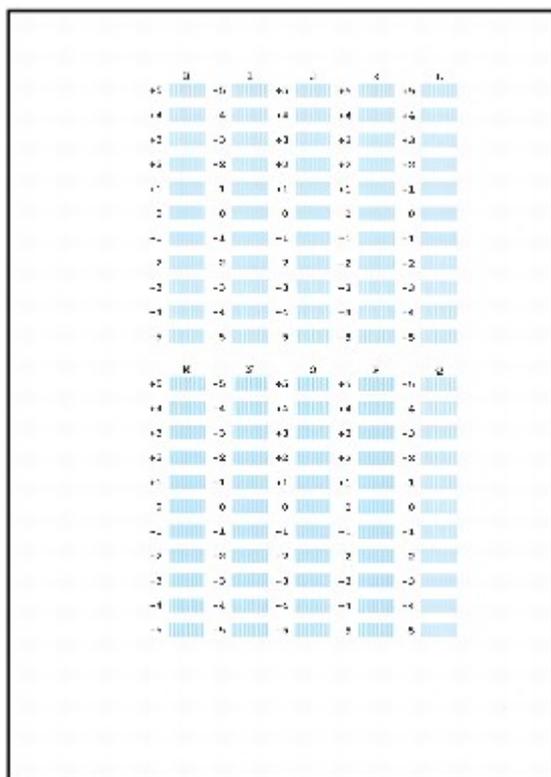
3. Confirm the displayed message and click OK. The second pattern is printed.

 **Important**

- Do not open the Top Cover while printing is in progress.

6. Look at the second printout and adjust the print head position.

1. Check the printed patterns and select the number of the pattern in column H that has the least noticeable vertical streaks.



 **Note**

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable vertical white streaks.



- (E) Less noticeable vertical white streaks
 (F) More noticeable vertical white streaks

2. Repeat the procedure until you finish inputting the pattern number for column Q, then click OK.
3. Confirm the displayed message and click OK.

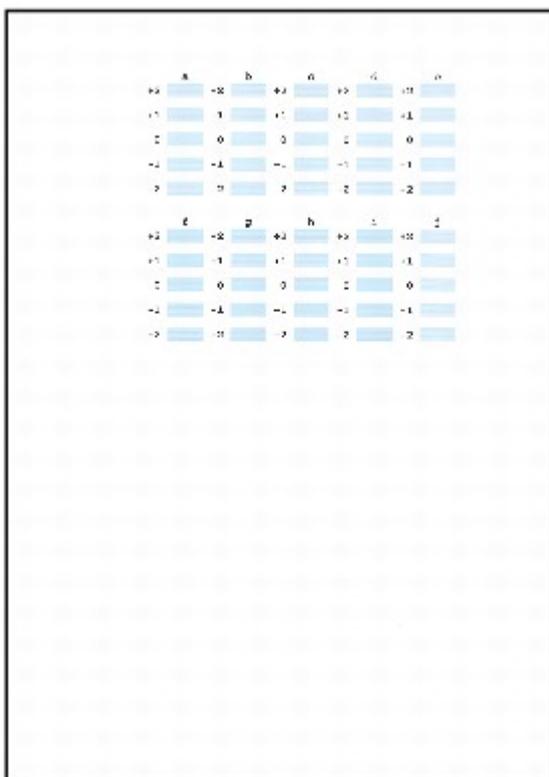
The third pattern is printed.

 **Important**

- Do not open the Top Cover while printing is in progress.

7. Look at the third printout and adjust the print head position.

1. Check the printed patterns and select the number of the pattern in column a that has the least noticeable horizontal streaks.



 **Note**

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable horizontal streaks.



(G) Less noticeable horizontal white streaks

(H) More noticeable horizontal white streaks

2. Repeat the procedure until you finish inputting the pattern number for column j, then click OK.
3. Confirm the displayed message and click OK.

Macintosh

1. Make sure that the printer is turned on.
2. Load four sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette.
3. Open the Paper Output Tray and extend the Output Tray Extension.
4. Print the pattern.
5. Open the Canon IJ Printer Utility dialog box.
 - ➔ **Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility (Macintosh)**
 1. Select Custom Settings in the pop-up menu.
 2. Select the Align heads manually check box, then click Send.
 3. Confirm the displayed message and click OK.
 4. Select Test Print in the pop-up menu.
 5. Click Print Head Alignment.
 6. Confirm the displayed message and click Align Print Head.
The dialog for entering a print head alignment value is displayed.

 **Important**

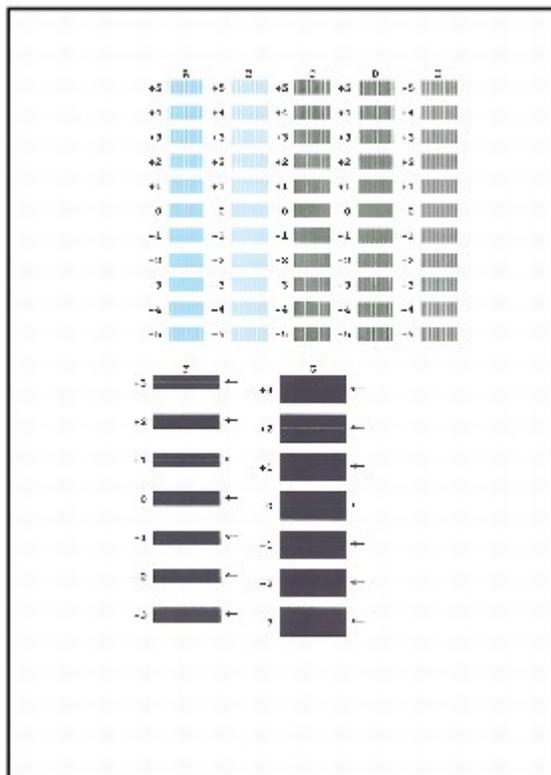
- Do not open the Top Cover while printing is in progress.

 **Note**

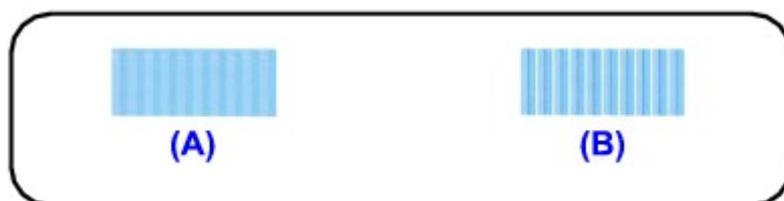
- Clicking Print Alignment Value prints the current settings and finishes Print Head Alignment.

6. Look at the first printout and adjust the print head position.

- Check the printed patterns and select the number of the pattern in column A that has the least noticeable vertical streaks.


 **Note**

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable vertical white streaks.



- (A) Less noticeable vertical white streaks
 (B) More noticeable vertical white streaks

- Repeat the procedure until you finish inputting the pattern number for column G, then click Send.

For column F and G, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable horizontal streaks.

 **Note**

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable horizontal white streaks.



(C) Less noticeable horizontal white streaks

(D) More noticeable horizontal white streaks

3. Confirm the displayed message and click OK.

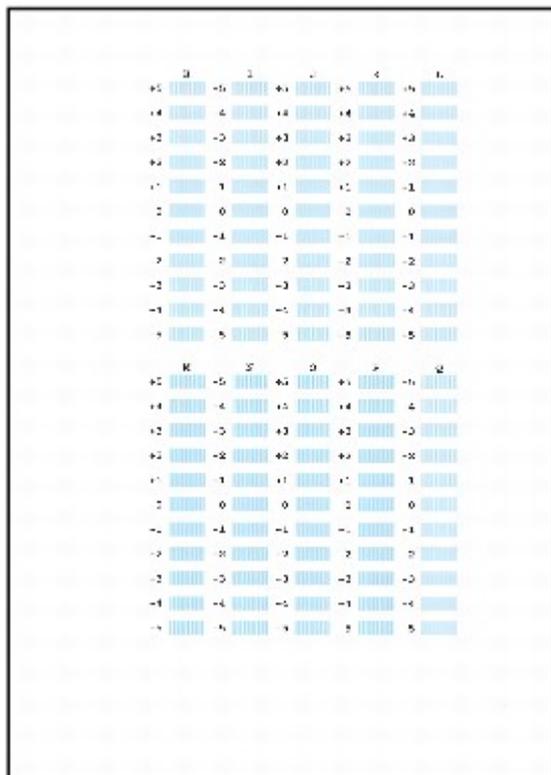
The second pattern is printed.

**Important**

- Do not open the Top Cover while printing is in progress.

7. Look at the second printout and adjust the print head position.

1. Check the printed patterns and select the number of the pattern in column H that has the least noticeable vertical streaks.

**Note**

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable vertical white streaks.



(E) Less noticeable vertical white streaks

(F) More noticeable vertical white streaks

2. Repeat the procedure until you finish inputting the pattern number for column Q, then click Send.
3. Confirm the displayed message and click OK.

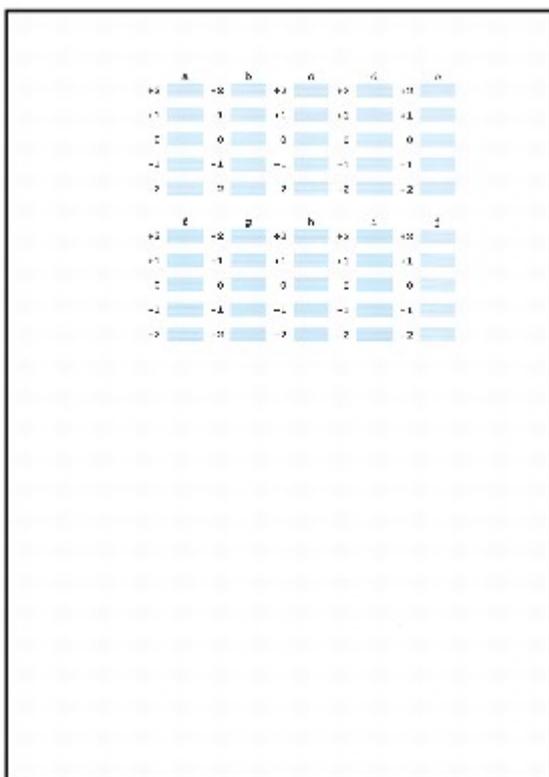
The third pattern is printed.

**Important**

- Do not open the Top Cover while printing is in progress.

8. Look at the third printout and adjust the print head position.

1. Check the printed patterns and select the number of the pattern in column a that has the least noticeable horizontal streaks.



 **Note**

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable horizontal streaks.



- (G) Less noticeable horizontal white streaks
 (H) More noticeable horizontal white streaks

2. Repeat the procedure until you finish inputting the pattern number for column j, then click Send.

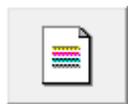
Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Maintenance](#) > [Performing Maintenance from a Computer](#) > [Checking the Print Head Nozzles](#)

Checking the Print Head Nozzles

The nozzle check function allows you to check whether the print heads are working properly by printing a nozzle check pattern. Print the pattern if printing becomes faint, or if a specific color fails to print.

The procedure for printing a nozzle check pattern is as follows:



Nozzle Check

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Click Nozzle Check on the Maintenance tab

The Nozzle Check dialog box opens.

To display a list of items that you should check before printing the check pattern, click Initial Check Items.

3. Load paper in the printer

Load a sheet of A4 size or Letter size plain paper into the cassette.

4. Print a nozzle check pattern

Make sure that the printer is on and click Print Check Pattern.

The nozzle check pattern is printed.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

The Pattern Check dialog box opens.

5. Check the print result

Check the print result. If the print result is normal, click Exit.

If the print result is smudged or if there are any unprinted sections, click Cleaning to clean the print head.

Related Topic

➔ [Cleaning the Print Heads](#)

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Maintenance](#) > [Performing Maintenance from a Computer](#) > [Cleaning Inside the Printer](#)

Cleaning Inside the Printer

The bottom plate cleaning function allows you to prevent smudges on the reverse side of a sheet of paper. Perform bottom plate cleaning before you perform duplex printing. Also perform bottom plate cleaning if ink smudges caused by something other than print data appear on the printed page.

The procedure for performing bottom plate cleaning is as follows:



Bottom Plate Cleaning

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Click Bottom Plate Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

The Bottom Plate Cleaning dialog box opens.

3. Load paper in the printer

As instructed in the dialog box, fold the A4 size or Letter size plain paper in half horizontally, and then unfold the sheet.

Load the paper into the rear tray in the portrait orientation with the crest of the crease facing down.

4. Perform the bottom plate cleaning

Make sure that the printer is on and click Execute. Bottom plate cleaning starts.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Changing the Printer Settings

Changing the Printer Settings

➔ Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer

[Page top ↕](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Changing the Printer Settings > Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer

Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer

- ➔ [Changing the Print Options](#)
- ➔ [Saving a Changed Printing Profile](#)
- ➔ [Setting the Paper Source for Plain Paper](#)
- ➔ [Managing the Printer Power](#)
- ➔ [Reducing the Printer Noise](#)
- ➔ [Changing the Printer Operation Mode](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Changing the Printer Settings > Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer > Changing the Print Options

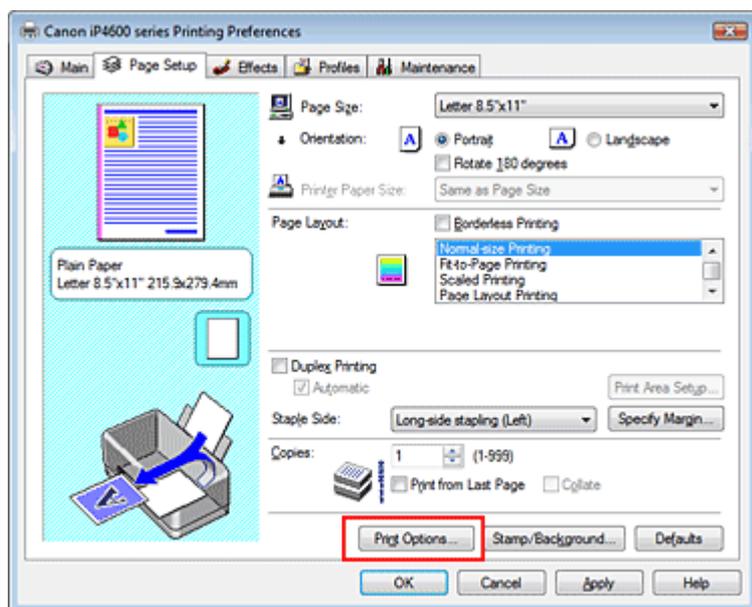
Changing the Print Options

You change detailed print driver settings for print data that is sent from an application software.

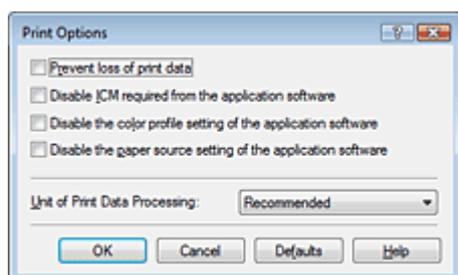
With some applications, part of the image data may be cut off, the paper source during printing may differ from the driver settings, or printing may fail. These are the only instances in which you would need to check this check box.

The procedure for changing the print options is as follows:

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Click [Print Options...](#) on the Page Setup tab



The Print Options dialog box opens.



3. Change the individual settings

If necessary, change the setting of each item, and then click OK.

The Page Setup tab is displayed again.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Changing the Printer Settings > Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer > Saving a Changed Printing Profile

Saving a Changed Printing Profile

You can assign a name to the settings made on the Main, Page Setup, and Effects tabs and save them as a printing profile. The saved printing profile can be retrieved and used from the Profiles tab at any time. Unnecessary printing profiles can be deleted at any time.

The procedure for registering a printing profile is as follows:

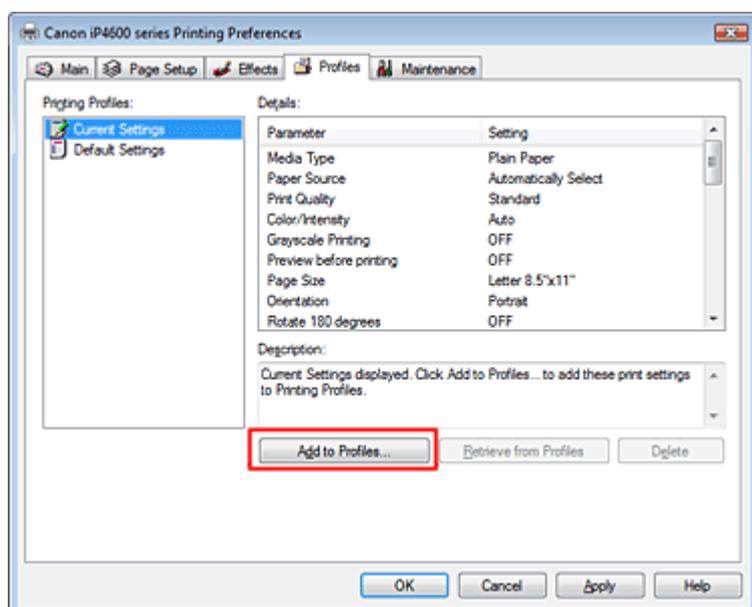
Registering a printing profile

1. Open the printer driver setup window

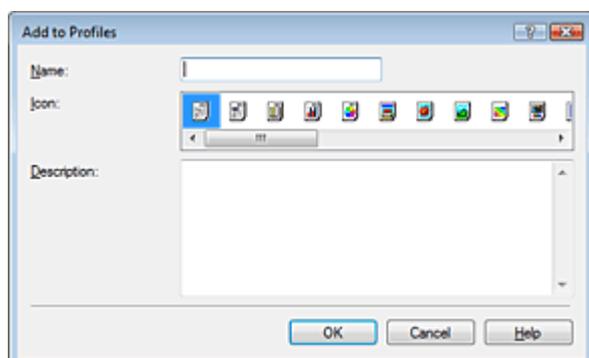
2. Set the necessary items

Make your desired settings on the Main, Page Setup, and Effects tabs.

3. On the Profiles tab, click Add to Profiles...



The Add to Profiles dialog box opens.



4. Save the settings

Set Name, Icon, and Description, then click OK.

The profile is saved and the Profiles tab is displayed again.

The name and icon are added to the Printing Profiles list.

Note

- If you install the printer driver again or upgrade the version of the printer driver, the print settings you

registered will be deleted from Printing Profiles.

Registered print settings cannot be saved and preserved. In this case, register the print settings again.

Using registered print settings

1. Select the print settings to be used

Select a printing profile in the Printing Profiles list on the Profiles tab.

The parameters and settings of the profile are displayed in the Details box.

2. Retrieve from Profiles

Click Retrieve from Profiles.

Click OK when a message appears.

Settings of the selected profile are applied to the Main, Page Setup, and Effects tabs.



Note

- If you want to revert a profile to the default settings, select Default Settings in the Printing Profiles list and click Retrieve from Profiles. Click OK on the confirmation message window. The settings which were made on the Main, Page Setup, and Effects tabs are reverted to the default settings.
-

Deleting unnecessary printing profile

1. Select the printing profile to be deleted

Select the printing profile you want to delete from the Printing Profiles list on the Profiles tab.

2. Delete the printing profile

Click Delete. When the confirmation message appears, click OK.

The selected printing profile is deleted from the Printing Profiles list.



Note

- Current Settings and Default Settings cannot be deleted.
-

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Changing the Printer Settings](#) > [Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer](#) > [Setting the Paper Source for Plain Paper](#)

Setting the Paper Source for Plain Paper

When you select Automatically Select from Paper Source, you can use the printer driver to select the paper source for plain paper.

The procedure for setting the paper source is as follows:



Paper Source Setting for Plain Paper

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Click Paper Source Setting for Plain Paper on the Maintenance tab
The Paper Source Setting for Plain Paper dialog box opens.
3. Transmit the settings
Select the paper source for plain paper, and then click the Send button.
The selected settings are enabled hereafter.

Important

- The descriptions in the printer manual assume that the plain paper is supplied from the cassette. If you change the paper source setting, replace all instances of "cassette" with the new paper source.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Changing the Printer Settings > Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer > Managing the Printer Power

Managing the Printer Power

This function allows you to manage the printer power from the printer driver.

The procedure for managing the printer power is as follows:



Power Off

The Power Off function turns off the printer. If you use this function, you will not be able to turn the printer on from the printer driver.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Execute power off

Click Power Off on the Maintenance tab. When the confirmation message appears, click OK.

The printer power switches off, and the Maintenance tab is displayed again.



Auto Power

The Auto Power Off function automatically turns off the printer when print data has not been received from the computer for a specified period of time.

The Auto Power On function automatically turns on the printer upon reception of print data.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Make sure that the printer is on and then click Auto Power on the Maintenance tab

The Auto Power Settings dialog box opens.



Note

- If the printer is off or bi-directional communication is disabled, a message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.
If this happens, click OK to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. If necessary, complete the following settings:

Auto Power On

Specifying Enable from the list will turn the printer on upon receipt of print data.

Auto Power Off

Specify time from the list. If this time lapses without any print data being received, the printer is turned off automatically.

4. Transmit the settings

Click Send. When the confirmation message appears, click OK.

The Maintenance tab is displayed again.

The Auto Power On/Off function is enabled. If you want to disable this function, select Disable from the list according to the same procedure.



Note

- When the printer is turned off, the Status Monitor message varies depending on the Auto Power On setting.
When Auto Power On is enabled, "Printer is standing by" is displayed. When Auto Power On is

disabled, "Printer is offline" is displayed.

[Page top ↑](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Changing the Printer Settings > Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer > Reducing the Printer Noise

Reducing the Printer Noise

This function allows you to reduce the operating noise of the printer. Select if you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer at night, etc.
Using this function may lower the print speed.

The procedure for changing the quiet mode settings is as follows:



Quiet Mode

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Quiet Mode on the Maintenance tab

The Quiet Mode dialog box opens.

3. Set the silent function

If necessary, specify one of the following items:

Do not use quiet mode

The operating noise of the printer is at normal volume.

Always use quiet mode

Select this option when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer.

Use quiet mode within specified time

The operating noise of the printer can be reduced during a specified period of time.
Set the Start time and End time when you wish the quiet mode to be activated.



Important

- The time specified in Start time and in End time must be different.

4. Transmit the settings

Make sure that the printer is on and click Send.
Click OK when the confirmation message appears.
The selected settings are enabled hereafter.



Note

- The effects of the quiet mode may be less depending on the paper source and the print quality settings.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Changing the Printer Settings](#) > [Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer](#) > [Changing the Printer Operation Mode](#)

Changing the Printer Operation Mode

This function allows you to switch between various modes of printer operation.

The procedure for changing the printer settings is as follows:



Custom Settings

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Make sure that the printer is on, and then click Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab

The Custom Settings dialog box opens.



Note

- If the printer is off or bi-directional communication is disabled, a message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status. If this happens, click OK to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. If necessary, complete the following settings:

Prevent paper abrasion

The printer can increase the gap between the print head and the paper during high-density printing to prevent paper abrasion.

Check this check box to use this function.

Align heads manually

The Print Head Alignment function on the Maintenance tab is normally set to automatic head alignment, but you can change it to manual head alignment. If the printing results are unsatisfactory even after you execute automatic head alignment, see "Aligning the Print Head Manually," and execute manual head alignment.

Check this check box to perform the manual head alignment.

Ink Drying Wait Time

You can set the length of the printer rest time until printing of the next page begins. Moving the slider to the right increases the pause time and moving the slider to the left decreases the time.

If the paper gets stained because the next page is ejected before the ink on the printed page dries, increase the ink drying wait time.

Reducing the ink drying wait time speeds up printing.

4. Transmit the settings

Click Send. When the confirmation message appears, click OK.

The printer runs in the changed mode hereafter.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting

- ➔ [If an Error Occurs](#)
- ➔ [The Printer Can Not Be Powered On](#)
- ➔ [Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange](#)
- ➔ [Power Lamp Flashes Green and Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange Alternately](#)
- ➔ [Cannot Install the Printer Driver](#)
- ➔ [Cannot Connect to Computer Properly](#)
- ➔ [Print Results Not Satisfactory](#)
- ➔ [Printing Does Not Start](#)
- ➔ [Printing Stops Before It Is Completed](#)
- ➔ [Printer Moves But Ink Is Not Ejected](#)
- ➔ [Printing Speed Not as Fast as Expected](#)
- ➔ [Print Head Holder Does Not Move to the Position for Replacing](#)
- ➔ [Paper Does Not Feed Properly](#)
- ➔ [Paper Does Not Feed from the Paper Source Specified in the Printer Driver](#)
- ➔ [Paper Jams](#)
- ➔ [Message Appears on the Computer Screen](#)
- ➔ [Cannot Print Properly with Automatic Duplex Printing](#)
- ➔ [For Windows Users](#)
- ➔ [Error Message Appears on a PictBridge Compliant Device](#)
- ➔ [FAQs](#)
- ➔ [If You Cannot Resolve the Problem](#)
- ➔ [Instructions for Use \(Printer Driver\)](#)

[Page top](#) ↕

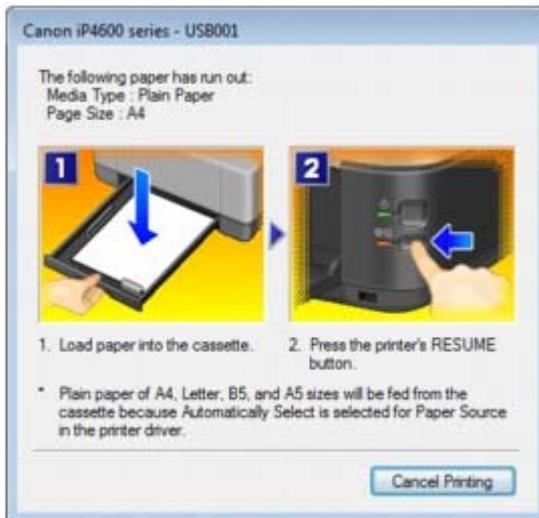
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > If an Error Occurs

If an Error Occurs

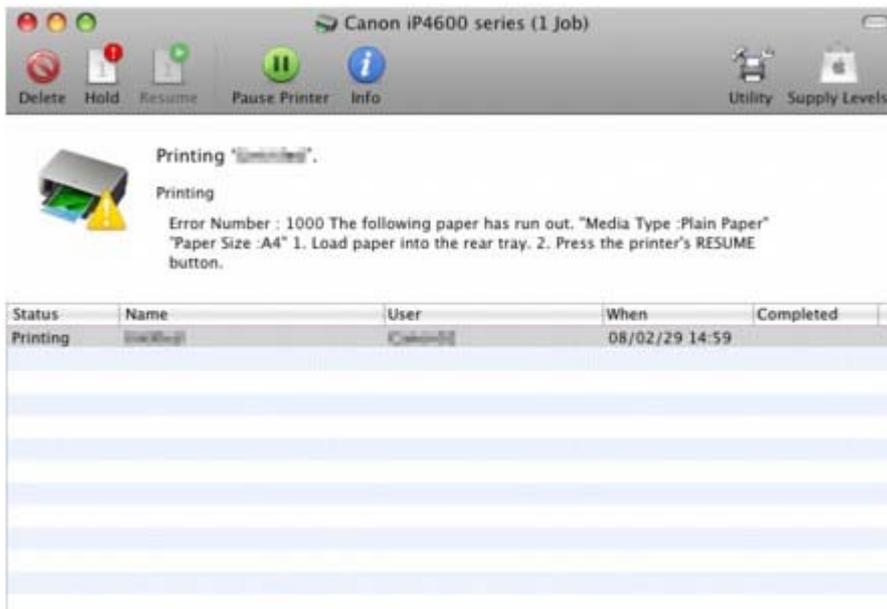
When an error occurs in printing such as the printer is out of paper or paper is jammed, a troubleshooting message is displayed automatically. Take the appropriate action described in the message. The message may vary depending on the version of your operating system.

Windows



Macintosh

- In Mac OS X v.10.5.x:



- In Mac OS X v.10.4.x or Mac OS X v.10.3.9:



Error Number : 1003
The following paper has run out.
"Media Type :Plain Paper"
"Paper Size :A4"
1. Load paper into the cassette. 2. Press the printer's RESUME button.
Plain paper of A4, Letter, B5, and A5 sizes will be fed from the cassette because [Automatically Select] is selected for [Paper Source] in the print dialog box.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [The Printer Cannot Be Powered On](#)

The Printer Cannot Be Powered On

- **Check 1: Press the Power button.**
- **Check 2: Make sure that the power plug is securely plugged into the Power Cord Connector of the printer, then turn the printer back on.**
- **Check 3: Unplug the printer from the power supply, then plug the printer back in and turn the printer back on after leaving it for at least 5 minutes.**

If the problem is not resolved, contact your Canon service representative.

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange

Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange

When a printer error occurs, the Alarm lamp flashes orange as shown below. The number of flashes indicates the type of error that has occurred. Count the flashes and take the appropriate action to correct the error.



(A) Note the number of flashes

(B) Flashes repeatedly

Number of flashes/Cause	Action
Two flashes: Printer is out of paper./Paper does not feed.	Reload paper in the Rear Tray or Cassette and press the RESUME/CANCEL button on the printer.
Three flashes: Paper Output Tray is closed./Paper jam.	If the Paper Output Tray is closed, open it. The printer resumes printing. If opening the Paper Output Tray does not resolve the problem, or if the tray was open to begin with, the paper may be jammed. Remove the jammed paper, reload paper properly in the printer, then press the RESUME/CANCEL button on the printer. ➔ Paper Jams
Four flashes: Ink tank is not installed properly./Ink may have run out.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the lamp on the ink tank is not lit, the ink tank may not be installed properly. Install an appropriate ink tank. If the lamp on the ink tank is flashing, ink may have run out. Replacing the ink tank is recommended. If printing is in progress and you want to continue printing, press the RESUME/CANCEL button with the ink tank installed. Then printing can continue. Replacing the ink tank is recommended after the printing. The printer may be damaged if printing is continued under the ink out condition. ➔ Routine Maintenance
	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p> Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If multiple ink lamps are flashing, refer to Routine Maintenance and confirm the status of each ink tank. </div>
Five flashes: Print Head is not installed./Print Head is defective.	Follow the directions given in your setup manual to install the Print Head. If the Print Head is already installed, remove the Print Head once and then reinstall it. If the error is still not resolved, the Print Head may be damaged. Contact your Canon service representative.
Six Flashes: The Inner Cover is opened.	If the Inner Cover is open when starting printing on paper, close the Inner Cover, then press the RESUME/CANCEL button on the printer.
Seven Flashes: Ink tank is not installed in the correct position.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some ink tanks are not installed in the correct position. (The lamps on the ink tanks flash.) More than one ink tanks of the same color are installed. (The lamps on the ink tanks flash.) Confirm that the ink tanks are installed in the appropriate positions. ➔ Routine Maintenance
Eight flashes: Ink absorber is almost full.	The ink absorber is becoming full. The printer has a built-in ink absorber to hold the ink used

	<p>during Print Head Cleaning. Press the RESUME/CANCEL button on the printer to cancel the error so you can continue printing. Before the ink absorber becomes completely full, contact a Canon service representative. (You will need to replace a particular part of the printer.)</p>
<p>Nine flashes: The printer has not received a response from the digital camera. The digital camera or digital video camcorder connected is not compatible with this printer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the device connected to the printer. Printing photos directly is possible only with a PictBridge compliant device. • A communication time out occurs if an operation takes too long or if it takes too much time to send data. This may cancel printing. In such cases, disconnect and reconnect the USB cable. <p>When printing from a PictBridge compliant device, depending on the model or brand of your device, you may have to select a PictBridge compliant print mode on the device before connecting it to the printer. You may also have to turn on your device or select Play mode manually after connecting the device to the printer. Perform necessary operations before connecting your device referring to its instruction manual. If the error is still not resolved, check if you can print another photograph.</p>
<p>Ten flashes: Cannot perform duplex printing.</p>	<p>The size of paper may not be compatible with automatic duplex printing. The sizes of media suitable for auto duplex printing are A4, Letter, A5, and 5" x 7". Make sure that the size of the paper loaded in the printer is correct. Pressing the RESUME/CANCEL button will eject the paper and restart printing from the front side of the next paper. The reverse side of the ejected sheet will not be printed.</p>
<p>Eleven flashes: Automatic Print Head Alignment failed.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Print Head nozzles are clogged. Press the RESUME/CANCEL button to dismiss the error, and print the nozzle check pattern to check the status of the Print Head. ➡ Routine Maintenance • Paper of size other than A4 or Letter is loaded in the Rear Tray. Press the RESUME/CANCEL button to dismiss the error, then load a sheet of supplied paper (Paper For Print Head Alignment) or A4/Letter-sized Canon Matte Photo Paper MP-101 with the printing side (whiter side) facing UP in the Rear Tray. For Automatic Print Head Alignment, always load paper on the Rear Tray. • The Paper Output Slot is exposed to strong light. Press the RESUME/CANCEL button to dismiss the error, and then adjust your operating environment and/or the position of the printer so that the Paper Output Slot is not exposed directly to strong light. <p>After carrying out the above measures, if the problem continues after aligning the Print Head again, press the RESUME/CANCEL button to dismiss the error, and then perform Manual Print Head Alignment. ➡ Manual Print Head Alignment</p>
<p>Thirteen flashes: Ink level cannot be detected.</p>	<p>The remaining ink level cannot be correctly detected. (The lamp on the ink tank flashes.) Replace the ink tank and close the Top Cover. Printing with an ink tank that was once empty may damage the printer. If you want to continue printing in this condition, you need to release the function for detecting the remaining ink level. Press and hold the RESUME/CANCEL button for at least 5 seconds, and then release it. With this operation, releasing the function for detecting the remaining ink level is memorized. Please be advised that Canon shall not be liable for any printer malfunction or</p>

	<p>damage caused by refilled ink tanks. ➔ Routine Maintenance</p> <p> Note</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If the function for detecting the remaining ink level is disabled, the ink tank is displayed in gray on the printer status monitor (Windows) and Canon IJ Printer Utility (Macintosh). ➔ Routine Maintenance <hr/>
<p>Fourteen Flashes: Ink tank cannot be recognized.</p>	<p>The ink tank is not compatible with this printer. (The lamp on the ink tank is off.) Install an appropriate ink tank. ➔ Routine Maintenance</p>
<p>Fifteen Flashes: Ink tank cannot be recognized.</p>	<p>An Ink tank error has occurred. (The lamp on the ink tank is off.) Replace the ink tank. ➔ Routine Maintenance</p>
<p>Sixteen Flashes: Ink has run out.</p>	<p>Ink has run out. (The lamp on the ink tank flashes.) Replace the ink tank and close the Top Cover. Printing under the current condition may damage the printer. If you want to continue printing in this condition, you need to release the function for detecting the remaining ink level. Press and hold the RESUME/CANCEL button for at least 5 seconds, and then release it. With this operation, releasing the function for detecting the remaining ink level is memorized. Please be advised that Canon shall not be liable for any malfunction or trouble which may be caused by continuation of printing under the ink out condition. ➔ Routine Maintenance</p> <p> Note</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If the function for detecting the remaining ink level is disabled, the ink tank is displayed in gray on the printer status monitor (Windows) and Canon IJ Printer Utility (Macintosh). ➔ Routine Maintenance <hr/>
<p>Nineteen Flashes: An unsupported USB hub is connected.</p>	<p>If a PictBridge compliant device is connected via a USB hub, remove the hub and connect it directly to the printer.</p>

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > Power Lamp Flashes Green and Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange Alternately

Power Lamp Flashes Green and Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange Alternately



A printer problem has occurred.

Disconnect the printer cable from the printer, turn the printer off, and then unplug the printer from the power supply.

Plug the printer back in and turn the printer back on.

If the problem is not resolved, contact your Canon service representative.

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Cannot Install the Printer Driver

Cannot Install the Printer Driver

- If the installation does not start even after the *Setup CD-ROM* is inserted into your computer's disc drive:

Windows

Start the installation following the procedure below.

1. Click Start then Computer.

In Windows XP, click Start then My Computer.

In Windows 2000, double-click the  My Computer icon on the desktop.

2. Double-click the  CD-ROM icon on the displayed window.

If the contents of the CD-ROM are displayed, double-click MSETUP4.EXE.

Macintosh

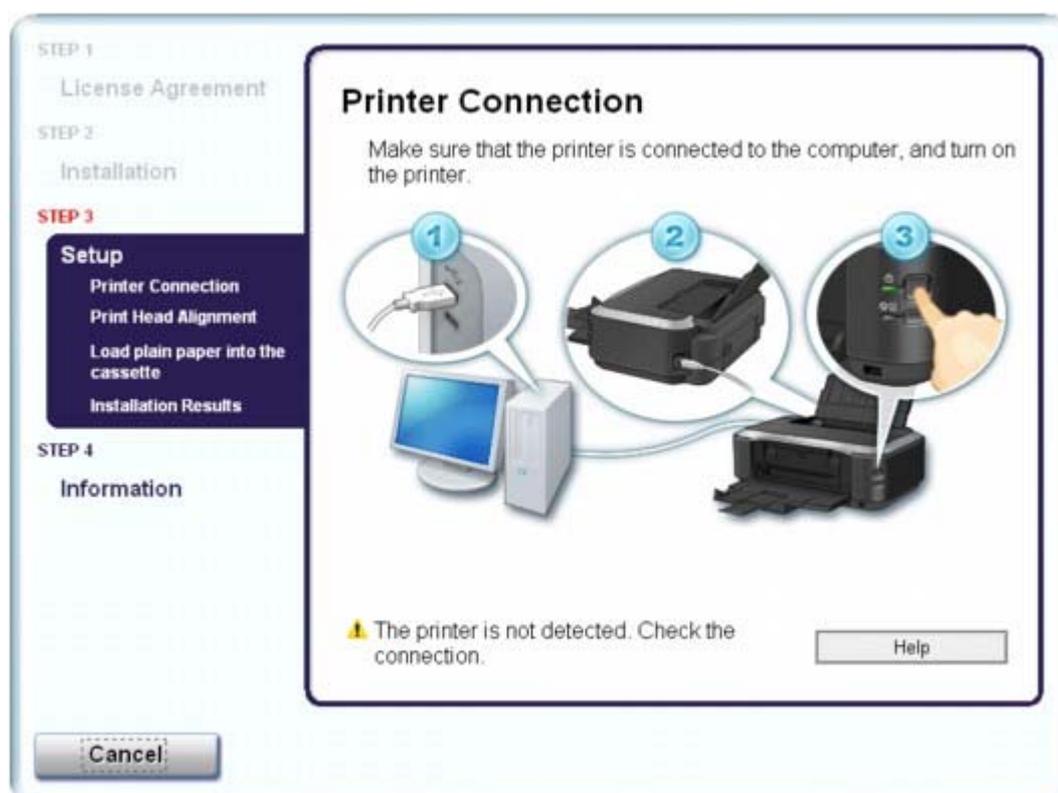
Double-click the  CD-ROM icon on your desktop to start installation.



Note

- If the CD-ROM icon is not displayed, try the followings:
 - Remove the CD-ROM from your computer, then insert it again.
 - Restart your computer.
- If the icon is still not displayed, try different discs and see if they are displayed. If other discs are displayed, there is a problem with the *Setup CD-ROM*. In this case, contact your Canon service representative.

- If you are unable to proceed beyond the Printer Connection screen:



If you are unable to proceed beyond the Printer Connection screen, make sure that the USB cable is securely plugged into the USB port of the printer and is connected to the computer, and then follow

the procedure below to reinstall the printer driver.

 **Note**

- In Windows Vista, "The printer is not detected. Check the connection." may be displayed depending on the computer you use. In this case, wait for a while. If you still cannot proceed to the next step, follow the procedure below to reinstall the printer driver.

1. Click Cancel on the Printer Connection screen.
2. Click Start Over on the Installation Failure screen.
3. Click Back on the screen that appears next.
4. Click Exit on the PIXMA XXX screen, then remove the CD-ROM.
5. Turn the printer off.
6. Restart the computer.
7. Make sure that you have no application software running.
8. Follow the procedure described in your setup manual to reinstall the printer driver.

- **In other cases:**

Follow the procedure described in your setup manual for proper installation.

If the driver was not installed correctly, uninstall the printer driver, restart your computer, then reinstall the driver.

➔ **Uninstalling the Printer Driver**

If you reinstall the printer driver, select Custom Install on the *Setup CD-ROM*.

 **Note**

- If the installer was forced to be terminated due to a Windows error, the system may be in an unstable condition and you may not be able to install the driver. Restart your computer before reinstalling.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Cannot Connect to Computer Properly

Cannot Connect to Computer Properly

Printing Speed Is Slow/Hi-Speed USB Connection Does Not Work/ "This device can perform faster" Message Is Displayed

If your system environment is not fully compatible with Hi-Speed USB, the printer will operate at a lower speed provided under USB 1.1. In this case, the printer operates properly but printing speed may slow down due to communication speed.

- **Check: Check the following to make sure that your system environment supports Hi-Speed USB connection.**
 - Does the USB port on your computer support Hi-Speed USB connection?
 - Do the USB cable, and the USB hub if you are using one, support Hi-Speed USB connection?
Be sure to use a certified Hi-Speed USB cable. We recommend that the cable is no longer than around 10 feet / 3 meters.
 - Does the operating system of your computer support Hi-Speed USB connection?
Obtain and install the latest update for your computer.
 - Does the Hi-Speed USB driver operate properly?
Obtain the latest version of the Hi-Speed USB driver compatible with your hardware and reinstall it on your computer.



Important

- For details on Hi-Speed USB of your system environment, contact the manufacturer of your computer, USB cable, or USB hub.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Print Results Not Satisfactory

Print Results Not Satisfactory

If the print result is not satisfactory due to white streaks, misaligned lines, or uneven colors, confirm the paper and print quality settings first.

- **Check 1: Do the page size and media type settings match the size and type of the loaded paper?**

When these settings are incorrect, you cannot obtain a proper print result.

If you are printing a photograph or an illustration, incorrect paper type settings may reduce the quality of the printout color.

Also, if you print with an incorrect paper type setting, the printed surface may be scratched.

In borderless printing, uneven coloring may occur depending on the combination of the paper type setting and the loaded paper.

The method to confirm the paper and print quality settings differs depending on what you do with your printer.

To print from a PictBridge compliant device	Confirm by using your PictBridge compliant device. ➔ Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device
To print from a computer	Confirm by using the printer driver. ➔ Printing with Easy Setup

- **Check2: Make sure that the appropriate print quality is selected according to the media type and printing data referring to the table in**

Check 1.

Select a print quality option suitable for the paper and image for printing. If you notice blurs or uneven colors, increase the print quality setting and try printing again.



Note

- You cannot change the print quality setting from a PictBridge compliant device.

- **Check 3: If the problem is not resolved, there may be other causes.**

See also the sections below:

- ➔ [Cannot Print to End of Job](#)
- ➔ [Part of the Page Is Not Printed](#)
- ➔ [No Printing Results/Printing Is Blurred/Colors Are Wrong/White Streaks](#)
- ➔ [Lines Are Misaligned](#)
- ➔ [Printed Paper Curls or Has Ink Blots](#)
- ➔ [Paper Is Smudged/Printed Surface Is Scratched](#)
- ➔ [Back of the Paper Is Smudged](#)
- ➔ [Vertical Lines Are Printed on the Sides of the Printout](#)
- ➔ [Colors Are Uneven or Streaked](#)

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Print Results Not Satisfactory](#) > [Cannot Print to End of Job](#)

Cannot Print to End of Job

- **Check 1: Is the size of the print data extremely large?**



Click Print Options on the Page Setup sheet. Then, select the Prevent loss of print data check box in the displayed dialog.

- **Check 2: Is the space of your computer's hard disk sufficient?**

Delete unnecessary files to free disk space.

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Print Results Not Satisfactory > Part of the Page Is Not Printed

Part of the Page Is Not Printed

- **Check: When performing automatic duplex printing, the reason below is possible.**

When performing automatic duplex printing, the printable area at the top of the page will be 0.08 inches / 2 mm narrower than the usual.

For this reason, the bottom of the page may not be printed. To prevent this, select Use reduced printing from the printer driver.

Important

- Reduced printing may affect the layout depending on your document.

Windows

1. Open the printer properties dialog box.

➔ [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#)



Click Here: [Printer Driver](#)

* Before clicking here to open the printer properties dialog box, quit the running application software.

2. Click Print Area Setup in the Page Setup sheet and select Use reduced printing.

Macintosh

1. Open the Print dialog box.

➔ [Opening the Page Setup and Print Dialog Box \(Macintosh\)](#)

2. Select Duplex Printing & Margin in the pop-up menu.

3. Select Automatic Duplex Printing.

4. Click Use reduced printing in Print Area.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Print Results Not Satisfactory > No Printing Results/Printing Is Blurred/Colors Are Wrong/White Streaks

No Printing Results/Printing Is Blurred/Colors Are Wrong/White Streaks

❖ No Printing Results



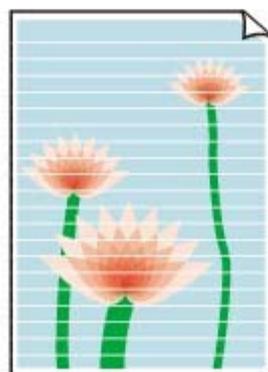
❖ Printing Is Blurred



❖ Colors Are Wrong



❖ White Streaks



- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper and print quality settings?**

➔ [Print Results Not Satisfactory](#)

- **Check 2: Check the status of ink tanks. Replace the ink tank if the ink**

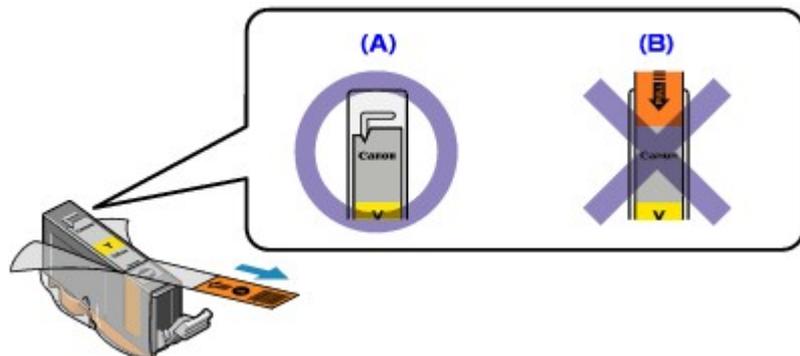
has run out.

➔ [Routine Maintenance](#)

- **Check 3: Is the orange tape or protective film remaining?**

Make sure that all of the protective film is peeled off and the air hole is exposed, as illustrated in (A).

If the orange tape is left as in (B), pull the orange tape and remove it.



- **Check 4: Print the Nozzle Check Pattern and perform any necessary maintenance operations such as Print Head Cleaning.**

Print the Nozzle Check Pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

Refer to [Routine Maintenance](#) for the Nozzle Check Pattern printing, Print Head Cleaning, and Print Head Deep Cleaning.

- If the Nozzle Check Pattern is not printed correctly:
 - Check to see if a particular color's ink tank is not empty.
 - If the Nozzle Check Pattern is not printed correctly though ink is sufficient, perform the Print Head Cleaning and try printing the Nozzle Check Pattern again.
- If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Cleaning twice:
 - Perform the Print Head Deep Cleaning.
 - If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Deep Cleaning, turn off the printer and perform another Print Head Deep Cleaning after 24 hours.
- If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Deep Cleaning twice:
 - If Print Head Deep Cleaning does not resolve the problem, the Print Head may be damaged.
 - Contact your Canon service representative.

- **Check 5: When using paper with one printable surface, make sure that the paper is loaded with the printable side facing up.**

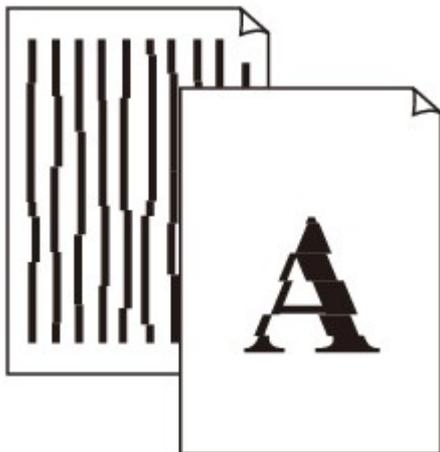
Printing on the wrong side of such paper may cause unclear prints or prints with reduced quality.

Refer to the paper's instruction manual for detailed information on the printable side.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Print Results Not Satisfactory > Lines Are Misaligned

Lines Are Misaligned



- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper and print quality settings?**

➔ [Print Results Not Satisfactory](#)

- **Check 2: Perform Print Head Alignment**

If you did not align the Print Head after installation, straight lines may be printed misaligned. Be sure to align the Print Head after you install it.

➔ [Routine Maintenance](#)



Note

- If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Alignment, perform Print Head Alignment manually referring to [Manual Print Head Alignment](#).



- **Check 3: Is the size of the print data extremely large?**

Click Print Options on the Page Setup sheet. Then, select the Prevent loss of print data check box in the displayed dialog.

- **Check 4: Is the Printing layout printing or Binding margin function being used?**

When the Printing layout printing or Binding margin function is being used, thin lines may not be printed. Try thickening the lines in the document.

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Print Results Not Satisfactory](#) > [Printed Paper Curls or Has Ink Blots](#)

Printed Paper Curls or Has Ink Blots

Printed Paper Curls



Printed Paper Has Ink Blots



- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper and print quality settings?**

➔ [Print Results Not Satisfactory](#)

- **Check 2: If the intensity is set high, reduce the Intensity setting in the printer driver and try printing again.**

If you are using plain paper to print images with high intensity, the paper may absorb too much ink and become wavy, causing paper abrasion.

Confirm the intensity using the printer driver.

➔ [Adjusting Intensity](#)

- **Check 3: Is Photo Paper being used for printing photographs?**

When printing data with high color saturation such as photographs or images in deep color, we recommend using Photo Paper Plus Glossy II or other Canon speciality paper.

➔ [Loading Paper](#)

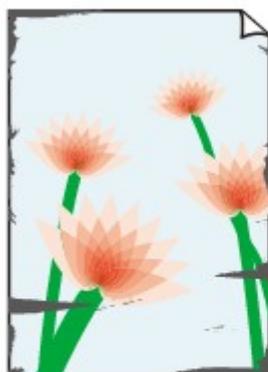
[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

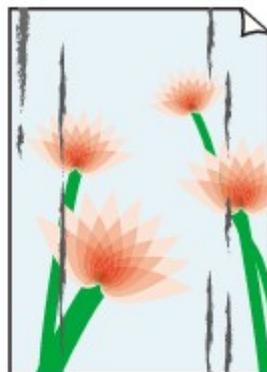
Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Print Results Not Satisfactory > Paper Is Smudged/Printed Surface Is Scratched

Paper Is Smudged/Printed Surface Is Scratched

▶ Paper Is Smudged



The Edges of Paper Are Smudged



Printed Surface Is Smudged



▶ Printed Surface Is Scratched

- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper and print quality settings?**

➔ [Print Results Not Satisfactory](#)

- **Check 2: Is the appropriate type of paper being used? Check the**

following:

- Check to see if the paper you are printing on is suitable for your printing purpose.
 - ➔ [Loading Paper](#)
- When performing Borderless Printing, make sure that the paper you are using is suitable for Borderless Printing. If the paper you are using is not suitable for Borderless Printing, the print quality may be reduced at the top and bottom edges of the paper.
 - ➔ [Printing Area](#)

- **Check 3: Load the paper after correcting its curl.**

- **For Plain Paper**

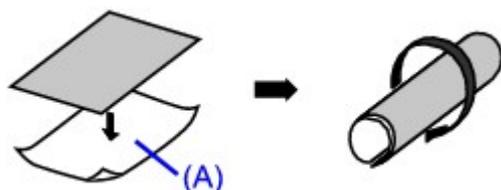
Turn the paper over and reload it to print on the other side.

Leaving the paper loaded on the Rear Tray for a long time may cause the paper to curl. In this case, load the paper with the other side facing up. It may resolve the problem.

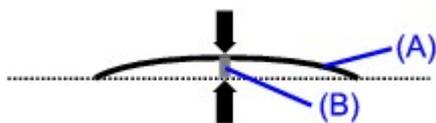
We recommend putting unused paper back into the package and keeping it on a level surface.

- **For Other Paper**

1. With the printing side (A) facing up, cover the paper with a fresh sheet of plain paper to avoid staining or scratching the surface.
2. Roll up the paper in the opposite direction to the paper curl as seen below.



3. Check to see that the paper curl is within approximately 0.08 to 0.2 inches /2 to 5 mm (B) in height.



We recommend printing curl-corrected paper one sheet at a time.



Note

- Depending on the media type, the paper may be smudged or may not be fed properly even if it is not curled. In such cases, follow the procedure described above to curl the paper before printing. This may improve the print result.

• Check 4: If you are printing on thick paper, select the Prevent paper abrasion setting.

Selecting the Prevent paper abrasion setting will widen the clearance between the Print Head and the loaded paper. If you notice abrasion even with the media type set correctly to match the loaded paper, set the printer to prevent paper abrasion by using the printer driver.

Print speed is reduced if you are selecting the Prevent paper abrasion setting.

* Deactivate the Prevent paper abrasion setting once printing is complete. If not, this setting remains enabled for all subsequent print jobs.

Windows

Open the printer properties dialog box, and in Custom Settings in the Maintenance sheet, select the Prevent paper abrasion check box, and then click Send.

To open the printer properties dialog box, see [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#).

Macintosh

In the Canon IJ Printer Utility, select Custom Settings in the pop-up menu, select the Prevent paper abrasion check box, and then click Send.

To open the Canon IJ Printer Utility, see [Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility \(Macintosh\)](#).

• Check 5: If the intensity is set high, reduce the Intensity setting in the printer driver and try printing again.

If you are using plain paper to print images with high intensity, the paper may absorb too much ink and become wavy, causing paper abrasion.

Reduce the Intensity setting in the printer driver and try printing again.

Windows

1. Open the printer properties dialog box.

➔ [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#)



Click Here: [Printer Driver](#)

* Before clicking here to open the printer properties dialog box, quit the running application software.

2. On the Main sheet, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and then click Set.

3. Drag the Intensity slide bar on the Color Adjustment sheet to adjust the intensity.

Macintosh

1. Open the Print dialog box.

➔ [Opening the Page Setup and Print Dialog Box \(Macintosh\)](#)

2. Select Color Options in the pop-up menu.

3. Drag the Intensity slide bar to set the intensity.

• Check 6: Is printing performed beyond the recommended printing area?

If you are printing beyond the recommended printing area of your printing paper, the lower edge of

the paper may become stained with ink.

Resize your original document in your application software.

➔ [Printing Area](#)

• **Check 7: Is the Paper Feed Roller dirty?**

Clean the Paper Feed Roller.

➔ [Routine Maintenance](#)



Note

- Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller will wear the roller, so perform this procedure only when necessary.

• **Check 8: Is inside of the printer dirty?**

When performing duplex printing, the inside of the printer may become stained with ink, causing the printout to become smudged.

Perform the Bottom Plate Cleaning to clean the inside of the printer.

➔ [Cleaning Inside the Printer](#)



Note

- To prevent the inside of the printer from stains, set the paper size correctly.

• **Check 9: Set Ink Drying Wait Time longer.**

Doing so gives the printed surface enough time to dry so that paper smudged and scratched are prevented.



1. Make sure that the printer is turned on.
2. Open the printer properties dialog box.
➔ [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#)
3. Click the Maintenance tab and then Custom Settings.
4. Drag the Ink Drying Wait Time slide bar to set the wait time, and then click Send.
5. Confirm the message and click OK.



1. Make sure that the printer is turned on.
2. Open the Canon IJ Printer Utility.
➔ [Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility \(Macintosh\)](#)
3. Select Custom Settings in the pop-up menu.
4. Drag the Ink Drying Wait Time slide bar to set the wait time, and then click Send.
5. Confirm the message and click OK.

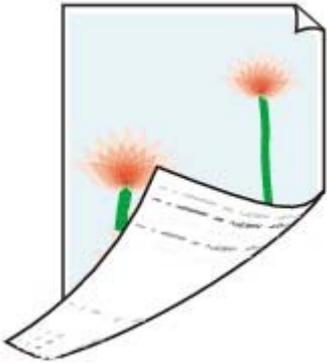
• **Check 10: Is the paper scratched by other loaded paper?**

Depending on the media type, the paper may be scratched by other loaded paper when feeding from the Rear Tray. In this case, load one sheet at a time.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Print Results Not Satisfactory > Back of the Paper Is Smudged

Back of the Paper Is Smudged



- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper and print quality settings?**
 - ➔ [Print Results Not Satisfactory](#)
- **Check 2: Perform the Bottom Plate Cleaning to clean the inside of the printer.**
 - ➔ [Cleaning Inside the Printer](#)



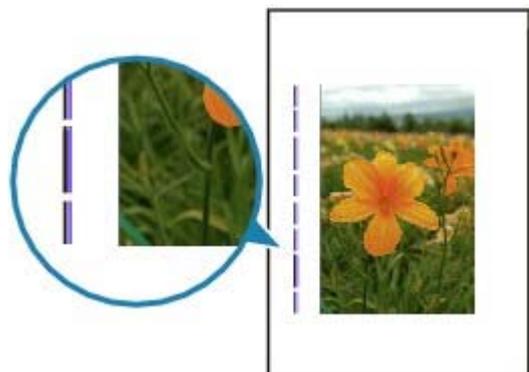
Note

- When performing duplex printing or too much printing, the inside may become stained with ink.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Print Results Not Satisfactory > Vertical Lines Are Printed on the Sides of the Printout

Vertical Lines Are Printed on the Sides of the Printout



- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper type and print quality settings?**

➔ [Print Results Not Satisfactory](#)

- **Check 2: Is the size of the loaded paper correct?**

The margin may be smudged if the size of the loaded paper is larger than that specified in the printer driver.

Set the paper size correctly according to the paper you loaded.

➔ [Print Results Not Satisfactory](#)



Note

- This printer performs automatic cleaning when necessary to keep printouts clean. A small amount of ink is ejected for cleaning. Although ink is usually ejected on the ink absorber, it may be ejected on the paper if you load paper larger than that specified with the printer driver.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Print Results Not Satisfactory > Colors Are Uneven or Streaked

Colors Are Uneven or Streaked

▣ Colors Are Uneven



▣ Colors Are Streaked



- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper and print quality settings?**

➔ [Print Results Not Satisfactory](#)

- **Check 2: Print the Nozzle Check Pattern and perform any necessary maintenance operations such as Print Head Cleaning.**

Print the Nozzle Check Pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

Refer to [Routine Maintenance](#) for the Nozzle Check Pattern printing, Print Head Cleaning, and Print Head Deep Cleaning.

- If the Nozzle Check Pattern is not printed correctly:
Check to see if a particular color's ink tank is not empty.
If the Nozzle Check Pattern is not printed correctly though ink is sufficient, perform the Print Head Cleaning and try printing the Nozzle Check Pattern again.
- If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Cleaning twice:
Perform the Print Head Deep Cleaning.
If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Deep Cleaning, turn off the printer and perform another Print Head Deep Cleaning after 24 hours.
- If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Deep Cleaning twice:
If Print Head Deep Cleaning does not resolve the problem, the Print Head may be damaged.
Contact your Canon service representative.

- **Check 3: Perform Print Head Alignment.**

➔ [Routine Maintenance](#)



Note

- If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Alignment, perform Print Head

Alignment manually referring to [Manual Print Head Alignment](#).

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Printing Does Not Start

Printing Does Not Start

- **Check 1: Make sure that the power plug is securely plugged in, then turn the printer on.**

While the **Power** lamp is flashing green, the printer is initializing. Wait until the **Power** lamp stops flashing and remains lit green.



Note

- When printing large data such as a photo or graphics, it may take longer to start printing. While the **Power** lamp is flashing green, the computer is processing data and sending them to the printer. Wait until printing starts.

- **Check 2: Check the status of ink tanks. Replace the ink tank if ink has run out.**
- **Check 3: Open the Top Cover and check to see if the ink lamps are flashing red.**

If there is still sufficient ink but its ink lamp is flashing red, an ink tank may not be installed in a right position.

➔ [Routine Maintenance](#)

- **Check 4: Open the Top Cover and make sure that the ink lamps light up red.**

If the ink lamp is not lit, press the  mark on the ink tank until it clicks into place.

- **Check 5: Make sure that the USB cable is securely plugged in to the printer and the computer, then check the following:**
 - If you are using a relay device such as a USB hub, disconnect it, connect the printer directly to the computer, and try printing again. If printing starts normally, there is a problem with the relay device. Consult the reseller of the relay device for details.
 - There could also be a problem with the USB cable. Replace the USB cable and try printing again.

- **Check 6: Restart your computer if you are printing from the computer.**

If there are any unnecessary print jobs, delete them.

➔ [Deleting the Undesired Print Job](#)

- **Check 7: Make sure that the Inner Cover is closed.**

If the Inner Cover is opened, close the Inner Cover and press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button on the printer.

- **Check 8: Make sure that your printer's name is selected in the Print dialog box.**

The printer will not print properly if you are using a driver for a different printer.

In Windows, make sure that your printer's name is selected in the Print dialog box.

On a Macintosh, make sure that your printer's name is selected in Printer in the Print dialog box.



Note

- To make the printer the one selected by default, select Set as Default Printer (Windows), Default Printer or Make Default (Macintosh).



- **Check 9: Configure the printer port appropriately.**

Configure "USBnnn" (where "n" is a number) as the printer port.

1. Log on as a user account with administrator privilege.

2. Click Control Panel, then Printer under Hardware and Sound.

In Windows XP, click Control Panel, Printers and Other Hardware, then Printers and Faxes.
In Windows 2000, click Control Panel then Printers.

3. Right-click the Canon XXX icon, then select Properties.

4. Click the Ports tab to confirm the port settings.

Make sure that a port named USBnnn (where "n" is a number) with Canon XXX appearing in the Printer column is selected for Print to the following port(s).

If the setting is incorrect, reinstall the printer driver or change the printer port to the correct one.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Printing Stops Before It Is Completed

Printing Stops Before It Is Completed

- **Check 1: Is the Inner Cover opened while printing on paper?**

Close the Inner Cover and press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button on the printer.

A page of print data being sent at the time of the error will be erased, so print that page again.

- **Check 2: Has the printer been printing continuously for a long period?**

If the printer has been printing continuously for a long time, the Print Head may overheat. To protect the Print Head, the printer may stop printing at a line break for a period of time and then resume printing.

In this case, interrupt your print session at a convenient time and turn the printer off for at least 15 minutes.

Additionally, if the printer has been printing graphics or photos with intense colors continuously over a period of time, the printer may stop printing to protect the Print Head. In this case, printing will not resume automatically. Turn the printer off for at least 15 minutes.



Caution

- The Print Head and the surrounding area can become extremely hot inside the printer. Never touch the Print Head or nearby components.

- **Check 3: Is the paper loaded?**

Make sure that paper is loaded in the Rear Tray or Cassette.

Confirm the paper source, then reload paper.

- **Check 4: Do the printing documents have lots of photographs or illustrations?**

Printing large data such as photos or graphics takes time for the printer and the computer to process, during which the printer may appear to have stopped operating.

In addition, when printing data that uses a large amount of ink continuously on plain paper, the printer may pause temporarily. In either case, wait until the process is complete.



Note

- If you are printing a document with a large printing area or printing multiple copies of a document, printing may pause to allow the ink to dry.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Printer Moves But Ink Is Not Ejected

Printer Moves But Ink Is Not Ejected

• Check 1: Are the Print Head nozzles clogged?

Print the Nozzle Check Pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

Refer to [Routine Maintenance](#) for the Nozzle Check Pattern printing, Print Head Cleaning, and Print Head Deep Cleaning.

- If the Nozzle Check Pattern is not printed correctly:
Check to see if a particular color's ink tank is not empty.
If the Nozzle Check Pattern is not printed correctly though ink is sufficient, perform the Print Head Cleaning and try printing the Nozzle Check Pattern again.
- If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Cleaning twice:
Perform the Print Head Deep Cleaning.
If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Deep Cleaning, turn off the printer and perform another Print Head Deep Cleaning after 24 hours.
- If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Deep Cleaning twice:
If Print Head Deep Cleaning does not resolve the problem, the Print Head may be damaged.
Contact your Canon service representative.

• Check 2: Has the ink run out?

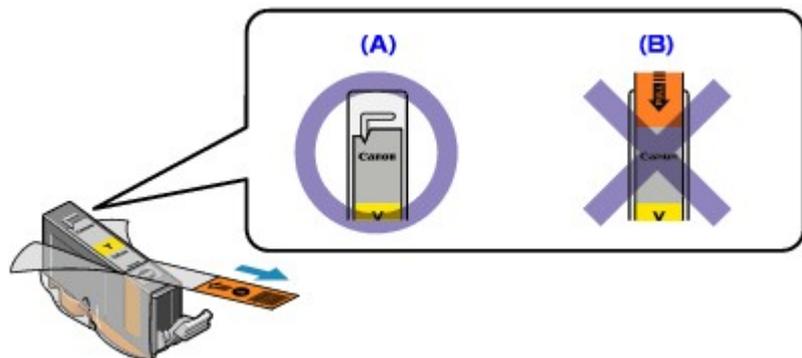
Check 2: Open the Top Cover, then check the status of ink lamp.

➔ [Routine Maintenance](#)

• Check 3: Is the orange tape or protective film remaining?

Make sure that all of the protective film is peeled off and the air hole is exposed, as illustrated in (A).

If the orange tape is left as in (B), pull the orange tape and remove it.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Printing Speed Not as Fast as Expected

Printing Speed Not as Fast as Expected

- **Check 1: Is printing performed in Quiet Mode?**

Print speed is reduced if you specified to print in Quiet Mode in the printer driver. For faster printing, do not print in Quiet Mode.

➔ [Reducing the Printer Noise](#)

- **Check 2: Is the print quality set too high?**

Increase the printing speed setting in the printer driver. Setting to prioritize speed makes printing faster.



1. Open the printer properties dialog box.

➔ [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#)



Click Here: [Printer Driver](#)

* Before clicking here to open the printer properties dialog box, quit the running application software.

2. On the Main sheet, select Fast for the Print Quality setting.

Depending on the media type, the Fast option may not be available.



1. Open the Print dialog box.

➔ [Opening the Page Setup and Print Dialog Box \(Macintosh\)](#)

2. Select Quality & Media in the pop-up menu and then select Fast for the Print Quality setting.

Depending on the media type, the Fast option may not be available.



Note

- Printing speed may not improve noticeably by following the instructions above, depending on your system environment.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Print Head Holder Does Not Move to the Position for Replacing

Print Head Holder Does Not Move to the Position for Replacing

- **Check 1: Is the Power lamp off?**

Check if the **Power** lamp is lit green.

The Print Head Holder will not move unless the power is on. If the **Power** lamp is off, close the Top Cover and turn the printer on.

While the **Power** lamp is flashing green, the printer is initializing. Wait until the **Power** lamp stops flashing and remains lit green, and then open the Top Cover again.

- **Check 2: Is the Alarm lamp flashing?**

Close the Top Cover, confirm the number of times the **Alarm** lamp is flashing, take the appropriate action to resolve the error, and then reopen it. For details on how to resolve the error, see [Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange](#).

- **Check 3: Has the Top Cover been left open for 10 minutes or longer?**

If the Top Cover is left open for more than 10 minutes, the Print Head Holder moves to the right to prevent the Print Head from drying out. Close and reopen the Top Cover to return the Print Head Holder to the center.

- **Check 4: Has the printer been printing continuously for a long period?**

If the printer has been printing continuously for a long time, close the Top Cover, wait a while, then reopen it.

If the printer has been printing continuously for a long time, the Print Head Holder may not move to the center since the Print Head may overheat.

Note

- Opening the Top Cover while printing moves the Print Head Holder to the right. Close the Top Cover, and reopen it after printing finishes.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Paper Does Not Feed Properly

Paper Does Not Feed Properly

- **Check 1: Make sure of the following when you load paper.**

- When loading two or more sheets of paper, align the edges of the sheets before loading.
- When loading two or more sheets of paper, make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the paper support load limit.
However, proper feeding of paper may not be possible at this maximum capacity depending on the type of paper or environmental conditions (either very high or low temperature and humidity). In such cases, reduce the sheets of paper you load at a time to less than half of the paper support load limit.
- Always load the paper in portrait orientation, either in the Rear Tray or the Cassette, regardless of the printing orientation.
- When you load the paper on the Rear Tray, load the paper with the print side facing UP and slide the Paper Guides to align with the both sides of the paper.
- When loading paper in the Cassette, load the paper with the print side facing DOWN. Align the right edge of the paper stack against the right edge of the Cassette and slide the Paper Guides against the left and bottom edges of the stack.

➔ [Loading Paper](#)

- **Check 2: Check to see if the paper you are printing on is too thick or curled.**

➔ [Loading Paper](#)

- **Check 3: Make sure of the following when you load envelopes.**

When printing on envelopes, refer to [Loading Paper](#), and prepare the envelopes before printing. Once you have prepared the envelopes, load them in portrait orientation. If the envelopes are placed in landscape orientation, they will not feed properly.

- **Check 4: Confirm the paper source setting.**

* If the paper source setting is not changed since you purchased this printer, the paper source for plain paper is the Cassette.

- Setting with the printer driver:
 - ➔ [Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose](#)
- For information on the paper source for plain paper when the Paper Source on the printer driver is set to Automatically Select:

➔ [Setting the Paper Source for Plain Paper](#)

- **Check 5: Remove the foreign object in the Rear Tray or Cassette.**

- **Check 6: Make sure that the Inner Cover is closed completely.**

Paper does not feed properly if the Inner Cover is even slightly open.

➔ [Overview of the Printer](#)

- **Check 7: Clean the Paper Feed Roller.**

➔ [Routine Maintenance](#)



Note

- Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller will wear the roller, so perform this procedure only when necessary.

- **Check 8: If two or more sheets of paper feed from the Cassette at once, clean the inside of the Cassette.**

For information on cleaning the inside of the Cassette, refer to [Routine Maintenance](#).

- **Check 9: Is the Rear Cover closed completely?**

Paper may be jammed if the Rear Cover is not closed completely. Push the Rear Cover until it is closed completely.

Refer to [Overview of the Printer](#) for the position of the Rear Cover.

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Paper Does Not Feed from the Paper Source Specified in the Printer Driver

Paper Does Not Feed from the Paper Source Specified in the Printer Driver



- **Check: Is the paper source setting inconsistent between the application program and the printer driver?**

Change the application software setting corresponding to the printer driver setting, or click the Print Options on the Page Setup sheet in the printer driver and select Disable the paper source setting of the application software on the Print Options screen.

When the paper source setting is inconsistent between an application program and the printer driver, the application software setting takes precedence.

➡ [Setting the Paper Source for Plain Paper](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Paper Jams

Paper Jams

Note

- If you need to turn off the printer to remove jammed paper during printing, press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button to cancel print jobs before turning off the printer.

If the paper is jammed in the Paper Output Slot or the Rear Tray:

Remove the paper following the procedure below.

- 1. Slowly pull the paper out, either from the Rear Tray or from the Paper Output Slot, whichever is easier.**



Note

- If the paper tears and a piece remains inside the printer, open the Top Cover and remove it.
Be careful not to touch the components inside the printer.
After removing all paper, close the Top Cover, turn the printer off, and turn it back on.
- If you cannot pull the paper out, turn the printer off and turn it back on. The paper may be ejected automatically.

- 2. Reload the paper, and press the RESUME/CANCEL button on the printer.**

If you turned off the printer in step 1, all print jobs in the queue are canceled. Reprint if necessary.

Note

- When reloading the paper, confirm that you are using the correct paper and are loading it correctly.
➔ **Loading Paper**
- A5-sized paper is suited to printing documents consisting mainly of text. We do not recommend using such paper to print documents with photos or graphics, since the printout may curl and cause paper exit jams.

If you cannot remove the paper or the paper tears inside the printer, or if the paper jam error continues after removing the paper, contact your Canon service representative.

If paper is jammed inside the printer at the transport unit:

Remove the paper following the procedure below.

- 1. Detach the Rear Cover.**



2. Pull the paper out slowly.



 **Note**

- Be careful not to touch the components inside the printer.
- If you cannot pull the paper out, turn the printer off and turn it back on. The paper may be ejected automatically.

3. Attach the Rear Cover.

Push the left side of the Rear Cover until it is closed completely.



If you were not able to remove the paper out in step 2:

4. Remove the Cassette.
5. Pull the paper out slowly.



6. If any paper is sticking out of the Cassette, remove the paper, align and reload the paper in the Cassette.

If you did not remove the jammed paper out in step 1 to 5 when automatic duplex printing, check the duplex transport section.

➡ If the jammed paper is not removed out when automatic duplex printing:

 **Note**

- When reloading the paper into the printer, confirm that you are using the correct paper and are loading it into the printer correctly.

➔ Loading Paper

7. Insert the Cassette into the printer again, and press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button on the printer.

If you turned off the printer in step 2, all print jobs in queue are canceled. Reprint if necessary.

If you cannot remove the paper or if the paper tears inside the printer, or if the paper jam error continues after removing the paper, contact your Canon service representative.

If the jammed paper is not removed out when automatic duplex printing:

Remove the paper following the procedure below.

1. Turn off the printer, and unplug the power cord of the printer from the power supply.

2. Remove the Cassette.

If the paper is loaded on the Rear Tray, remove the paper from the Rear Tray and retract the Paper Support.

3. Set the printer upright with the left side down.

4. Slowly pull the jammed paper out so that the paper does not tear.



Note

- Set the printer back to its original position immediately after removing the jammed paper.
-

5. Align the paper, then reload it in the Cassette.

Reload paper in the Rear Tray, if necessary.



Note

- When reloading the paper into the printer, confirm that you are using the correct paper and are loading it into the printer correctly.

➔ Loading Paper

6. Insert the Cassette into the printer again.

7. Plug the printer back in and turn the printer back on.

All print jobs in queue are canceled. Reprint if necessary.

If you cannot remove the paper or if the paper tears inside the printer, or if the paper jam error continues after removing the paper, contact your Canon service representative.

In other cases:

Make sure of the following:

- **Check 1: Are there any foreign objects in the Rear Tray or around the Paper Output Slot?**
- **Check 2: Is the Rear Cover closed completely?**
- **Check 3: Is the paper curled?**
 - ➡ Check 3: Load the paper after correcting its curl.

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Message Appears on the Computer Screen

Message Appears on the Computer Screen

- ➔ Service Error 5100 Is Displayed
- ➔ Error Regarding Automatic Duplex Printing Is Displayed
- ➔ Error Regarding Automatic Print Head Alignment Is Displayed
- ➔  Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error
- ➔  Error Number: 300 Is Displayed
- ➔  Error Number: 1700 Is Displayed
- ➔  Ink Info Number: 1600 Is Displayed
- ➔  Ink Info Number: 1683 Is Displayed
- ➔  Ink Info Number: 1688 Is Displayed
- ➔  Error Number: 1851 Is Displayed
- ➔  Error Number: 1856 Is Displayed
- ➔  Error Number: 2001 Is Displayed
- ➔  Error Number: 2002 Is Displayed
- ➔  Error Number: 2500 Is Displayed
- ➔  Other Error Messages

Service Error 5100 Is Displayed

- **Check: Is the movement of the Print Head Holder blocked?**

Cancel printing from your computer and turn off the printer. Then clear the jammed paper or protective material that is preventing the Print Head Holder from moving.

Important

- Be careful not to touch the components inside the printer. The printer may not print out properly if you touch it.

Turn the printer back on.

If the problem is not resolved, contact your Canon service representative.

Error Regarding Automatic Duplex Printing Is Displayed

- **Check: See [Cannot Print Properly with Automatic Duplex Printing](#) and take the appropriate action.**

Error Regarding Automatic Print Head Alignment Is Displayed

- **Check: See [Eleven flashes: in Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange](#) and take the appropriate action.**

Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error

- **Check 1: If the Power lamp is off, make sure that the power plug is plugged in, then turn the printer on.**

While the **Power** lamp is flashing green, the printer is initializing. Wait until the **Power** lamp stops flashing and remains lit green.

- **Check 2: Make sure that the printer port is configured appropriately in the printer**

driver.

* In the following instructions, "XXX" signifies your printer's name.

1. Log on as a user account with administrator privilege.

2. Click Control Panel, then Printer under Hardware and Sound.

In Windows XP, click Control Panel, Printers and Other Hardware, then Printers and Faxes.

In Windows 2000, click Control Panel then Printers.

3. Right-click the Canon XXX icon, then select Properties.

4. Click the Ports tab to confirm the port settings.

Make sure that a port named USBnnn (where "n" is a number) with Canon XXX appearing in the Printer column is selected for Print to the following port(s).

If the port setting is not correct, reinstall the printer driver or change the port setting according to the interface you are using.

• **Check 3: Make sure that the USB cable is securely plugged in to the printer and the computer.**

- If you are using a relay device such as a USB hub, disconnect it, connect the printer directly to the computer, and try printing again. If printing starts normally, there is a problem with the relay device. Consult the reseller of the relay device for details.
- There could also be a problem with the USB cable. Replace the USB cable and try printing again.

• **Check 4: Make sure that the printer driver is installed correctly.**

Uninstall the printer driver following the procedure described in [Uninstalling the Printer Driver](#) and reinstall it following the procedure described in your setup manual.

• **Check 5: Check the status of the device on your computer.**

Follow the procedure below to check the status of the device.

1. Click Control Panel, Hardware and Sound, then Device Manager.

If the User Account Control screen is displayed, follow the on-screen instructions.

In Windows XP, click Control Panel, Performance and Maintenance, System, then click Device Manager on the Hardware sheet.

In Windows 2000, click Control Panel, System, then Device Manager on the Hardware sheet.

2. Double-click Universal Serial Bus controllers then USB Printing Support.

If USB Printing Support is not displayed, make sure that the printer is correctly connected to the computer.

➡ [Check 3: Make sure that the USB cable is securely plugged in to the printer and the computer.](#)

3. Click the General tab and make sure that there is no indication of a problem with the device.

If a device error is displayed, refer to Windows help to resolve the error.

Error Number: 300 Is Displayed

• **Check 1: If the Power lamp is off, make sure that the power plug is plugged in, then turn the printer on.**

While the **Power** lamp is flashing green, the printer is initializing. Wait until the **Power** lamp stops flashing and remains lit green.

• **Check 2: Make sure that the USB cable is securely plugged in to the printer and the computer.**

- If you are using a relay device such as a USB hub, disconnect it, connect the printer directly to the computer, and try printing again. If printing starts normally, there is a problem with the relay device. Consult the reseller of the relay device for details.
 - There could also be a problem with the USB cable. Replace the USB cable and try printing again.
- **Check 3: Make sure that your printer's name is selected in the Print dialog box.**
- ➔ Opening the Page Setup and Print Dialog Box (Macintosh)

Macintosh Error Number: 1700 Is Displayed

- See **Eight flashes: in Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange** and take the appropriate action.

Macintosh Ink Info Number: 1600 Is Displayed

- See **Four flashes: in Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange** and take the appropriate action.

Macintosh Ink Info Number: 1683 Is Displayed

- See **Thirteen flashes: in Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange** and take the appropriate action.

Macintosh Ink Info Number: 1688 Is Displayed

- See **Sixteen Flashes: in Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange** and take the appropriate action.

Macintosh Error Number: 1851 Is Displayed

- Check: Close the Inner Cover, then press the RESUME/CANCEL button on the printer.

Macintosh Error Number: 1856 Is Displayed

- Check: Close the Inner Cover, then press the RESUME/CANCEL button on the printer.

A page of print data being sent at the time of the error will be erased, so print that page again.

Macintosh Error Number: 2001 Is Displayed

- See **Nine flashes: in Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange** and take the appropriate action.

Macintosh Error Number: 2002 Is Displayed

- See **Nineteen Flashes: in Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange** and take the appropriate action.

Macintosh Error Number: 2500 Is Displayed

- See [Eleven flashes: in Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange](#) and take the appropriate action.

Other Error Messages

- **Check: If an error message is displayed outside the printer status monitor, check the following:**
 - "Could not spool successfully due to insufficient disk space"
Delete any unnecessary files to increase the amount of free space on the disk.
 - "Could not spool successfully due to insufficient memory"
Quit other running applications to increase available memory.
If you still cannot print, restart your computer and retry printing.
 - "Printer driver could not be found"
Uninstall the printer driver according to the procedure described in [Uninstalling the Printer Driver](#), and then reinstall it.
 - "Could not print Application name - File name"
Try printing again once the current job is complete.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Cannot Print Properly with Automatic Duplex Printing

Cannot Print Properly with Automatic Duplex Printing

• Check: Is the paper size or media type appropriate?

- Make sure that the actual size of the paper is suitable for automatic duplex printing. The sizes of media suitable for automatic duplex printing are A4, Letter, A5, and 5" x 7". Load paper of suitable size, then press the **RESUME/CANCEL** button on the printer.
- Make sure that the Page Size or Paper Size setting matches the actual size of the paper with a size suitable for automatic duplex printing. First, check the Page Size setting in the application software you are printing from. Then, check the Page Size setting on the Page Setup sheet in the printer properties dialog box (Windows) or the Paper Size on the Page Setup dialog box (Macintosh).



Note

- Duplex printing may not be available depending on the version of the application software.

- Make sure that the type of loaded paper is suitable for automatic duplex printing on the Main sheet (Windows) or the Quality & Media sheet on the Print dialog box (Macintosh).

To switch to manual duplex printing, follow the procedure below.

Windows

Open the printer properties dialog box, clear the Automatic check box on the Page Setup sheet, and reprint.

When performing manual duplex printing, note the following.

- If you are printing three or more pages of a document with manual duplex printing, one side of all sheets of paper will be printed first. Turn over the paper and reload the paper in the printer, and then the reverse side of all sheets of paper will be printed. Be careful not to change the order of paper in the stack.
- The procedure for reversing the paper varies depending on the staple side and printing orientation. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Macintosh

Manual duplex printing is not available.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > For Windows Users

For Windows Users

Printer Status Monitor Is Not Displayed

- **Check: Is the printer status monitor enabled?**

Make sure that Enable Status Monitor is selected on the Option menu of the printer status monitor.

1. **Open the printer properties dialog box.**

➔ [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#)

2. **On the Maintenance sheet, click View Printer Status.**

3. **Select Enable Status Monitor on the Option menu if it is not selected.**

The Inkjet Printer/Scanner Extended Survey Program Screen Is Displayed

If the Inkjet Printer/Scanner Extended Survey Program is installed, the confirmation screen asking to send the printer usage information will be displayed three months and then six months after the installation. After that, it will be displayed every half a year for about four years.

Read the instructions on the screen and follow the procedure below.



- **If you agree to participate in the survey program:**

Click Agree, then follow the on-screen instructions. The printer usage information will be sent to Canon via the Internet.

 **Note**

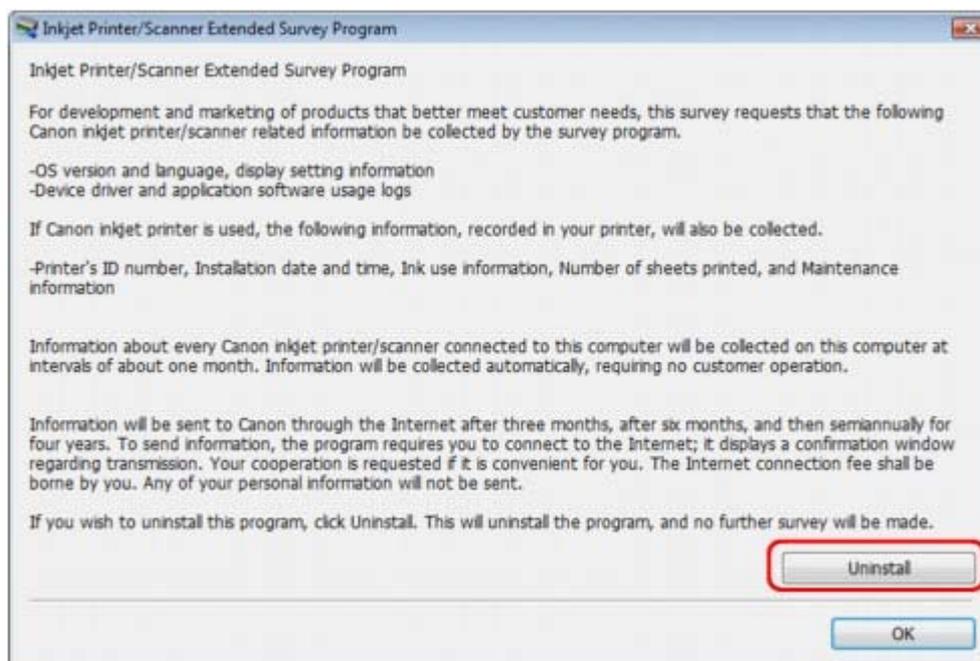
- When sending the information, the caution screen such as an Internet security screen may be displayed.
- In this case, confirm the program name is "IJPLMUI.exe", then allow it.

- **If you do not agree to participate in the survey program:**

Click Do not agree. The confirmation screen will be closed, and the survey at that time is skipped. The confirmation screen will be displayed again three months later.

- **To uninstall the Inkjet Printer/Scanner Extended Survey Program:**

To uninstall the Inkjet Printer/Scanner Extended Survey Program, click Details, then click Uninstall on the detail description screen. Once the program has been uninstalled, neither the survey nor the transmission of the printer usage information will be performed.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Error Message Appears on a PictBridge Compliant Device

Error Message Appears on a PictBridge Compliant Device

The following are the possible errors that may occur when printing directly from a PictBridge compliant device and the countermeasures to clear them.



Note

- This section describes errors that are indicated on Canon-brand PictBridge compliant devices. The error messages and operations may vary depending on the device you are using. For errors on non-Canon PictBridge compliant devices, check the status of the **Alarm** lamp and take the appropriate action to clear the error. For details, see [Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange](#).
- For the errors indicated on the PictBridge compliant device and their solution, also refer to the instruction manual of the device. For other troubles on the device, contact the manufacturer.

Error Message On PictBridge Compliant Device	Action
"Printer in use"	If the printer is printing from the computer or warming up, wait until the job ends. When it is ready, the printer starts printing automatically.
"No paper"	Load paper, and select Continue* in the display on your PictBridge compliant device. * To resume printing, you can also press the RESUME/CANCEL button on the printer instead of selecting Continue on the device.
"Paper Error"	If the Paper Output Tray is closed, open it. The printer resumes printing. If the Inner Cover is opened, close it and select Stop in the display on your PictBridge compliant device to stop printing.
"Paper jam"	Select Stop in the display on your PictBridge compliant device to stop printing. Remove the jammed paper, load new paper, press the RESUME/CANCEL button on the printer, then try printing again.
"Printer cover open"	Close the Top Cover on the printer.
"No print head"	The Print Head is defective or is not installed. See Five flashes : in Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange and take the appropriate action.
"Waste tank full"/"Ink absorber full"	The ink absorber is nearly full. See Eight flashes : in Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange and take the appropriate action.
"No ink"/ "Ink cassette error"	The ink tank is not installed properly or empty. Check the number of how many the Alarm lamp flashes and take the appropriate action to resolve the error. ➔ Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange
"Ink Error"	An ink tank that was once empty is installed. See Thirteen flashes : in Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange and take the appropriate action.
"Hardware Error"	Ink tank errors have occurred. Replace the ink tank. ➔ Routine Maintenance
"Printer error"	An error requiring servicing may have occurred. (The Power lamp flashes green and Alarm lamp flashes orange alternately.) ➔ Power Lamp Flashes Green and Alarm Lamp Flashes Orange Alternately Disconnect the USB cable between the printer and the

PictBridge compliant device, turn off the printer, and unplug the power cord of the printer from the power supply. Plug the power cord of the printer back in, turn on the printer, and then reconnect the PictBridge compliant device to the printer.
If the same error occurs, contact your Canon service representative.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > FAQs

FAQs

- ➔ No Printing Results/Printing Is Blurred/Colors Are Wrong/White Streaks
- ➔ Printer Moves But Ink Is Not Ejected
- ➔ Cannot Install the Printer Driver
- ➔ Printing Does Not Start
- ➔ Printing Stops Before It Is Completed
- ➔  Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error
- ➔ Print Results Not Satisfactory
- ➔ Paper Jams
- ➔ Paper Does Not Feed Properly

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > If You Cannot Resolve the Problem

If You Cannot Resolve the Problem

If you cannot resolve the problem with any of the workarounds in this chapter, please contact the seller of the printer or a Canon service representative.

Canon support staff are trained to be able to provide technical support to satisfy customers.

Caution

- If the printer emits any unusual sound, smoke, or odor, turn it off immediately. Unplug the power cord from the outlet and contact the seller or your Canon service representative. Never attempt to repair or disassemble the printer yourself.
 - Attempts by customers to repair or take apart the printer will invalidate any warranty regardless of whether the warranty has expired.
-

Before contacting your Canon service representative, confirm the following:

- Product name:
 - * Your printer's name is located on the front cover of the setup manual.
- Serial number: please refer to the setup manual
- Details of the problem
- What you tried to solve the problem, and what happened

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)

Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)

This printer driver is subject to the following restrictions. Keep the following points in mind when using the printer driver.

Restrictions on the Printer Driver

- Depending on the document type to be printed, the paper feed method specified in the printer driver may not operate correctly.
If this happens, open the printer driver setup screen from the Print dialog box of the application software, and check the setting in the Paper Source field on the Main tab.
- With some applications, the Copies setting in the Page Setup tab of the printer driver may not be enabled.
In this case, use the copies setting in the Print dialog box of the application software.
- If the selected Language in the About dialog box does not match the operating system interface language, the driver screen may not be displayed properly.
- Do not change the Advanced tab items of the printer properties. If you change any of the items, you will not be able to use the following functions correctly.
Also, if Print to file is selected in the Print dialog box of the application software and with applications that prohibit EMF spooling, such as Adobe Photoshop LE and MS Photo Editor, the following functions will not operate.
 - Preview before printing on the Main tab
 - Prevent loss of print data in the Print Options dialog box
 - Page Layout Printing, Poster Printing, Booklet Printing, Duplex Printing (manually), Specify Margin..., Print from Last Page, Collate, and Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab
- Since the resolution in the preview display differs from the printing resolution, text and lines in the preview display may appear different from the actual print result.
- With some applications, the printing is divided into multiple print jobs.
To cancel printing, delete all divided print jobs.
- If image data is not printed correctly, display the Print Options dialog box from the Page Setup tab and change the setting of Disable ICM required from the application software. This may solve the problem.
- Software windows may not appear correctly on Windows Vista when fonts are set to Larger scale. If you want to display the windows with Larger scale fonts, set the desktop theme to Windows Classic as follows:
 1. Select Control Panel from the Start menu.
 2. Select Appearance and Personalization -> Personalization -> Theme.
The Theme Settings dialog box opens.
 3. At the Theme Settings dialog box, click the Themes tab, and select Windows Classic from Theme.
 4. Click OK.
Desktop changes to Windows Classic display.

Points to Note with Applications

- There are following restrictions in Microsoft Word (Microsoft Corporation).
 - If Microsoft Word has the same printing functions as the printer driver, use Word to specify them.
 - When selecting Scaled Printing, Fit-to-Page Printing, or Page Layout Printing from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab, the selected printing function may not be effective, depending on the version of Word.
If this happens, follow the procedure below.
 1. Open Word's Print dialog box.
 2. Open the printer driver setup window, specify Page Layout on the Page Setup tab, and click OK.
 3. Without starting printing, close the Print dialog box.
 4. Open Word's Print dialog box again.
 5. Open the printer driver setup window again and click OK.
 6. Start printing.

- Illustrator/Adobe Systems Inc.
If Bitmap Printing takes effect, printing may take time or some data may not be printed. Print after clearing the Bitmap Printing check box in the Print dialog box.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix

Appendix

- ➔ [Printing Area](#)
- ➔ [Deleting the Undesired Print Job](#)
- ➔ [Updating the Printer Driver](#)
- ➔ [Uninstalling the On-Screen Manuals](#)
- ➔ [Transporting the Printer](#)
- ➔ [Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box \(Windows\)](#)
- ➔ [Opening the Page Setup and Print Dialog Box \(Macintosh\)](#)
- ➔ [Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility \(Macintosh\)](#)
- ➔ [Connecting the Printer to the Network](#)

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Printing Area

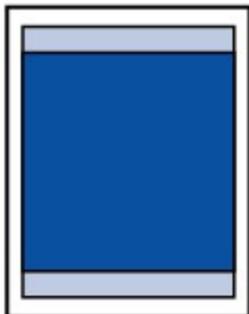
Printing Area

To ensure the best print quality, the printer allows a margin along each edge of media. The actual printable area will be the area inside these margins.

Recommended printing area : Canon recommends that you print within this area.

Printable area : The area where it is possible to print.

However, printing in this area can affect the print quality or the paper feed precision.



Note

■ Borderless Printing

- By selecting Borderless Printing option, you can make prints with no margins.
- When performing Borderless Printing, slight cropping may occur at the edges since the printed image is enlarged to fill the whole page.

For Borderless Printing, use the following paper.

- Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" GP-501
- Photo Paper Glossy GP-502
- Photo Paper Plus Semi-Gloss SG-201
- Photo Paper Pro Platinum PT-101
- Photo Paper Plus Glossy II PP-201
- Photo Paper Pro II PR-201
- Matte Photo Paper MP-101

Performing Borderless Printing on any other type of paper may substantially reduce printing quality and/or result in printouts with altered color hues.

Borderless Printing on plain paper may result in printouts with reduced quality. Use them only for test printing. You can perform Borderless Printing on plain paper only when printing from your computer.

- Depending on the type of paper, Borderless Printing may reduce the print quality at the top and bottom edges of the paper or cause these parts to become smudged.
- When performing Automatic Duplex Printing, the printable area will be 0.08 inches / 2 mm smaller at the top margin.

➔ Letter, Legal

➔ Envelopes

➔ Other Sizes than Letter, Legal, Envelopes

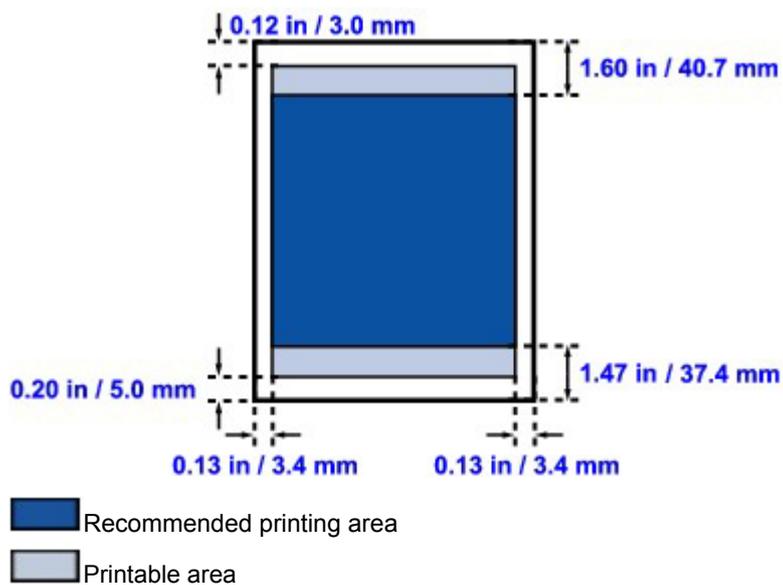
Page top 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Printing Area > Other Sizes than Letter, Legal, Envelopes

Other Sizes than Letter, Legal, Envelopes

Size	Printable Area (width x height)
A5	5.56 x 7.95 inches / 141.2 x 202.0 mm
A4	8.00 x 11.38 inches / 203.2 x 289.0 mm
B5	6.90 x 9.80 inches / 175.2 x 249.0 mm
4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm	3.73 x 5.69 inches / 94.8 x 144.4 mm
4" x 8" / 10 x 20 cm	3.73 x 7.69 inches / 94.8 x 195.2 mm
5" x 7" / 13 x 18 cm	4.73 x 6.69 inches / 120.2 x 169.8 mm
8" x 10" / 20 x 25 cm	7.73 x 9.69 inches / 196.4 x 246.0 mm
Wide	3.73 x 6.80 inches / 94.8 x 172.6 mm

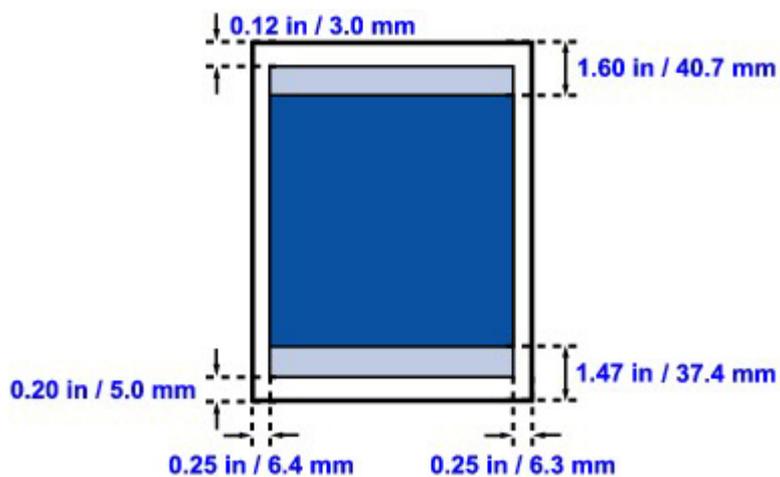


Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Printing Area > Letter, Legal

Letter, Legal

Size	Printable Area (width x height)
Letter	8.00 x 10.69 inches / 203.2 x 271.4 mm
Legal	8.00 x 13.69 inches / 203.2 x 347.6 mm



 Recommended printing area

 Printable area

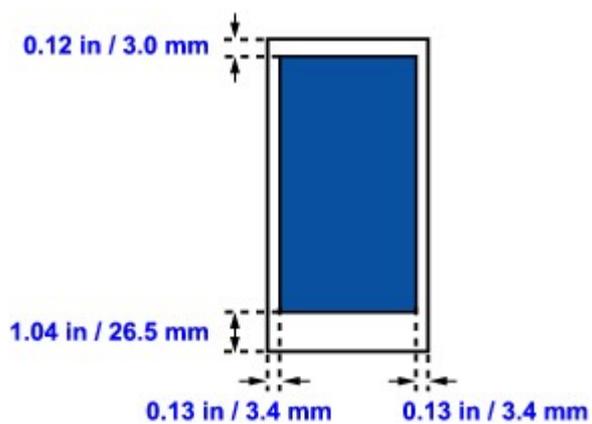
[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Printing Area > Envelopes

Envelopes

Size	Recommended Printing Area (width x height)
European DL*	4.06 x 7.50 inches / 103.2 x 190.5 mm
US Comm. Env. #10*	3.86 x 8.34 inches / 98.0 x 211.8 mm



 Recommended printing area

[Page top ↕](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Deleting the Undesired Print Job

Deleting the Undesired Print Job

If the printer does not start printing, the print job data cancelled or failed may be remaining. Delete the undesired print job by using the Canon IJ Status Monitor.

1. Display the Canon IJ Status Monitor

Click the Status Monitor button displayed on the Task Bar.
The Canon IJ Status Monitor appears.

2. Display the print jobs

Click Display Print Queue....
The Print Queue window opens.

3. Delete the print jobs

Select Cancel All Documents from the Printer menu.
When the confirmation message appears, click Yes.

The print job is deleted.

Important

- Users who have not been granted access permission for printer management cannot delete the print job of another user.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Appendix](#) > [Updating the Printer Driver](#)

Updating the Printer Driver

- ➔ [Obtaining the Latest Printer Driver](#)
- ➔ [Uninstalling the Printer Driver](#)
- ➔ [Before Installing the Printer Driver](#)
- ➔ [Installing the Printer Driver](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Appendix](#) > [Updating the Printer Driver](#) > [Obtaining the Latest Printer Driver](#)

Obtaining the Latest Printer Driver

By updating the printer driver to the latest version of the printer driver, unresolved problems may be solved.

You can check the version of the printer driver by clicking the About... button on the Maintenance tab.

Access our web site through the Internet and download the latest printer driver for your model.



Important

- You can download the printer driver for free, but any Internet access charges incurred are your responsibility.
- Before installing the latest printer driver, delete the previously installed version. For information on how to delete the printer driver, refer to [Uninstalling the Printer Driver](#).

Related Topics

[➡ Before Installing the Printer Driver](#)

[➡ Installing the Printer Driver](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Updating the Printer Driver > Uninstalling the Printer Driver

Uninstalling the Printer Driver

The printer driver you no longer use can be deleted.
When deleting the printer driver, first exit all programs that are running.

The procedure to delete the unnecessary printer driver is as follows:

If there is an uninstaller

1. Start the uninstaller

- In Windows Vista or Windows XP, select the Start menu -> All Programs -> "Your model name" -> Printer Driver Uninstaller.
- In Windows 2000, select the Start menu -> Programs -> "Your model name" -> Printer Driver Uninstaller.

The Printer Driver Uninstaller dialog box is displayed.

Important

- In Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when installing, uninstalling or starting software.
This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
If you are logged on to an administrator account, click Continue or Allow to continue.
Some applications require an administrator account to continue. If you are logged on to a standard account, switch to an administrator account, and restart the operation from the beginning.

2. Execute the uninstaller

Click Execute. When the confirmation message appears, click Yes.
When all the files have been deleted, click Complete.
The deletion of the Printer Driver is completed.

If there is no uninstaller

If there is no uninstaller in the Start menu of Windows Vista, follow these steps:

1. Select the printer to be deleted

Select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Hardware and Sound -> Printers.
Click the model to delete, then press the Alt key on your keyboard. On the File menu, click Delete.

2. Delete the printer

If the User Account Control dialog box appears, click Continue. Then when the confirmation message appears, click Yes.
The icon is deleted.

3. Select the printer driver to be deleted

Press the Alt key. On the File menu, select Run as administrator, and then click Sever Properties....
If the User Account Control dialog box appears, click Continue.
Click the Drivers tab. In the Installed printer drivers list, click the printer to delete.

4. Delete the printer driver

When you click Remove..., Remove Driver And Package dialog box is displayed.
Select Remove driver and driver package, and then click OK.
In the confirmation dialog box, click Yes.

When data collection is completed in the Remove Driver Package dialog box, click Delete.

5. Click OK.

The deletion of the printer driver is complete.

 **Important**

- You may not be able to delete the printer driver properly from the Installed printer drivers list. If this happens, restart your computer, and try again.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Appendix](#) > [Updating the Printer Driver](#) > [Before Installing the Printer Driver](#)

Before Installing the Printer Driver

This section describes the items that you should check before installing the Printer Driver. You should also refer to this section if the Printer Driver cannot be installed.

Check the printer status

- Properly connect the personal computer and the printer. For details on connection instructions, refer to the "Install the Software" in the manual: Getting Started.
- Turn off the printer.

Check the Personal Computer Settings

- Terminate all running applications.
- In Windows Vista, log on as a user who has the administrator rights.
In Windows XP, log on as the computer administrator.
In Windows 2000, log on as a member of the Administrators group.



Note

- If an old version of the Printer Driver is already installed, first delete (uninstall) that version. For instructions on deleting the Printer Driver, see [Uninstalling the Printer Driver](#).
-

Related Topics

- ➔ [Obtaining the Latest Printer Driver](#)
- ➔ [Installing the Printer Driver](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Updating the Printer Driver > Installing the Printer Driver

Installing the Printer Driver

You can access our web site through the Internet and download the latest Printer Driver for your model.

The procedure for installing the downloaded Printer Driver is as follows:

1. Turn off the printer

Important

- If you turn on the computer while the printer is on, the Windows Plug and Play function is executed automatically, and the Found New Hardware window (Windows Vista) or Found New Hardware Wizard window (Windows XP, Windows 2000) is displayed. In this case, click Cancel.

2. Start the installer

Double-click the icon of the downloaded file.
The installation program starts.

Important

- In Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when installing, uninstalling or starting software.
This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
If you are logged on to an administrator account, click Continue or Allow to continue.
Some applications require an administrator account to continue. If you are logged on to a standard account, switch to an administrator account, and restart the operation from the beginning.

3. Install the driver

At the Welcome window, click Next.
Read the contents of the License Agreement window. After checking the contents, click Yes.
Installation of the Printer Driver begins.

After the Installation Complete window is displayed, check that the printer and the computer are connected through a cable.

To select the connection port for your printer manually, check the Select printer port check box, and click Manual selection. At the Select printer port window, select the connection destination, and then click OK.

4. Complete the installation

Click Complete.
Turn on the printer, and wait awhile until the connection is recognized.

This procedure installs the Printer Driver.

Depending on the environment you are using, a message prompting you to restart the computer may be displayed. To complete the installation properly, restart the computer.

Important

- You can download the printer driver for free, but any Internet access charges incurred are your responsibility.

Related Topics

- ➔ [Obtaining the Latest Printer Driver](#)
- ➔ [Before Installing the Printer Driver](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Uninstalling the On-Screen Manuals

Uninstalling the On-Screen Manuals

Follow the procedure below to uninstall all of the installed on-screen manuals from your computer.



All of the installed on-screen manuals will be deleted at the same time.

1. Click Start > All Programs (Programs in Windows 2000) > Canon XXX Manual (where "XXX" is your printer's name) > Uninstall.
2. Click OK when the confirmation message appears.



Note

- When the message prompting you to restart your computer is displayed, click OK to restart your computer.



On-screen manuals other than printer driver's help are uninstalled at a time.

1. Select Applications on the Go menu.
2. Double-click the Canon Utilities folder, and then the IJ Manual folder.
3. Drag the folder of your printer's name into the trash.
4. Drag the  XXX On-screen Manual icon (where "XXX" is your printer's name) on your desktop into the trash.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Transporting the Printer

Transporting the Printer

When relocating the printer, pack the printer using the original packing materials.

If you do not have the original packing materials, pack the printer carefully using protective material and place it inside a sturdy box.

Caution

- Do not transport or store the printer slanted, vertically, or upside-down, as the ink may leak and damage the printer.

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Confirm that the **Power** lamp is off and unplug the printer.

Important

- Do not unplug the printer while the **Power** lamp is lit or flashing green, as it may cause malfunction or damage to the printer, making the printer unable to print.

3. Retract the Paper Support and the Output Tray Extension, then close the Paper Output Tray.
4. Disconnect the printer cable from the computer and from the printer, and then disconnect the power plug from the printer.
5. Use adhesive tape to secure all the covers on the printer to keep them from opening during transportation. Then pack the printer in the plastic bag.
6. Attach the protective material to the printer when packing the printer.

Important

- Pack the printer with the Print Head and ink tanks left installed in the printer.

Note

- Clearly label the box as "FRAGILE" or "HANDLE WITH CARE".

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box (Windows)

Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box (Windows)

The printer driver setup window can be displayed through the application software in use or the Start menu of the Windows.

Open the Printer Properties Dialog Box through the Application Software

Follow the procedure below to configure print settings when printing.

1. Select the command you perform printing on the application software in use.

In general, select Print on the File menu to open the Print dialog box.

2. Select your model name and click Preferences (or Properties).

The printer properties dialog box opens.



Note

- Opening the printer properties dialog box through Properties displays such tabs regarding the Windows functions as the Ports (or Advanced) tab. Those tabs do not appear when opening through Printing Preferences or application software. About tabs regarding Windows functions, refer to the user's manual for the Windows.

Open the Printer Properties Dialog Box through the Start Menu

Follow the procedure below to perform maintenance operations such as print head cleaning, or to configure print settings that are common for all application software.

1. Select items from the Start menu as shown below.

- In Windows Vista, select the Start menu > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers.
- In Windows XP, select the Start menu > Control Panel > Printers and Other Hardware > Printers and Faxes.
- In Windows 2000, select the Start menu > Settings > Printers.

2. Right-click your model name icon and then select Printing Preferences from the displayed menu.

The printer properties dialog box opens.



Important

- Depending on application software you use, command names or menu names may vary and there may be more steps. For details, refer to the user's manual of your application software.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Opening the Page Setup and Print Dialog Box (Macintosh)

Opening the Page Setup and Print Dialog Box (Macintosh)

You can open the Page Setup dialog box and the Print dialog box from the application program you are using.

Opening the Page Setup Dialog Box

Open the Page Setup dialog box to specify page (paper) settings before printing.

- 1. Select Page Setup... on the File menu in your application program.**

The Page Setup dialog box opens.

Opening the Print Dialog Box

Open the Print dialog box to specify print settings before printing.

- 1. Select Print... on the File menu in your application program.**

The Print dialog box opens.

[Page top](#) ↕

Advanced Guide

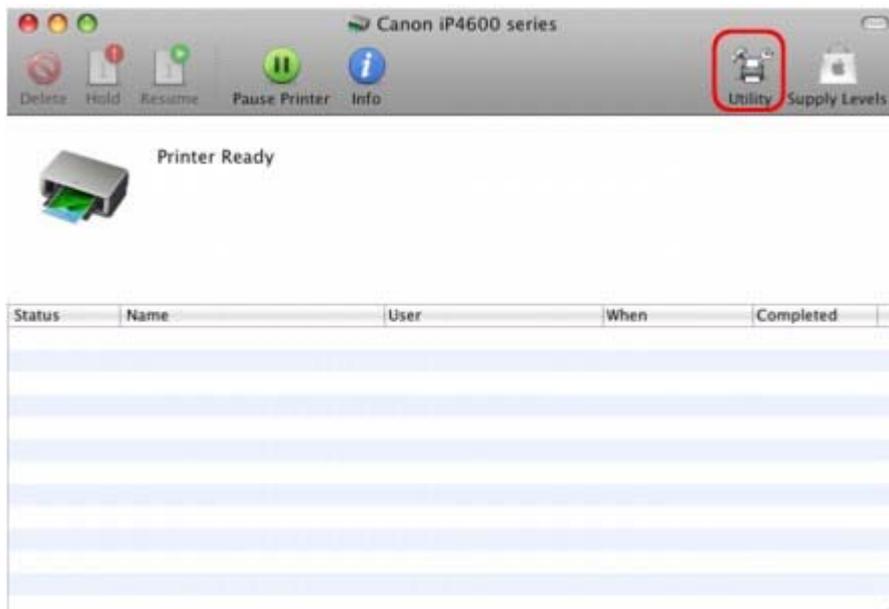
Advanced Guide > Appendix > Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility (Macintosh)

Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility (Macintosh)

To open the Canon IJ Printer Utility, follow the procedure below.

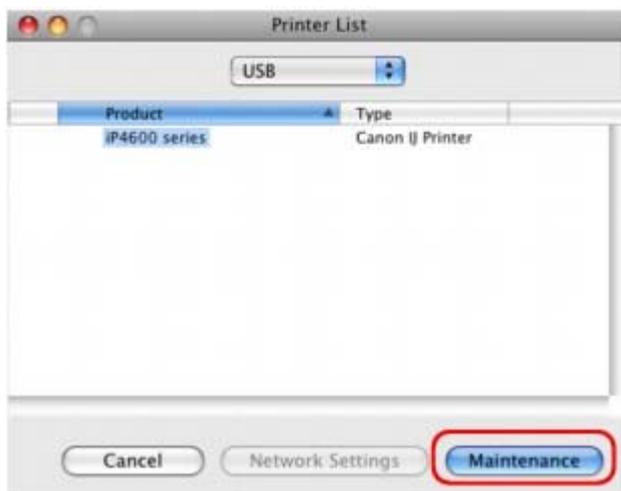
In Mac OS X v.10.5.x

1. Select System Preferences on the Apple menu.
2. Click Print & Fax.
3. Select your printer's name in the Printers and click Open Print Queue....
The job list of your printer is displayed.
4. Click Utility.



The Printer List opens.

5. Select your printer's name in the Product list and click Maintenance.



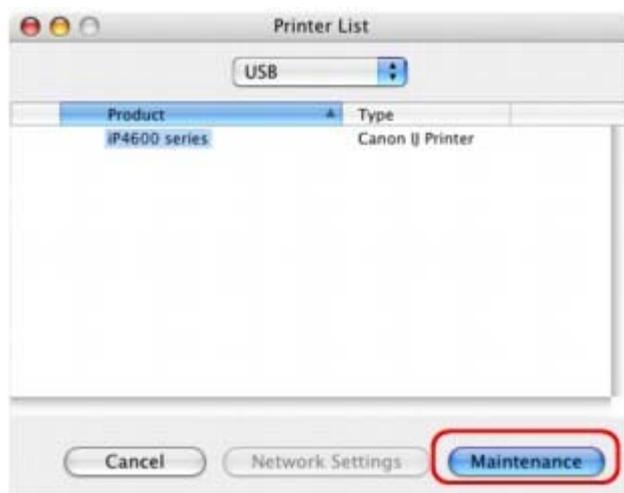
The Canon IJ Printer Utility starts up.

In Mac OS X v.10.4.x or Mac OS X v 10.3.9

1. Select Applications on the Go menu.
2. Double-click the Utilities folder, and then double-click the Printer Setup Utility icon.
The Printer List opens.
3. Select your printer's name in the Name list and click Utility.



4. Select your printer's name in the Product list and click Maintenance.



The Canon IJ Printer Utility starts up.

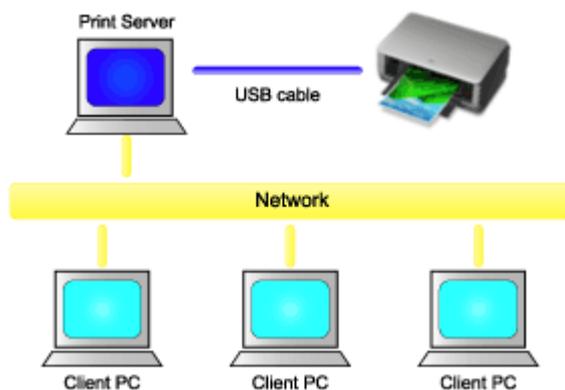
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Connecting the Printer to the Network

Connecting the Printer to the Network

If multiple computers are being used in the network environment, you can share the printer connected to one computer with other computers.

The Windows versions of the computers connected to the network do not necessarily have to be the same.



- **Settings on Print Server**

Describes the procedure for setting up a computer directly connected to a printer with a USB cable.

- **Settings on Client PC**

Describes the procedure for setting up those computers that will use this printer through the network.

When you execute print, the data is sent through the print server system to the printer.

Important

- In case an error occurred when a document is printed by the client system to a shared printer, the error message of Canon IJ Status Monitor will be displayed both on the client system and the print server system. For regular printing, Canon IJ Status Monitor will be displayed only on the client system.

Note

- Install the printer driver from the Setup CD-ROM that accompanies the printer on the print server system and each of the client systems according to the OS of each system.

Related Topic

➔ [Restrictions on Network Printing](#)



[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Connecting the Printer to the Network > Settings on Print Server

Settings on Print Server

To use a printer in a network, set printer sharing on the print server system.

The procedure for setting up the print server systems is as follows:

1. Install the printer driver on the print server system

For installation instructions, see the user's manual.

2. Select items from the Start menu as shown below:

- In Windows Vista, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Hardware and Sound -> Printers.
- In Windows XP, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Printers and Other Hardware -> Printers and Faxes.
- In Windows 2000, select the Start menu -> Settings -> Printers.

The Printers window (Windows Vista, Windows 2000) or Printers and Faxes window (Windows XP) is displayed.

3. Click the icon for the model name of printer to be shared

- In Windows Vista, press the Alt key on your keyboard and then select Run as administrator -> Sharing... from the displayed File menu.
- In Windows XP or Windows 2000, select Sharing... from the File menu.



Note

- Windows XP may display a message recommending the user to use the Network Setup Wizard to set up sharing. When this message appears, choose not to use the wizard and then set up sharing.

4. Set sharing

Select Share this printer (Windows Vista, Windows XP) or Shared as (Windows 2000) on the Sharing tab to set a shared name as desired, and click OK.



Important

- In Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when installing, uninstalling, or starting software. This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task. If you are logged on to an administrator account, click Continue or Allow to continue. Some applications require an administrator account to continue. If you are logged on to a standard account, switch to an administrator account, and restart the operation from the beginning.

This completes the setup on the print server system. Next, set up the client systems.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Connecting the Printer to the Network > Settings on Client PC

Settings on Client PC

After setting up the print server system, set up the client system.

The procedure for setting up the client systems is as follows:

In Windows Vista

1. Install the printer driver on the client systems

Select Custom Install for the installation method.

For details on connection instructions, refer to the "Install the Software" in the manual: Getting Started.



Note

- During the installation, a screen prompting you to turn the printer on appears. Click Manual Selection and then select an appropriate port to complete your installation.

2. Start the wizard

Select the Start menu -> Network -> Add a printer.

The Add Printer window appears.

3. Add a printer

Select Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer, and click the icon for the printer that you have configured on the print server system to be shared, and then click Next.



Note

- If the icon for the printer is not displayed, check that the printer is actually connected to the print server.
- It may take some time for the icon for the printer to appear.

4. Complete the setup

Take the appropriate action as described on the screen and then click Finish.

The icon for the shared printer will be created in the Printers window.

This completes the setup on the client systems. You can now share the printer in the network.

In Windows XP/Windows 2000

1. Install the printer driver on the client systems

Select Custom Install for the installation method.

For details on connection instructions, refer to the "Install the Software" in the manual: Getting Started.



Note

- During the installation, a screen prompting you to turn the printer on appears. Click Manual Selection and then select an appropriate port to complete your installation.

2. Start the wizard

- In Windows XP, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Printers and Other Hardware -> Printers and Faxes -> Add a printer.
- In Windows 2000, select the Start menu -> Settings -> Printers -> Add a printer.

When Welcome to the Add Printer Wizard screen appears, click Next.

When Welcome to the Add Printer Wizard screen appears, click Next.

3. Add a printer

Select A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer (Windows XP) or Network printer (Windows 2000), then click Next.

On the Specify a Printer window (Windows XP) or Locate Your Printer window (Windows 2000), click Next and then search for the print server system.

Click the icon for the printer that you have configured on the print server system to be shared, and then click Next.

**Note**

- If the icon for the printer is not displayed, check that the printer is actually connected to the print server.

4. Complete the setup

Take the appropriate action as described on the screen and then click Finish.

The icon for the shared printer will be created in the Printers and Faxes window (Windows XP) or Printers window (Windows 2000).

This completes the setup on the client systems. You can now share the printer in the network.



[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Appendix](#) > [Connecting the Printer to the Network](#) > [Restrictions on Network Printing](#)

Restrictions on Network Printing

These are restrictions that apply if you are using a printer in a network environment. Check the restrictions for the environment you are using.

If you are sharing a printer in a network

- A print completion message may be displayed. To disable the message display, follow the procedure below.
 - **In Windows Vista:**

Press the Alt key from the Printers window on the client system. Open Run as administrator -> Server Properties... from the displayed File menu.
Uncheck Show informational notifications for network printers on the Advanced tab, and then restart the computer.
 - **In Windows XP or Windows 2000:**

Open Server Properties from the File menu of the Printer and Faxes window (Windows XP) or the Printers window (Windows 2000) on the print server system.
Uncheck Notify when remote documents are printed on the Advanced tab, and then restart the computer.
- The bi-directional communication function is disabled so that the correct printer status may not be recognized.

If a client user opens the printer driver properties and then clicks OK with the Enable bidirectional support check box on the Ports tab unchecked, the bi-directional function of the printer server system may also be disabled.
In this case, check Enable bidirectional support check box on both the print server system and the client system.
- When you print from a client system, you cannot use Canon IJ Preview.
- If the functions on the Maintenance tab cannot be set properly from a client system, they may be grayed out. In this case, change the settings from the print server.

When you change the settings of the print server, you should delete the icon of the shared printer from the client system, and then specify the shared settings again in the client system.

If the same printer driver is installed in the print server system and the client system as the local printer

- The net crawl function may automatically create a network printer icon on the client system.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Using Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using Easy-PhotoPrint EX

--- Transforming Your Photos into Creative Works of Art ---

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create albums, calendars and stickers easily using photos taken with digital cameras.

You can also print borderless photos easily.

Start Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Click Here: [Easy-PhotoPrint EX](#)



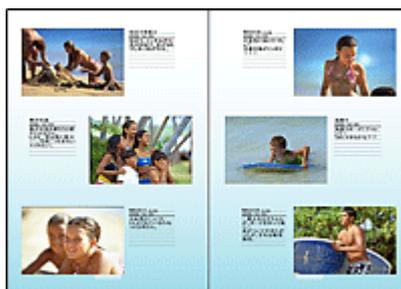
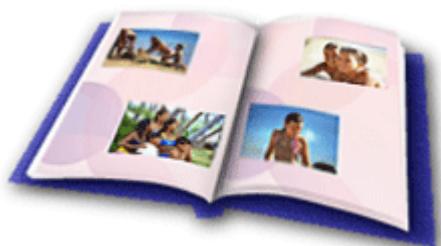
Note

- See the section below for details on how to use Easy-PhotoPrint EX.
 - ➔ [Printing with the Bundled Application Software](#)

Create a Personalized Photo Album

Creating a personalized photo album is an easy task if you use Easy-PhotoPrint EX!

All you need to do is select which photos to use, select a layout, then load paper into your printer and print. After you bind the printed sheets, you'll have the one and only album of your memories!



You can change the layout and background, and attach comments to photos.



You can also select the size and orientation.



You can arrange a photo across the left and right pages.

CHECK!

Select a theme (background design) to create a single-themed album.

Decorate Items with Text and Frames

You can add text and frames to photos. Attach a description of the photo in an album, and add a frame to enhance the photo's atmosphere.



CHECK!

Select Album to add text and frames. You cannot decorate photos with Photo Print.

Create a Calendar Using Your Favorite Photos

Create calendars easily with Easy-PhotoPrint EX. Create your own calendar using your favorite photos! It'll be exciting to turn the calendar pages.



You can use all kinds of photos.

You can also create 2-month, 6-month and 12-month calendars.

Create Stickers

Create stickers easily with Easy-PhotoPrint EX!

Create stickers of your favorite photos and share them with your friends!



CHECK!

You can add text to photos.

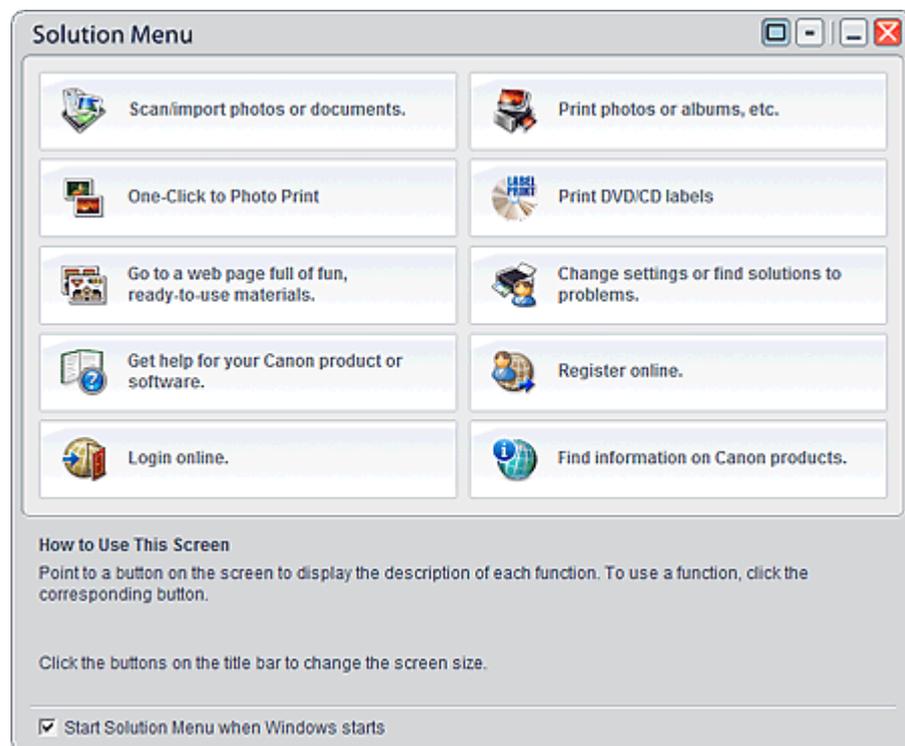
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > About Solution Menu

About Solution Menu

Quick Shortcut!! Solution Menu

Solution Menu is a menu window that provides quick access from your desktop to Canon applications, manuals, and online product information.



Important

- The number and types of buttons displayed in the window may vary depending on your printer and region.

Starting Solution Menu

 Click Here: [Solution Menu](#)

To start from desktop, see below.

Double-click the Solution Menu icon on the desktop. Alternatively, from the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > Solution Menu > Solution Menu.

From the next time, Solution Menu starts when Windows starts.

If the Start Solution Menu when Windows starts checkbox at the bottom left of the window is not selected, Solution Menu does not start when Windows starts.

Important

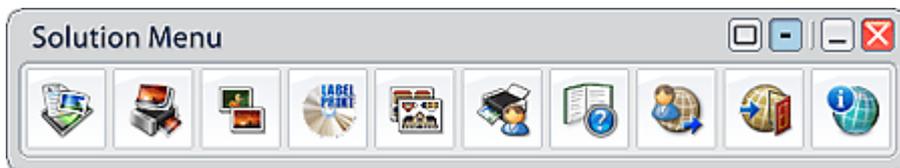
- Solution Menu will start automatically when you install it using the Setup CD-ROM that accompanies the printer.

Changing the Window Size

Click  (window size: large) or  (window size: small) on the title bar to change the window size (large or small).

Solution Menu opens with the last used window size next time it is started.

- When screen size is small



Starting an Application

1. Point to a button on the window to display the description of each application.
2. By clicking each button, the introduced application starts.
Follow the same steps to view the manuals or online product information.

Important

- Internet connection is required to access the online information. Internet connection fees apply.

Exiting Solution Menu

Click  (Close) on the title bar.

Restriction on Use of Solution Menu

This software is subject to the following restriction. Keep this point in mind when using it.

- All icons of the installed applications that support Solution Menu are displayed in the window. After the installation, you cannot rearrange the icons or delete only the icons.

[Page top](#) 